
《Lectures on Convex Optimization》

读书笔记 (I)

冯乐晨 李欢 倪元华

日期: 2025 年 4 月

前言

为什么撰写此笔记

优化理论作为现代应用数学的重要分支，广泛应用于数据科学、人工智能、控制工程等众多领域，其理论体系的发展对实际问题的建模与求解具有深远影响。正因如此，南开大学倪元华课题组于 2021 年 9 月开始组织优化理论专题讨论班，致力于从零开始较系统地学习优化理论。随后，南开大学李欢老师、天津大学张新珍老师课题组也加入进来，讨论班的学习路线循序渐进、由浅入深。自 2022 年 9 月起，课题组师生一起学习 Yurii Nesterov 所著《Lectures on Convex Optimization》，和 Amir Beck 所著《First-Order Methods in Optimization》。

本笔记整理自冯乐晨同学于 2022 年 9 月至 2023 年 7 月期间优化讨论班上的读书笔记，内容围绕 Yurii Nesterov 所著《Lectures on Convex Optimization》的前三章展开。该书作为凸优化领域的重要著作，以其严谨的理论体系和前沿的视角在学界享有盛誉。然而，书中大量的推导过程略去了中间步骤，尤其在一些关键定理与证明中跳步较多，这给我们的阅读和理解带来一定困难。在讨论班的学习过程中，通过课题组成员的深入交流与反复推敲，逐步补充了许多被省略的推导过程，厘清了若干复杂论证的内在逻辑，并由冯乐晨同学整理读书笔记。

本读书笔记是课题组全体师生共同努力的结果，笔记的整理过程始于讨论班的课堂讲解。首先，由主讲同学对书中对应章节进行详细阐述，在讲解过程中，通过现场提问和集体讨论不断凝练和深化问题。每当出现疑惑或关键难点时，老师和同学积极互动，提出各自的见解和疑问，进一步激发对问题的探讨。课后，冯乐晨同学根据讨论班上的讲解、提问与讨论，对原有思路进行梳理和总结，最终整理成这份笔记，以便为我们后续的学习和研究提供参考资料。笔记力求在保留原书整体结构与符号系统基础上，补充必要的推导细节与解释，尽管在整理过程中力求严谨准确，但由于我们水平所限，笔记中仍会存在笔误及不严谨之处，恳请批评指正。

除南开大学倪元华老师、李欢老师，天津大学张新珍老师外，期间参加优化讨论班的还有南开大学人工智能学院的研究生同学：司彬彬（现于某银行工作）、岳新辉（现为某地公务员）、刘丽萍（现为某地公务员）、徐宏远（现于北京航空航天大学攻读博士学位）、张迪（现为某中学教师）、贾晖、王雨畑（现于香港理工大学攻读博士学位）、张震（将赴某研究所工作）、冯乐晨（将赴香港理工大学攻读博士学位）、李浩然（将赴香港理工大学攻读博士学位）、葛涵（将赴海外留学）、贾茹茹、刘姿含、于梅灵、李庆生、谢君、刘震、谭浩天、陈子涵、马燕琳、原增昀、丁依宁、贾顺、徐阳阳、王文远，和天津大学数学学院的研究生同学：余泉

(现于湖南大学攻读博士学位)、朱琳(现于某银行工作)、郭洵园(现于海外攻读博士学位)、王一静(现于某公司工作)、许君霞(现于某公司工作)、王学友(将赴某银行工作)、许梦平、赵千一、司文栋、徐思敏、李佳泽、丁鹤、郭艳鑫等。在此一并致谢,感谢各位的辛苦付出!

笔记主要内容

本笔记整理了《Lectures on Convex Optimization》第 1.1.1 节—3.2.7 节的全部内容,具体包括:

- 非线性优化初步: 梯度法、牛顿法、共轭梯度法的一般性理论
- 光滑凸优化理论: L -光滑凸函数的性质、一阶方法的复杂度界、Nesterov 加速梯度法、极小-极大问题
- 非光滑凸优化理论: 闭凸函数的性质、次梯度理论、非光滑优化最优性条件、极小-极大定理、次梯度算法

如何阅读此笔记

本笔记按照《Lectures on Convex Optimization》第 1.1.1 节—3.2.7 节顺序整理,如无特殊说明,记号均与书中对应章节一致。

作者简介

冯乐晨 2022年毕业于南开大学，获智能科学与技术工学学士学位，现为南开大学人工智能学院控制科学与工程专业硕士研究生。研究兴趣主要包括最优控制、动力系统与优化方法，将于2025年8月将赴香港理工大学应用数学系攻读博士学位。

李欢 2019年于北京大学获博士学位，现为南开大学人工智能学院副教授，在JMLR、SIOPT、NIPS、ICML等期刊与会议上发表论文多篇，研究方向为优化方法与机器学习。

倪元华 2010年于中国科学院获运筹学与控制论博士学位，现为南开大学人工智能学院教授、博士生导师，并曾于2014年4月至2015年5月在美国加州大学圣地亚哥分校、2016年1月至2017年1月在香港理工大学担任访问学者。在Automatica、IEEE TAC、SICON等期刊上发表论文多篇，研究方向为随机控制、最优控制、强化学习、智能博弈等，现为《System & Control Letters》期刊编委。

致谢

参与《Lectures on Convex Optimization》前三章主讲的同学有：南开大学的王雨焯、张迪、贾晖、张震、贾茹茹、于梅灵、李浩然、葛涵、李庆生、谢君，和天津大学的王学友、许君霞、王一静；感谢诸位主讲同学的认真准备与精彩讲解。

感谢讨论班上诸位老师和同学课上课下的积极互动与讨论，这不仅加深了我们对知识的理解，也对本笔记的整理方向和内容完善起到了重要的推动作用。

目录

前言	2
作者简介	4
致谢	5
第 1 章 非线性优化	7
第 2 章 光滑凸优化	85
第 3 章 非光滑凸优化	207

§ 1.1 The world of nonlinear Optimization

$$\mathcal{P} \equiv (\Sigma, \mathcal{O}, \mathcal{T}_\varepsilon)$$

\swarrow model \downarrow oracles \searrow accuracy

$\mathcal{M}(\Sigma, \mathcal{O})$: method 定义在 (Σ, \mathcal{O}) 上

$$\min_{x \in B_n} f(x)$$

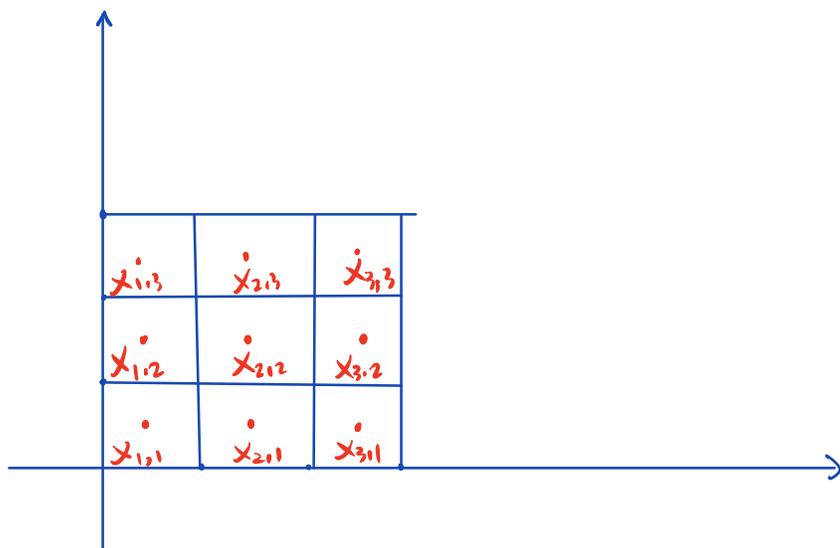
$$B_n = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid 0 \leq x^{(i)} \leq 1, i=1, \dots, n\}$$

设 $f(\cdot)$ 是 L -Lipschitz 的, i.e.

$$|f(x) - f(y)| \leq L \|x - y\|_\infty \quad \forall x, y \in B_n$$

Method $\mathcal{G}(p)$
<p>1. Form p^n points</p> $x_\alpha = \left(\frac{2i_1-1}{2p}, \frac{2i_2-1}{2p}, \dots, \frac{2i_n-1}{2p} \right)^T,$ <p>where $\alpha \equiv (i_1, \dots, i_n) \in \{1, \dots, p\}^n$.</p>
<p>2. Among all points x_α, find the point \bar{x} with the minimal value of the objective function.</p>
<p>3. The pair $(\bar{x}, f(\bar{x}))$ is the output of the method.</p>

(1.1.6)



Theorem 1.1.1

令 f^* 是 global optimal value, 则 $f(\bar{x}) - f(x^*) \leq \frac{L}{2p}$

证明: 对 $\alpha = (i_1, \dots, i_n)$, 令

$$X_\alpha = \left\{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n : \|x - x_\alpha\|_\infty \leq \frac{1}{2p} \right\}$$

则 $\bigcup_{\alpha \in \{1, \dots, p\}^n} X_\alpha = B_n$, 则设 x^* 是全局最优, 则 \exists 一个 multi-index α^* ,

s.t. $x^* \in X_{\alpha^*}$, 且 $\|x^* - x_{\alpha^*}\| \leq \frac{1}{2p}$, 故

$$f(\bar{x}) - f(x^*) \leq f(x_{\alpha^*}) - f(x^*) \leq \frac{L}{2p}$$

□

Corollary 1.1.1 对于 method \mathcal{A} , analytical complexity

$$\text{至多为: } \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{P}) = \left(\lfloor \frac{L}{2\varepsilon} \rfloor + 1\right)^n$$

证明: 令 $p = \lfloor \frac{L}{2\varepsilon} \rfloor + 1$, 则 $p \geq \frac{L}{2\varepsilon}$, 故

$$f(\bar{x}) - f^* \leq \frac{L}{2p} \leq \varepsilon \quad \square$$

注: Local Black Box 的第二条:

对应了 Lipschitz 假设?

$$\mathcal{P}_\infty = (\Sigma, \mathcal{O}, \mathcal{T}_\varepsilon)$$

Σ : $f(x)$ 在 B_n 上是 L_∞ -Lipschitz 的

\mathcal{O} : 任给 $x_0 \in B_n$, 返回值是 $f(x_0)$

\mathcal{T}_ε : 求 $\bar{x} \in B_n$, s.t. $f(\bar{x}) - f^* < \varepsilon$

Theorem 1.1.2

令 $\varepsilon < \frac{L}{2}$, 则对于问题集合 \mathcal{P}_∞ 来说, 对于每个具体问题 $P \in \mathcal{P}_\infty$

它的解算法集合 $\mathcal{M} := \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{P}_\infty, \mathcal{O})$ 中任一算法 $S \in \mathcal{M}$, 分析复杂度有

$$\mathcal{A}(P) \geq \left(\lfloor \frac{L}{2\varepsilon} \rfloor\right)^n$$

证明:

考虑 $\mathcal{M} := \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{P}_\infty, \mathcal{O})$ 集合的任何一个解算法 \mathcal{S}

\mathcal{S} 通过在 B_n 上进行采样得到 $\{x_k\}$, 再对 $\{x_k\}$ 调用 \mathcal{O} , 对

$\{\mathcal{O}(x_k)\}$ 进行排序, 得最优 ε -近似解

则 \mathcal{M} 中解算法的差异仅在于 $\{x_k\}$ 的选取, 上面的例子是均匀选取

下用反证法:

令 $p = \lfloor \frac{L}{2\varepsilon} \rfloor > 1$, 若 $\exists \mathcal{S} \in \mathcal{M}$, s.t. $\exists P \in \mathcal{P}_\infty$, 对于求解 P ,

调用 \mathcal{O} 的次数 $N < p^n$

则只需证: $\exists f_p \in L_\infty\text{-Lip}(B_n)$, s.t. \mathcal{S} 在解 P 时, 迭代

$N < p^n$ 次后的精度大于等于 ε

由 $N < p^n$, 故存在非测试点 \hat{x} , 集合

$$B = \left\{ x \mid \hat{x} \leq x \leq \hat{x} + \frac{1}{p} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \subseteq B_n \quad (\text{抽屉原理})$$

(" \leq " 是按分量)

中不含任何测试点.

令 $x^* = \hat{x} + \frac{1}{2p} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \in B$, 则令

$$f_p(x) = \min\{0, L\|x - x^*\|_\infty - \varepsilon\}, \quad x \in B$$

$$f_p(x) = 0, x \in B_n \setminus B$$

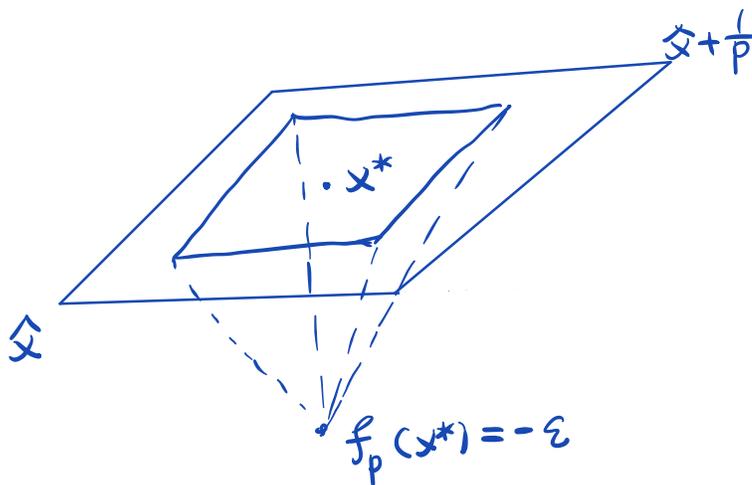
注意到:

$$\|\hat{x} - x^*\|_B = \frac{1}{2\rho} \geq \frac{1}{2 \frac{L}{2\varepsilon}} = \frac{\varepsilon}{L}$$

$$\text{则 } L\|\hat{x} - x^*\| - \varepsilon \geq \frac{\varepsilon}{L} \cdot L - \varepsilon \geq 0$$

$$f_p(\hat{x}) = \min\{0, L\|\hat{x} - x^*\| - \varepsilon\} = 0$$

故



故 $f_p(x)$ 在 B_n 上 L -Lip, 且 $f_p(x^*) = -\varepsilon$

而用 \mathcal{S} 解 $f_p(x)$ 时, 在 $\{x_k\}_{k=1}^N$ 调用 \mathcal{O} 时, 均返回

$$\mathcal{O}(x_k) = f(x_k) = 0 \quad \forall k=1, \dots, N$$

故 $f_p(\hat{x}) = 0$, 有 $f_p(\hat{x}) - f_p(x^*) \geq \varepsilon$, 矛盾!



$$\text{证: } \left(\lfloor \frac{L}{2k} \rfloor + 1 \right)^n \Leftrightarrow \lfloor \frac{L}{2k} \rfloor^n$$

当 $\frac{L}{2k} = \square.999\dots 9$ 时

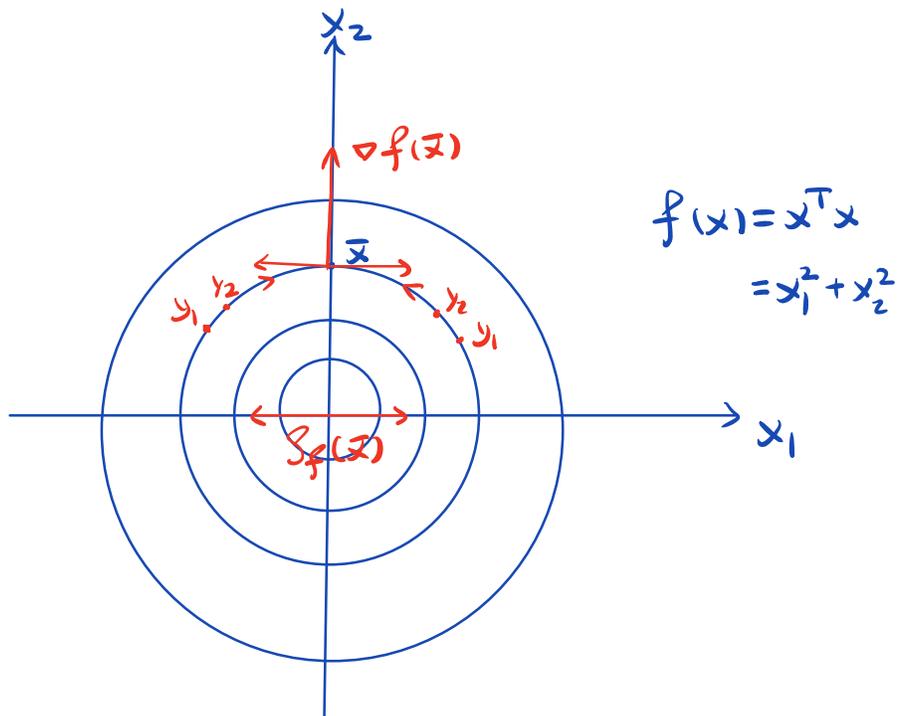
当 $\frac{L}{2k} = \text{整数}$ 时

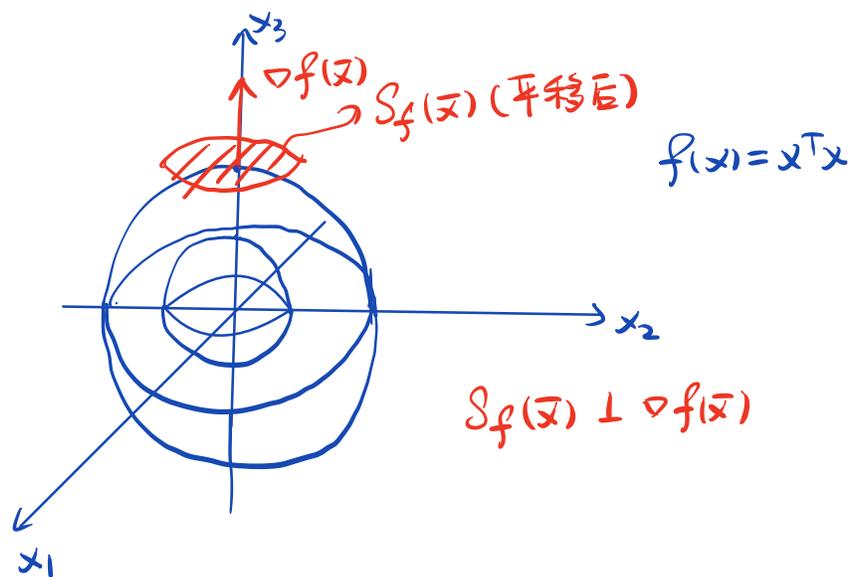
§ 1.2 Local Methods in Unconstrained Minimization

§ 1.2.1 Relaxation and Approximation

$$\mathcal{L}_f(\alpha) = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid f(x) \leq \alpha\}$$

$$\mathcal{S}_f(\bar{x}) = \left\{s \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid s = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{y_k - \bar{x}}{\|y_k - \bar{x}\|}, \text{ 对 } y_k \rightarrow \bar{x}, f(y_k) = f(\bar{x}), \forall k\right\}$$





Lemma 2.1 若 $s \in S_f(\bar{x})$, 则 $\langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), s \rangle = 0$

证明:

$$f(y_k) = f(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), y_k - \bar{x} \rangle + o(\|y_k - \bar{x}\|)$$

$$\Rightarrow \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), \frac{y_k - \bar{x}}{\|y_k - \bar{x}\|} \rangle + o(1) = 0 \quad \square$$

令 $\|s\| = 1$, 令

$$\Delta(s) = \lim_{\alpha \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} (f(\bar{x} + \alpha s) - f(\bar{x}))$$

由 $f(\bar{x} + \alpha s) - f(\bar{x}) = \alpha \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), s \rangle + o(\alpha)$

故 $\Delta(s) = \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), s \rangle \geq -\|\nabla f(\bar{x})\|$

$$\text{取 } \bar{s} = \frac{-\nabla f(\bar{x})}{\|\nabla f(\bar{x})\|}, \text{ 则 } \Delta(\bar{s}) = -\|\nabla f(\bar{x})\|$$

则 $-\nabla f(\bar{x})$ 是 \bar{x} 处下降最快方向

Theorem 1.2.1

x^* 是 local minimum of 可微 func $f(\cdot)$, 则 $\nabla f(x^*) = 0$

证明:

由 x^* local minimum, 则 $\exists r > 0$, s.t. 对 $\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\|y - x^*\| \leq r$,

有 $f(y) \geq f(x^*)$, 由 f 可微

$$f(y) = f(x^*) + \langle \nabla f(x^*), y - x^* \rangle + o(\|y - x^*\|) \geq f(x^*)$$

则 $\langle \nabla f(x^*), s \rangle \geq 0$, 故取 $s = -\nabla f(x^*)$ 即证 \square

Corollary 1.2.1

优化问题 $\min f(x)$ 的局部极小是 x^* ,
s.t. $Ax=b$

其中 $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ 是行满秩的, 设 $\{x \mid Ax=b\} \neq \emptyset$,

则存在 $\lambda^* \in \mathbb{R}^m$, s.t. $\nabla f(x^*) = A^T \lambda^*$

证明:

当 $\nabla f(x^*) = 0$ 时, 取 $\lambda^* = 0 \in \mathbb{R}^m$ 即可, 故不妨设 $\nabla f(x^*) \neq 0$

考虑: $g^* = \min_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}^m} \{g(\lambda) = \frac{1}{2} \|\nabla f(x^*) - A^T \lambda\|^2\}$

用反证法: 设 $g^* > 0$, 则:

$$g(\lambda) = \frac{1}{2} \|\nabla f(x^*)\|^2 - \langle \nabla f(x^*), A^T \lambda \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle B \lambda, \lambda \rangle$$

$$B = AA^T \geq \lambda_{\min}(B) I_m, \text{ 且 } \lambda_{\min}(B) > 0$$

↓

$$\begin{aligned} \text{由 } \text{rank}(B) &= \text{rank}(AA^T) \\ &= \text{rank}(A) = m, \end{aligned}$$

且 B 是半正定的, 故 B 正定

由 $g(\lambda)$ 的下水平集是有界闭集, 故是紧集, 再由 $g(\lambda)$

的连续性知: $\exists \lambda^* \in \mathbb{R}^m, \text{s.t. } g(\lambda^*) = \inf_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}^m} g(\lambda)$

(紧集上的连续 func 可以取到最大、最小值)

故 $0 = g(\lambda^*) = B\lambda^* - A \nabla f(x^*)$

即 $\lambda^* = B^{-1}A \nabla f(x^*)$, 令 $s^* = (I_n - A^T B^{-1}A) \nabla f(x^*)$

则 $As^* = 0$ ($s^*, -s^*$ 均是可行方向), 由

$$\langle \nabla f(x^*), s^* \rangle = \langle \nabla f(x^*), \nabla f(x^*) - A^T B^{-1}A \nabla f(x^*) \rangle$$

$$= \|\nabla f(x^*)\|^2 - \langle B^{-1}A \nabla f(x^*), A \nabla f(x^*) \rangle$$

$$= 2g^* > 0$$

故设 $\alpha > 0$:

$$f(x^* - \alpha s^*) = f(x^*) - \alpha \nabla f(x^*)^T s^* + o(\alpha^2)$$

$$= f(x^*) - 2\alpha g^* + o(\alpha^2)$$

由 x^* 是局部极小, i.e. $\exists \delta > 0, \text{s.t. } \forall x \in B(x^*, \delta), f(x) \geq f(x^*)$

故可取 α 充分小, s.t. $x^* - \alpha s^* \in B(x^*, \delta)$

故与 x^* 局部极小矛盾, 从而假设不成立. $g^* = 0$

□

注: A 行满秩是不失一般的, 由 $Ax=b$ 解集非空, 故

可以将约束化简 $\tilde{A}x = \tilde{b}$, (\tilde{A}, \tilde{b}) 是 (A, b) 的任一组极大线性无关组

1.2.2 Classes of Differentiable Functions

定义: $f \in C_{L, P}^k(\mathcal{Q})$, 则 f 在 \mathcal{Q} 上连续可微, 且

$$\| \underbrace{\nabla^p f(x) - \nabla^p f(y)}_{\uparrow} \| \leq L \|x - y\| \quad \forall x, y \in \mathcal{Q}$$

设 $A: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$, 则 $\|A\| = \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|Ax\|$, 即是算子范数

则设 $A = U\Sigma V^T$, 则

$$\begin{aligned} \|A\|_2 &= \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|Ax\|_2 = \sup_{\|x\|=1} \sqrt{x^T A^T A x} \\ &= \sup_{\|x\|=1} \sqrt{x^T V \Sigma^2 V^T x} \\ &= \sup_{\|y\|=1} \sqrt{y^T \Sigma^2 y} = \sqrt{\lambda_{\max}(A^T A)} \end{aligned}$$

Lemma 1.2.2 $f(\cdot) \in C_L^{2,1}(\mathbb{R}^n) \subset C_L^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n) \Leftrightarrow$

$$\forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n, \|\nabla^2 f(x)\| \leq L$$

证明:

(\Leftarrow)

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla f(y) &= \nabla f(x) + \int_0^1 \nabla^2 f(x + \tau(y-x))(y-x) d\tau \\ &= \nabla f(x) + \left(\int_0^1 \nabla^2 f(x + \tau(y-x)) d\tau \right) (y-x) \end{aligned}$$

故

$$\begin{aligned} \|\nabla f(y) - \nabla f(x)\| &= \left\| \left(\int_0^1 \nabla^2 f(x + \tau(y-x)) d\tau \right) (y-x) \right\| \\ &\leq \left\| \int_0^1 \nabla^2 f(x + \tau(y-x)) d\tau \right\| \|y-x\| \\ &\leq \int_0^1 \|\nabla^2 f(x + \tau(y-x))\| d\tau \|y-x\| \\ &\leq L \|y-x\| \end{aligned}$$

(\Rightarrow) 对 $\forall s \in \mathbb{R}^n, \alpha > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \left\| \left(\int_0^\alpha \nabla^2 f(x + \tau s) d\tau \right) s \right\| &= \|\nabla f(x + \alpha s) - \nabla f(x)\| \\ &\leq \alpha L \|s\| \end{aligned}$$

则对 $\forall \alpha > 0$

$$\frac{1}{\alpha} \|\nabla f(x + \alpha S) - \nabla f(x)\| \leq L \|S\|$$

令 $\alpha \rightarrow 0^+$,

$$\lim_{\alpha \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{1}{\alpha} \|\nabla f(x + \alpha S) - \nabla f(x)\|$$

$$= \left\| \lim_{\alpha \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{\nabla f(x + \alpha S) - \nabla f(x)}{\alpha} \right\|$$

$$= \|\nabla^2 f(x) S\| \leq L \|S\| \quad \text{⊗}$$

由于有限维空间算子是可达范的, 故 $\exists S \in \mathbb{R}^n, \|S\|=1$,

s.t. $\|\nabla^2 f(x) S\| = \|\nabla^2 f(x)\|$, 故不妨设

$\exists \tilde{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$, s.t. $\|\nabla^2 f(\tilde{x})\| > L$, 则 $\exists S$, s.t.

$$\|\nabla^2 f(\tilde{x}) \frac{S}{\|S\|}\| \|S\| = \|\nabla^2 f(\tilde{x})\| \|S\| > L \|S\|$$

与 ⊗ 矛盾, 故 $\|\nabla^2 f(x)\| \leq L, \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ □

Lemma 1.2.3

$f \in C^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, 则 $\forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$, 有

$$|f(y) - f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle| \leq \frac{L}{2} \|y-x\|^2$$

证明: 对 $\forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) &= f(x) + \int_0^1 \langle \nabla f(x + \tau(y-x)), y-x \rangle d\tau \\ &= f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle + \int_0^1 \langle \nabla f(x + \tau(y-x)) - \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle d\tau \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{则} \quad & |f(y) - f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle| \\ &= \left| \int_0^1 \langle \nabla f(x + \tau(y-x)) - \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle d\tau \right| \\ &\leq \int_0^1 \|\nabla f(x + \tau(y-x)) - \nabla f(x)\| \|y-x\| d\tau \\ &\leq \int_0^1 \tau L \|y-x\|^2 d\tau = \frac{L}{2} \|y-x\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

□

Lemma 1.2.4 $f \in C_M^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, 则对 $\forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$, 有

$$\|\nabla f(y) - \nabla f(x) - \nabla^2 f(x)(y-x)\| \leq \frac{M}{2} \|y-x\|^2 \quad (1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} |f(y) - f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle - \frac{1}{2} \langle \nabla^2 f(x)(y-x), y-x \rangle| \\ \leq \frac{M}{6} \|y-x\|^3 \end{aligned} \quad (2)$$

证明: (1) 与 Lemma 1.2.3 同理, 只证 (2)

$$f(y) = f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle + \int_0^1 \langle \nabla f(x+t(y-x)) - \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle dt$$

$$\nabla f(x+t(y-x)) - \nabla f(x) = \int_0^1 \nabla^2 f(x+t\tau(y-x)) \tau(y-x) dt$$

$$= \nabla^2 f(x) \tau(y-x) + \int_0^1 (\nabla^2 f(x+t\tau(y-x)) - \nabla^2 f(x)) \tau(y-x) dt$$

$$\int_0^1 \langle \nabla f(x+t\tau(y-x)) - \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle dt$$

$$= \int_0^1 \tau(y-x)^T \nabla^2 f(x) (y-x) dt +$$

$$\int_0^1 \tau(y-x)^T \int_0^1 (\nabla^2 f(x+t\tau(y-x)) - \nabla^2 f(x)) dt (y-x) dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \langle \nabla^2 f(x) (y-x), y-x \rangle +$$

$$\int_0^1 \tau(y-x)^T \int_0^1 (\nabla^2 f(x+t\tau(y-x)) - \nabla^2 f(x)) dt (y-x) dt$$

$$\text{故 } | f(y) - f(x) - \nabla f(x)^T (y-x) - \langle \nabla^2 f(x) (y-x), y-x \rangle |$$

$$= | \int_0^1 \tau(y-x)^T \int_0^1 (\nabla^2 f(x+t\tau(y-x)) - \nabla^2 f(x)) dt (y-x) dt |$$

$$\leq \int_0^1 \tau(y-x)^T \int_0^1 \| \nabla^2 f(x+t\tau(y-x)) - \nabla^2 f(x) \| dt (y-x) dt$$

$$\leq \int_0^1 \tau (y-x)^T \int_0^1 M t \tau \|y-x\| dt \|y-x\| d\tau$$

$$= \int_0^1 \frac{1}{2} M \tau^2 \|y-x\|^3 d\tau = \frac{1}{6} M \|y-x\|^3$$



1.2.3 The gradient Method

Choose $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$

Iterate $x_{k+1} = x_k - h_k \nabla f(x_k), k=0,1,\dots$

Armijo rule: $x_{k+1} = x_k - h \nabla f(x_k), h > 0$, s.t.

$$\alpha \langle \nabla f(x_k), x_k - x_{k+1} \rangle \leq f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\beta \langle \nabla f(x_k), x_k - x_{k+1} \rangle \geq f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \quad \dots (2)$$

解释:

条件 (1):

$$f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \geq \alpha h_k \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 \geq 0$$

即算法是下降的

条件 (2):

$$h_k \geq \frac{f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1})}{\beta \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2} \geq \frac{h_k (1 - \frac{1}{2} h_k L)}{\beta}$$

$$\text{则 } h_k \geq \frac{2(1-\beta)}{L}$$

步长又不能太小

§ 1.2.3 The Gradient Method

考虑 $\min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} f(x)$, $f \in C_L^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, 且下方有界

令 $y = x - h \nabla f(x)$, 则

$$f(y) \leq f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle + \frac{L}{2} \|y - x\|^2$$

$$= f(x) - \underbrace{h(1 - \frac{h}{2}L) \|\nabla f(x)\|^2}_{\text{下降量}}$$

下降量

故作 $\Delta(h) = -h(1 - \frac{h}{2}L)$, 找 $\min_{h>0} \Delta(h)$, 从而有尽可能大的下降, 由 $\Delta(h)$ 是关于 h 的二次 func, 则

$$h^* = \frac{1}{L}$$

则一步 gradient descent 下降量有:

$$f(y) \leq f(x) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x)\|^2$$

下面考虑另一种步长选取:

令 $x_{k+1} = x_k - h_k \nabla f(x_k)$ (对固定步长时, $h_k = h, \forall k$)

则同理:

$$f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \geq h_k \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} L h_k\right) \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

若取 $h_k = \frac{2\alpha}{L}$, $\alpha \in (0, 1)$, 则

$$f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \geq \frac{2}{L} \underbrace{\alpha(1-\alpha)} \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

显然 $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$ 时, 取 max, 故 $h_k = \frac{1}{L}$, 与刚才是统一的.

故对于 Full relaxation

$$f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \geq \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

最后: 考虑 Armijo rule, 由 $x_{k+1} = x_k - h_k \nabla f(x_k)$

$$f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \leq \beta \langle \nabla f(x_k), x_k - x_{k+1} \rangle = \beta h_k \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

$$f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \geq h_k \left(1 - \frac{h_k L}{2}\right) \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

$$\text{故 } \beta \geq 1 - \frac{h_k L}{2}, \text{ 即 } h_k \geq \frac{2}{L} (1 - \beta)$$

又由 Armijo rule:

$$f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \geq \alpha \langle \nabla f(x_k), x_k - x_{k+1} \rangle = \alpha h_k \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

$$\geq \frac{2}{L} \alpha (1 - \beta) \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

综上：无论3种步长选取方式，均有

$$f(x_k) - f(x_{k+1}) \geq \frac{\omega}{L} \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2, \omega \in \mathbb{R}^+$$

故

$$\frac{\omega}{L} \sum_{k=0}^N \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 \leq f(x_0) - f(x_{N+1}) \leq f(x_0) - f^*$$

取 $N \rightarrow +\infty$, 则 $\|\nabla f(x_k)\| \rightarrow 0$ ($k \rightarrow \infty$)

$$\text{令 } g_N^* = \min_{0 \leq k \leq N} \|\nabla f(x_k)\|$$

$$(N+1) \frac{\omega}{L} g_N^{*2} \leq \frac{\omega}{L} \sum_{k=0}^N \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 \leq f(x_0) - f^*$$

$$\text{则 } g_N^* \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{N+1}} \left[\frac{1}{\omega} L (f(x_0) - f^*) \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

可以说 $\|\nabla f(x_k)\|$ 的收敛, 但没有 x_k 与 $f(x_k)$ 的收敛

例:

$$f(x) \equiv f(x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}) = \frac{1}{2} (x^{(1)})^2 + \frac{1}{4} (x^{(2)})^4 - \frac{1}{2} (x^{(2)})^2$$

$$\text{则 } \nabla^2 f(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 3(x^{(2)})^2 - 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

则 $\|\nabla^2 f(x)\| = \max\{1, 3(x^{(2)})^2 - 1\}$, 则 $f \notin C_L^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^2)$

$$\nabla f(x) = (x^{(1)}, (x^{(2)})^3 - x^{(2)})^T$$

则 $x_1^* = (0, 0)$, $x_2^* = (0, 1)$, $x_3^* = (0, -1)$

则 x_1^* 不是局部极小 $\left(\nabla^2 f(x_1^*) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \right)$

但当 $x_0 = (1, 0)$, 则 $\nabla f(x_0)$ 的第二分量也是 0,

则 $\forall k, x_k^{(2)} = 0$, 又由 $\|\nabla f(x_k)\| \rightarrow 0$, 故 $x_k \rightarrow x_1^*$



$$\text{令 } \frac{1}{N} \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{N+1}} \left[\frac{1}{20} L (f(x_0) - f^*) \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \delta$$

$$N+1 \geq \frac{L}{20\delta^2} (f(x_0) - f^*) \quad \text{复杂度上界}$$

下面考虑更特殊一类问题, 从而保证梯度下降收敛到

局部最优:

$$\min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} f(x)$$

假设

1) $f \in C_m^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^n)$

2) \exists 局部极小 $x^* \in \mathbb{R}^n$, s.t. $\nabla^2 f(x^*) \succ 0$

3) 我们知道某个 bound $0 < \mu \leq L < \infty$, s.t.

$$\mu I_n \leq \nabla^2 f(x^*) \leq L I_n$$

4) 初始点 x_0 与 x^* 足够近

考虑 $x_{k+1} = x_k - h_k \nabla f(x_k)$

则

$$\nabla f(x_k) = \nabla f(x_k) - \nabla f(x^*)$$

$$= \int_0^1 \nabla^2 f(x^* + \tau(x_k - x^*)) (x_k - x^*) d\tau$$

$$= G_k (x_k - x^*)$$

$$G_k = \int_0^1 \nabla^2 f(x^* + \tau(x_k - x^*)) d\tau$$

故

$$x_{k+1} - x^* = x_k - h_k \nabla f(x_k) - x^* = (I_n - h_k G_k) (x_k - x^*)$$

下证: $I_n - h_k G_k : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ 是一个压缩映射

令 $r_k = \|x_k - x^*\|$, 由推论 1.2.2

$$\underbrace{\nabla^2 f(x^*)}_{\gamma I_n} - \tau M r_k I_n \preceq \nabla^2 f(x^* + \tau(x_k - x^*)) \preceq \underbrace{\nabla^2 f(x^*)}_{\lambda I_n} + \tau M r_k I_n$$

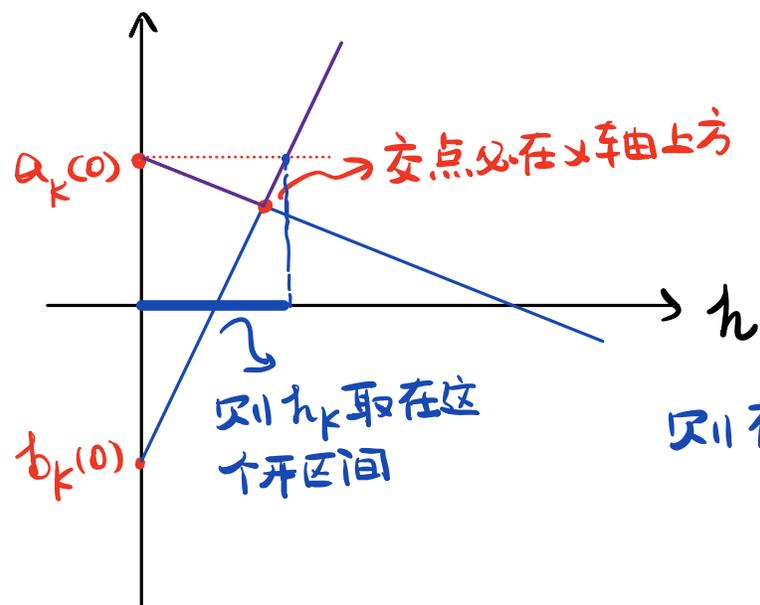
故 $(\lambda - \frac{\tau_k}{2} M) I_n \preceq G_k \preceq (L + \frac{\tau_k}{2} M) I_n$

故 $(1 - h_k (L + \frac{\tau_k}{2} M)) I_n \preceq I_n - h_k G_k \preceq (1 - h_k (\lambda - \frac{\tau_k}{2} M)) I_n$

$\Rightarrow \|I_n - h_k G_k\| \leq \max \{a_k(h_k), b_k(h_k)\}$

$a_k(h) = 1 - h (\lambda - \frac{\tau_k}{2} M)$ $b_k(h) = -1 + h (L + \frac{\tau_k}{2} M)$

若 $0 < \tau_k < \bar{\tau} \equiv \frac{2\lambda}{M}$ (令 $a_k(\cdot)$ 是 \downarrow 的)



故 $\exists h_k$ 充分小,

s.t. $\|I_n - h_k G_k\| < 1$

则有 $r_{k+1} \leq \|I_n - h_k G_k\| r_k < r_k$

在 $\tau_0 < \tau$ 的大前提下

$$\text{找 } \min_h \max \{a_k(h), b_k(h)\}$$

$$\text{则 } a_k(h) = b_k(h) \Leftrightarrow 1 - h(\mu - \frac{r_k}{2}M) = -1 + h(L + \frac{r_k}{2}M)$$

$$\text{故 } h_k^* = \frac{2}{L + \mu} \quad (\text{与 Lipschitz 常数 } M \text{ 是无关的})$$

故取 h_k^* 作步长的话

$$\tau_{k+1} \leq \|I_n - h_k B_k\| \tau_k \leq a_k(h_k^*) \tau_k$$

$$= \frac{(L - \mu) \tau_k}{L + \mu} + \frac{M r_k^2}{L + \mu}$$

$$\text{不妨令 } q = \frac{2\mu}{L + \mu}, \quad a_k = \frac{M}{L + \mu} \tau_k$$

则

$$\frac{M}{L + \mu} \tau_{k+1} \leq (1 - \frac{2\mu}{L + \mu}) \frac{M}{L + \mu} \tau_k + (\frac{M}{L + \mu} \tau_k)^2$$

$$a_k - q = \frac{1}{L + \mu} (M \tau_k - 2\mu) < 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow a_{k+1} \leq (1 - q) a_k + a_k^2 = a_k (1 + (a_k - q))$$

$$= \frac{a_k (1 - (a_k - q)^2)}{1 - (a_k - q)} \leq \frac{a_k}{1 + q - a_k}$$

$$a_k - q > -1, \text{ 由 } a_k - q = \frac{Mr_k - 2\mu}{L + \mu} \leq -1$$

$$\underbrace{Mr_k}_{> 0} \leq \underbrace{-L + \mu}_{< 0} \cdot \text{矛盾!}$$

$$\text{故 } \frac{1}{a_{k+1}} \geq \frac{1+q}{a_k} - 1, \text{ 这等价于:}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{q}{a_{k+1}} - 1 &\geq \frac{q(1+q)}{a_k} - q - 1 \\ &= (1+q) \left(\frac{q}{a_k} - 1 \right) \\ &\geq (1+q)^n \left(\frac{q}{a_0} - 1 \right) \\ &= (1+q)^n \left(\frac{2\mu}{L+\mu} \cdot \frac{L+\mu}{r_0 M} - 1 \right) \\ &= (1+q)^n \left(\frac{\bar{r}}{r_0} - 1 \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } a_k \leq \frac{qr_0}{r_0 + (1+q)^k (\bar{r} - r_0)} \leq \frac{qr_0}{\bar{r} - r_0} \left(\frac{1}{1+q} \right)^k$$

$$\text{又由 } q = \frac{2\mu}{L+\mu}, a_k = \frac{M}{L+\mu} r_k$$

$$\|x_k - x^*\| \leq \frac{\bar{r}r_0}{\bar{r} - r_0} \left(1 - \frac{2\mu}{L+3\mu} \right)^k$$

1.2.4 得证



1.2.4 Newton's Method

令 $\phi(\cdot): \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, 考虑 $\phi(t^*) = 0$ (方程)

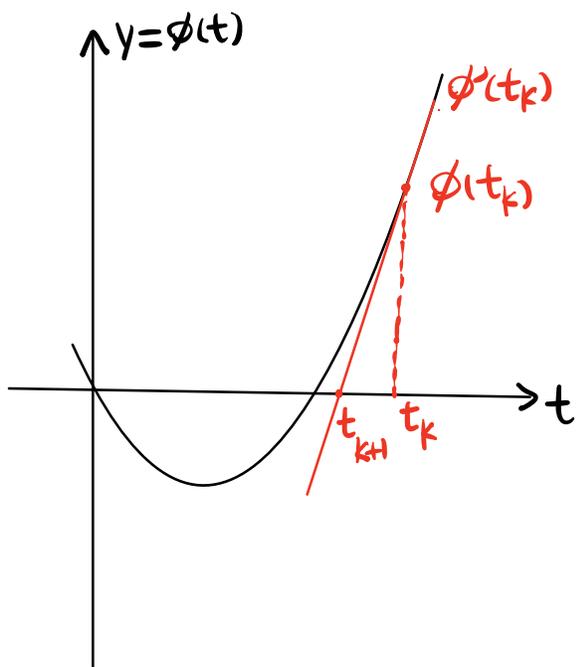
由

$$\phi(t + \Delta t) = \phi(t) + \phi'(t)\Delta t + o(|\Delta t|)$$

则 $\phi(t + \Delta t) = 0$ 可以用 $\phi(t) + \phi'(t)\Delta t = 0$ 估计

$$\text{即 } \Delta t = -\frac{\phi(t)}{\phi'(t)}$$

则有迭代序列: $t_{k+1} = t_k - \frac{\phi(t_k)}{\phi'(t_k)}$



如图:

$$\frac{\phi(t_k)}{t_k - t_{k+1}} = \phi'(t_k)$$

同理, 对于方程组: $F(x) = 0$

$$F(\cdot): \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$$

那么设 $F'(x)$ 可逆, 则同理有:

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - [F'(x_k)]^{-1} F(x_k)$$

将上述方法用在优化问题, 可以将无约束优化问题

转化成求解方程: (必要条件)

$$\nabla f(x) = 0$$

$$\text{则有: } x_{k+1} = x_k - [\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1} \nabla f(x_k) \quad \dots \quad \textcircled{1}$$

注意到, 迭代公式①可以用二次估计的角度获得:

令

$$\phi(x) = f(x_k) + \langle \nabla f(x_k), x - x_k \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle \nabla^2 f(x_k)(x - x_k), x - x_k \rangle$$

假设 $\nabla^2 f(x_k) > 0$, 则

$$\nabla \phi(x) = \nabla f(x_k) + \nabla^2 f(x_k)(x - x_k)$$

令 x_{k+1} 满足: $\nabla \phi(x_{k+1}) = 0$, 则

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - [\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1} \nabla f(x_k) \dots \textcircled{1}$$

Newton法的 drawbacks:

① $\nabla^2 f(x_k)$ 奇异 ② 发散

例 1.2.3

$$\phi(t) = \frac{t}{\sqrt{1+t^2}} \quad (t^* = 0)$$

$$\phi'(t) = (1+t^2)^{-\frac{3}{2}}$$

则

$$t_{k+1} = t_k - \frac{\phi(t_k)}{\phi'(t_k)} = t_k - t_k(1+t_k^2) = -t_k^3$$

故若 $|t_0| < 1$, 则 $t_k \rightarrow 0 (k \rightarrow +\infty)$

$|t_0| = 1$ 时, 振荡

$|t_0| > 1$ 时, 发散



所以,为了避免发散的情形,有如下 damped Newton 法

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - h_k [\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1} \nabla f(x_k)$$

h_k 在初始时取 gradient 法的步长,在最后,取 $h_k = 1$

为了建立 Newton 法收敛性,假设对优化问题

$$\min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} f(x)$$

① $f \in C_M^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^n)$

② $\nabla^2 f(x^*) \succeq \mu I_n, \mu > 0$

③ x_0 离 x^* 足够近

则不妨设 $\nabla^2 f(x_k)$ 可逆 ($\nabla^2 f(x_0)$ 可逆,由 x_0 与 x^* 足够近)

则:

$$x_{k+1} - x^* = x_k - x^* - [\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1} \nabla f(x_k)$$

$$= x_k - x^* - [\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1} \int_0^1 \nabla^2 f(x^* + \tau(x_k - x^*)) (x_k - x^*) d\tau$$

$$= [\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1} G_k (x_k - x^*)$$

$$\text{其中 } G_k = \int_0^1 [\nabla^2 f(x_k) - \nabla^2 f(x^* + \tau(x_k - x^*))] d\tau$$

$$\text{令 } r_k = \|x_k - x^*\|, \text{ 则}$$

$$\|G_k\| = \left\| \int_0^1 [\nabla^2 f(x_k) - \nabla^2 f(x^* + \tau(x_k - x^*))] d\tau \right\|$$

$$\leq \int_0^1 \|\nabla^2 f(x_k) - \nabla^2 f(x^* + \tau(x_k - x^*))\| d\tau$$

$$\leq \int_0^1 M \|x_k - \tau(x_k - x^*) - x^*\| d\tau$$

$$= \int_0^1 M(1-\tau)r_k d\tau = \frac{M}{2} r_k$$

由推论 1.2.2

$$\nabla^2 f(x_k) \succeq \nabla^2 f(x^*) - M r_k I_n \succeq (\mu - M r_k) I_n$$

故若 $\mu - M r_k > 0$, $r_k < \frac{\mu}{M}$ (即 $\exists \epsilon > 0$, s.t. $\nabla^2 f(x_k) \succeq \epsilon I$)

故 $\lambda_{\min}(\nabla^2 f(x_k)) \geq \epsilon$, 则

$$\lambda_{\max}(\nabla^2 f(x_k)^{-1}) \leq \epsilon^{-1}, \text{ 即}$$

$$\|[\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1}\| \leq (\mu - M r_k)^{-1}$$

↓
 $\|\cdot\|$ 只能是导出的算子范数

故

$$\begin{aligned} r_{k+1} &\leq \| [\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1} \| \| G_k \| r_k \\ &= \frac{M r_k}{2(\mu - M r_k)} \cdot r_k \end{aligned}$$

则 $\frac{M r_k}{2(\mu - M r_k)} < 1$, 即 $r_k < \frac{2\mu}{3M}$ 时,

$$\text{有 } r_{k+1} \leq \frac{M r_k^2}{2(\mu - M r_k)} \leq r_k$$

(自然地, $\nabla^2 f(x_{k+1})$ 也可逆, 故迭代是有意义的, 设 $\exists \delta > 0$.

s.t. $\forall x \in B(x^*, \delta)$, 均有 $\nabla^2 f(x) > 0$, 故只需 $\|x_0 - x^*\| \leq \delta$,
, 则 $\forall k, x_k \in B(x^*, \delta)$)

定理 1.2.5 得证!

注: Gradient Method 要求 $r_0 < \frac{2\mu}{M}$, 而

Newton Method 要求 $r_0 < \frac{2\mu}{3M}$ 是一个量级的, 故

可以先用梯度法迭代有限步进入 $B(x^*, \frac{2\mu}{3M})$, 再用 Newton 法

收敛率:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \cdot \text{次线性} \quad r_k \leq \frac{C}{\sqrt{k}} \dots \\ \cdot \text{线性} \quad r_k \leq c(1-q)^k \leq ce^{-qk} \\ \cdot \text{二次} \quad r_{k+1} \leq er_k^2 \end{array} \right.$$

1.3.1

对于优化问题

$$\min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} f(x)$$

$f \in C_M^{2,2}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, 牛顿法与梯度法都为了找局部极小

牛顿法有二次收敛而梯度法只有线性收敛, 为什么

会出现这样的不同呢?

对于固定点 $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, 作 $f(\cdot)$ 的估计 $\phi(\cdot)$

$$\phi_1(x) = f(x_k) + \langle \nabla f(x_k), x - x_k \rangle + \frac{1}{2h} \|x - x_k\|^2 \quad (h > 0)$$

则 $x_{k+1} = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} \phi_1(x) \Leftrightarrow$

$$\nabla \phi_1(x_{k+1}) = \nabla f(x_k) + \frac{1}{h} (x_{k+1} - x_k) = 0$$

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - h \nabla f(x_k) \quad \dots \text{梯度法}$$

注意到, 由 Lemma 1.2.3, 若 $h \in (0, \frac{1}{L}]$, 则

$$f(x) \leq \phi_1(x), \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

我们还可以对 $f(\cdot)$ 作二次估计

$$\phi_2(x) = f(x_k) + \langle \nabla f(x_k), x - x_k \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle \nabla^2 f(x_k)(x - x_k), x - x_k \rangle$$

则令 $x_{k+1} = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} \phi_2(x)$ 知:

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - [\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1} \nabla f(x_k)$$

容易看到 ϕ_2 的估计精度是高于 ϕ_1 的, 因此易知

牛顿法的收敛速度比梯度法快, 但 ϕ_2 要算 $[\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1}$,

计算量更大

令 $G_k \in S_+^n$, 定义

$$\phi_{G_k}(x) = f(x_k) + \langle \nabla f(x_k), x - x_k \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle G_k(x - x_k), x - x_k \rangle$$

则令 $x_{k+1} = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} \phi_{G_k}(x)$, 则

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - G_k^{-1} \nabla f(x_k)$$

生成矩阵序列 $H_k \equiv G_k^{-1} \rightarrow [\nabla^2 f(x_k)]^{-1}$

这是一个一阶算法,生成 G_k 或 H_k 时仅用到了梯度信息,
叫做 variable metric 法或 Quasi-Newton 法

定义内积空间 $(\mathbb{R}^n, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_A)$

$$\langle x, y \rangle_A = \langle Ax, y \rangle, \forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

则内积诱导的范数是 $\|x\|_A = \langle Ax, x \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}$

$(\mathbb{R}^n, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_A)$ 与欧式空间线性同胚

$$\begin{aligned} f(x+h) &= f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), h \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle \nabla^2 f(x) h, h \rangle + o(\|h\|) \\ &= f(x) + \langle A^{-1} \nabla f(x), h \rangle_A + \frac{1}{2} \langle A^{-1} \nabla^2 f(x) h, h \rangle_A + o(\|h\|_A) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } \nabla f_A(x) = A^{-1} \nabla f(x)$$

$$\nabla^2 f_A(x) = A^{-1} \nabla^2 f(x)$$

关于不同坐标系下求梯度

在有限维空间下, 1-form df 一定是不变量
(不是向量场)

(由于有限维空间各种拓扑等价, 而

$$df(v_0) = \lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+tv_0) - f(x)}{t}$$

只依赖拓扑, 不依赖度量, 故在坐标变换下是不变的)

在二维下考虑 (不失一般地)

变换前坐标系是 (x, y) , 变换后是 (u, v)

则在 (x, y) 下: $v = (a, b)$

$$\begin{aligned} df(v) &= \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} dy \\ &= a f_x + b f_y \end{aligned}$$

梯度最原始的定义是

$$\langle \nabla f, \vec{v} \rangle_g = df(\vec{v}), \text{ 对 } \forall \vec{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

由 Riesz 表示定理, ∇f 一定是存在的, 但依赖度量

$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_g$ 表示任一内积

在 (x, y) 下, 内积是通常的内积:

$$\langle (a, b), (c, d) \rangle = ac + bd$$

但在 (u, v) 下, 内积有如下形式:

$$a dx + b dy = (ax_u + by_u) du + (ax_v + by_v) dv$$

$$\text{故 } \langle (a, b), (c, d) \rangle_g = (x_u^2 + y_u^2) ac +$$

$$(x_u x_v + y_u y_v) (bc + ad) + (x_v^2 + y_v^2) bd$$

$$\text{所以, 若变换是 } \begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 x \\ \alpha_2 y \end{pmatrix}$$

则

$$\langle (a, b), (c, d) \rangle_g = \frac{ac}{\alpha_1^2} + \frac{bd}{\alpha_2^2}$$

则 $\nabla f = (p, q)$ (在 (x, y) 下表示) 满足

$$df(v) = \langle \nabla f, v \rangle \quad \forall v$$

$$a f_x + b f_y = \frac{ap}{\alpha_1^2} + \frac{bq}{\alpha_2^2}$$

故令 $v = (1, 0), (0, 1)$ 即得

$$\nabla f = (\alpha_1^2 f_x, \alpha_2^2 f_y)$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1^2 & \\ & \alpha_2^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} f_x \\ f_y \end{pmatrix}$$

看回本例: $x^T A x = \langle x, x \rangle_A$

若此时有 $A = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\alpha_1^2} & \\ & \frac{1}{\alpha_2^2} \end{pmatrix}$

那么相当于作变换:

$$x' = A^{-\frac{1}{2}} x$$

$$\text{即 } \begin{pmatrix} x'_1 \\ x'_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 x_1 \\ \alpha_2 x_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

原空间单位向量 v

$$v \mapsto A^{-\frac{1}{2}} v$$

$$\text{则 } \|A^{-\frac{1}{2}} v\|_A = v^T A^{-\frac{1}{2}} A A^{-\frac{1}{2}} v = 1$$

则由刚刚的推导

$$\nabla f_A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1^2 & \\ & \alpha_2^2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} f_x \\ f_y \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} f_x \\ f_y \end{pmatrix}$$

当 A 不是对角阵时, 不妨设

止 k 时 x_u, y_u 项就有?

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ b & c \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \quad (*)$$

同理可以计算, 这时 $A = R^T \Lambda R$

$$= (\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}} R)^T (\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}} R)$$

变换阵是 $R^T \Lambda^{-\frac{1}{2}}$, 可代入

$(*)$ 时的计算结果

df 是拓扑不变量, 但 $\square f$ 不是 (依赖度量)

Variable metric method
0. Choose $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Set $H_0 = I_n$. Compute $f(x_0)$ and $\nabla f(x_0)$.
1. k th iteration ($k \geq 0$). (a) Set $p_k = H_k \nabla f(x_k)$. (b) Find $x_{k+1} = x_k - h_k p_k$ (see Section 1.2.3 for step size rules). (c) Compute $f(x_{k+1})$ and $\nabla f(x_{k+1})$. (d) Update the matrix H_k to H_{k+1} .

Quasi-Newton rule

$$H_{k+1} (\nabla f(x_{k+1}) - \nabla f(x_k)) = x_{k+1} - x_k$$

1.3.2 Conjugate Gradient

$$\min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} f(x) = \alpha + \langle a, x \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle Ax, x \rangle, A > 0$$

则显然 $x^* = -A^{-1}a$, 那么目标 func 可以变形

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \alpha + \langle a, x \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle Ax, x \rangle \\ &= \alpha - \langle Ax^*, x \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle Ax, x \rangle \\ &= \alpha - \frac{1}{2} \langle Ax^*, x^* \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \langle A(x-x^*), (x-x^*) \rangle \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{则 } f^* = \alpha - \frac{1}{2} \langle Ax^*, x^* \rangle, \nabla f(x) = A(x-x^*)$$

给定初始点 $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$, 则定义 Krylov 子空间:

$$\mathcal{L}_k = \text{span} \{ A(x_0 - x^*), \dots, A^k(x_0 - x^*) \}$$

$$\text{则 } x_k = \arg \min \{ f(x) \mid x \in x_0 + \mathcal{L}_k \}, k \geq 1$$

如此生成 $\{x_k\}$ 叫共轭梯度法

注：如此做必能找到 $x^* = -A^{-1}a$

$$\chi(\lambda) = \det(\lambda I - A) = \lambda^n + \alpha_1 \lambda^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n$$

则由 Hamilton-Caley 定理

$$\chi(A) = A^n + \alpha_1 A^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n I$$

由 $A > 0$, $\lambda_n \neq 0$, 故 $\alpha_n \neq 0$

$$x^* - x_0 = \frac{1}{\alpha_n} A^n (x_0 - x^*) + \dots + \frac{\alpha_{n-1}}{\alpha_n} A (x_0 - x^*) \in \mathcal{L}_n$$

故 $x^* \in x_0 + \mathcal{L}_n$

□

(n步之内有解)

注2:

$$\mathcal{L}_1 \supseteq \mathcal{L}_2 \supseteq \dots \supseteq \mathcal{L}_k = \mathcal{L}_{k+1} = \dots = \mathcal{L}_n = \dots$$

引理 1.3.1

若 $A^{k+1}(x_0 - x^*) \notin \mathcal{L}_k$, 则 $x_k \neq x_{k+1}$, 反之 $x_k \neq x_{k+1}$,

则 $A^{k+1}(x_0 - x^*) \notin \mathcal{L}_k$

证明: 反过来是显然的, 下证 (\Rightarrow)

由 $A^{k+1}(x_0 - x^*) \notin \mathcal{L}_k$, 不妨令

$x_{k+1} = x_0 + y + \lambda A^{k+1}(x_0 - x^*)$, 其中 y 满足

$x_k = x_0 + y$ (y 是存在唯一的)

则 $f(x_{k+1}) = \frac{1}{2} \langle A(x_{k+1} - x^*), x_{k+1} - x^* \rangle + \text{const}$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \langle A(x_0 + y + \lambda A^{k+1}(x_0 - x^*) - x^*), x_0 + y + \lambda A^{k+1}(x_0 - x^*) - x^* \rangle + \text{const}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \langle A(x_0 + y - x^*), x_0 + y - x^* \rangle +$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \langle A(x_0 + y - x^*), \lambda A^{k+1}(x_0 - x^*) \rangle +$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \langle \lambda A^{k+2}(x_0 - x^*), x_0 + y - x^* \rangle + o(\lambda) + \text{const}$$

$$= f(x_k) + \lambda \langle A^{k+2}(x_0 - x^*), x_0 - x^* \rangle + \lambda \langle A^{k+2}(x_0 - x^*), y \rangle$$

$$+ o(\lambda) +$$

由 $A \succ 0$, $y = \sum_{j=1}^k \lambda^{(j)} A^j (x_0 - x^*)$, 故取 $\lambda < 0$, 且 $|\lambda|$ 足够小,

可以使 $f(x_{k+1}) < f(x_k)$

□

Lemma 1.3.1

$\forall k \geq 1$, $\perp_k = \text{span} \{ \nabla f(x_0), \dots, \nabla f(x_{k-1}) \}$

证明: 用数学归纳法:

$n=1$ 时, $\nabla f(x_0) = A(x_0 - x^*)$, 成立

设对 $n=k$ 时成立, 下证对 $n=k+1$ 成立

$$x_k = x_0 + \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda^{(i)} A^i (x_0 - x^*) \in x_0 + \perp_k \quad \exists \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^k$$

当 $\lambda^{(k)} = 0$ 时:

有 $x_k \in \perp_{k-1}$, 故 $x_k = x_{k-1}$, 故 $\perp_k = \perp_{k-1}$, 从而

$$\begin{aligned} \perp_k &= \text{span} \{ \nabla f(x_0), \dots, \nabla f(x_{k-2}) \} \\ &= \text{span} \{ \nabla f(x_0), \dots, \nabla f(x_{k-2}), \nabla f(x_{k-1}) \} \end{aligned}$$

当 $\lambda^{(k)} \neq 0$ 时

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla f(x_k) &= A(x_0 - x^*) + \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda^{(i)} A^{i+1}(x_0 - x^*) \\ &= y + \lambda^{(k)} A^{k+1}(x_0 - x^*)\end{aligned}$$

其中 $y \in \perp_k$

$$\begin{aligned}\perp_{k+1} &\equiv \text{Span} \{ \perp_k \cup A^{k+1}(x_0 - x^*) \} \\ &= \text{Span} \{ \perp_k \cup (\nabla f(x_k) - y) \} \\ &= \text{Span} \{ \perp_k \cup \nabla f(x_k) \} \\ &= \text{Span} \{ \nabla f(x_0), \dots, \nabla f(x_k) \}\end{aligned}$$

□

引理 1.3.2

$\forall k, i > 0, k \neq i$, 有 $\langle \nabla f(x_k), \nabla f(x_i) \rangle = 0$

证明:

不妨令 $k > i$, 考虑.

$$\phi(\lambda) = f(x_0 + \sum_{j=1}^k \lambda^{(j)} \nabla f(x_{j-1})), \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^k$$

由引理 1.3.1, $\exists \lambda_* \in \mathbb{R}^k$, s.t.

$$x_k = x_0 + \sum_{j=1}^k \lambda_x^{(j)} \nabla f(x_{j-1})$$

由 x_k 是 $f(x)$ 在 $x_0 + \mathcal{L}_k$ 上的极小值, 故

$$\nabla \phi(\lambda_x) = 0$$

$$0 = \left. \frac{\partial \phi(\lambda)}{\partial \lambda^{(j)}} \right|_{\lambda = \lambda_x} = \langle \nabla f(x_k), \nabla f(x_{j-1}) \rangle \quad \forall j=1, \dots, k$$



令 $\delta_i = x_{i+1} - x_i$, 则 $\mathcal{L}_k = \text{span}\{\delta_0, \dots, \delta_{k-1}\}$

证明: 同样用数学归纳法

$n=0$ 时, 设 $x_1 = x_0 + \alpha \nabla f(x_0)$

$$\delta_0 = x_1 - x_0 = \alpha \nabla f(x_0), \text{ 成立}$$

设 $n=k-1$ 时成立, 证明 $n=k$ 时成立

$$\delta_k = x_{k+1} - x_k$$

$$= x_0 + \sum_{j=0}^k \alpha_1^{(j)} \nabla f(x_j) - x_0 + \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} \lambda_2^{(j)} \nabla f(x_j)$$

$$= \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} (\alpha_1^{(j)} - \lambda_2^{(j)}) \nabla f(x_j) + \alpha_1^{(k)} \nabla f(x_k)$$

$\lambda_1^{(k)} = 0$ 时, 即 $x_{k+1} \in \perp_k$, 故 $\perp_{k+1} = \perp_k$ ✓

$\lambda_1^{(k)} \neq 0$ 时

$$\begin{aligned}\perp_{k+1} &= \text{span} \{ \delta_0, \dots, \delta_{k-1}, \nabla f(x_k) \} \\ &= \text{span} \{ \delta_0, \dots, \delta_k \}\end{aligned}$$
 ✓

□

引理 1.3.3

$\forall k, i \geq 0, k \neq i$, 有 $\langle A\delta_k, \delta_i \rangle = 0$

证: WLOG, 设 $k > i$, 则

$$\begin{aligned}\langle A\delta_k, \delta_i \rangle &= \langle A(x_{k+1} - x_k), \delta_i \rangle \\ &= \langle \nabla f(x_{k+1}) - \nabla f(x_k), \delta_i \rangle\end{aligned}$$

$\delta_i = x_{i+1} - x_i \in \perp_{i+1} \subseteq \perp_k \subseteq \perp_{k+1}$, 从而

$$\langle A\delta_k, \delta_i \rangle = 0$$

□

由 $\perp_k = \text{span} \{ \delta_0, \dots, \delta_{k-1} \} = \text{span} \{ \delta_0, \dots, \delta_{k-2}, \nabla f(x_{k-1}) \}$

则 $x_{k+1} \in \perp_{k+1}$ 总可以表示成如下形式:

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - h_k \nabla f(x_k) + \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} \lambda^{(j)} \delta_j$$

$$\delta_k = -h_k \nabla f(x_k) + \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} \lambda^{(j)} \delta_j$$

则对 $0 \leq i \leq k-1$, 有

$$0 = \langle A \delta_k, \delta_i \rangle$$

$$= -h_k \langle A \nabla f(x_k), \delta_i \rangle + \sum_{j=0}^{k-1} \lambda^{(j)} \langle A \delta_j, \delta_i \rangle$$

$$= -h_k \langle \nabla f(x_k), A \delta_i \rangle + \lambda^{(i)} \langle A \delta_i, \delta_i \rangle$$

$$= -h_k \langle \nabla f(x_k), \nabla f(x_{i+1}) - \nabla f(x_i) \rangle + \lambda^{(i)} \langle A \delta_i, \delta_i \rangle$$

故当 $i < k-1$ 时, $\lambda_i = 0$

$i = k-1$ 时

$$0 = -h_k \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 + \lambda^{(k-1)} \langle A \delta_i, \delta_i \rangle$$

$$\lambda^{(k-1)} = \frac{h_k \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2}{\langle A \delta_{k-1}, \delta_{k-1} \rangle} = \frac{h_k \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2}{\langle \nabla f(x_k) - \nabla f(x_{k-1}), \delta_{k-1} \rangle}$$

故

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - h_k \nabla f(x_k) + \lambda^{(k-1)} s_{k-1}$$

$$= x_k - h_k p_k$$

$$p_k = \nabla f(x_k) - \frac{\|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 s_{k-1}}{\langle \nabla f(x_k) - \nabla f(x_{k-1}), s_{k-1} \rangle}$$

$$= \nabla f(x_k) - \frac{\|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 p_{k-1}}{\langle \nabla f(x_k) - \nabla f(x_{k-1}), p_{k-1} \rangle}$$

(由 $s_{k-1} = -h_{k-1} p_{k-1}$)

则我们定义了方向 $\{p_k\}$

关于Schmidt正交化过程, 在内积空间 $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_A$ 中

给定 $(\nabla f(x_0), \dots, \nabla f(x_{n-1}))$, 想找

(p_0, \dots, p_{n-1}) 使得 $\langle p_i, p_j \rangle_A$ 正交

最原始的做法(不用二次func的性质)

$$p_{i+1} = \nabla f(x_{i+1}) + \sum_{j=0}^i \lambda_j^{(i+1)} p_j$$

则由, $k=0, \dots, i$ 时

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \langle p_{i+1}, p_k \rangle_A = \langle \nabla f(x_{i+1}), p_k \rangle_A + \sum_{j=0}^i \lambda_j^{(i+1)} \langle p_j, p_k \rangle_A \\ &= \langle \nabla f(x_{i+1}), p_k \rangle_A + \lambda_k^{(i+1)} \langle p_k, p_k \rangle_A \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } \lambda_k^{(i+1)} = - \frac{\langle \nabla f(x_{i+1}), p_k \rangle_A}{\langle p_k, p_k \rangle_A}$$

$$\text{故 } p_{i+1} = \nabla f(x_{i+1}) - \sum_{j=0}^i \frac{\langle \nabla f(x_{i+1}), p_j \rangle_A}{\langle p_j, p_j \rangle_A} p_j$$

之后再化简就要用到二次func性质:

由 $\langle \nabla f(x_i), \nabla f(x_j) \rangle = 0, i \neq j$

$$\nabla f(x_{i+1}) - \nabla f(x_i) = A(x^{i+1} - x^i) = -h_i A p_i$$

故

$$\langle \nabla f(x_{i+1}), p_j \rangle_A = \langle \nabla f(x_{i+1}), \nabla f(x_{j+1}) - \nabla f(x_j) \rangle \cdot -\frac{1}{h_j}$$

$$= \begin{cases} 0, & j = 0, 1, \dots, i-1 \\ -\frac{1}{h_i} \|\nabla f(x_{i+1})\|^2 \end{cases}$$

而

$$\langle p_j, p_j \rangle_A = -\frac{1}{h_j} p_j^T (\nabla f(x_{j+1}) - \nabla f(x_j))$$

故

$$p_{i+1} = \nabla f(x_{i+1}) - \frac{\|\nabla f(x_{i+1})\|^2}{\langle \nabla f(x_{i+1}) - \nabla f(x_i), p_i \rangle} \cdot p_i$$

与书上对起来, 实际上与书上等价

与 Schmidt 正交化不同的是: 初始的线性无关组给

的特殊, 它们在 $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ 正交, 所以很多系数是 0

1.3.3 Constrained Minimization

$$\min_{x \in Q} f_0(x)$$

$$f_j(x) \leq 0, j=1, \dots, m$$

$Q \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ 是闭的, f_0, \dots, f_m 连续

1.3.3.1 Lagrangian Relaxation

定理 1.3.1

令 $F(x, \lambda)$ 定义在 $x \in Q_1 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n, \lambda \in Q_2 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m, Q_1, Q_2 \neq \emptyset$, 则

$$\sup_{\lambda \in Q_2} \inf_{x \in Q_1} F(x, \lambda) \leq \inf_{x \in Q_1} \sup_{\lambda \in Q_2} F(x, \lambda)$$

证明: 对 $\forall x \in Q_1, \lambda \in Q_2$

$$F(x, \lambda) \leq \sup_{\xi \in Q_2} F(x, \xi)$$

$$\text{则 } \inf_{x \in Q_1} F(x, \lambda) \leq \inf_{x \in Q_1} \sup_{\xi \in Q_2} F(x, \xi) \quad \text{对 } \forall \lambda \in Q_2$$

$$\text{故 } \sup_{\lambda \in Q_2} \inf_{x \in Q_1} F(x, \lambda) \leq \inf_{x \in Q_1} \sup_{\lambda \in Q_2} F(x, \lambda)$$



注意到

$$f^* = \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ f_0(x) : f_j(x) \leq 0, j=1, \dots, m \}$$

$$= \inf_{x \in \Omega} \sup_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_+^m} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda)$$

$$\text{其中 } \mathbb{R}_+^m = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^m, \lambda^{(j)} \geq 0, j=1, \dots, m \}$$

$$\mathcal{L}(x, \lambda) = f_0(x) + \langle \lambda, f(x) \rangle$$

则显然

$$\sup_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_+^m} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda) = \begin{cases} +\infty & , x \notin \Omega \\ f_0(x) & , x \in \Omega \end{cases}, \Omega \text{ 是可行集}$$

定义:

$$\psi(\lambda) = \inf_{x \in \Omega} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda)$$

$$\text{dom } \psi = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^m : \psi(\lambda) > -\infty \}$$

$$X^*(\lambda) = \text{Arg} \inf_{x \in \Omega} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda)$$

假设: 对 $\forall \lambda \in \text{dom} \psi \cap \mathbb{R}_+^m \neq \emptyset$ 时, 有 $X^*(\lambda) \neq \emptyset$

有如下 Lagrangian dual problem:

$$f_* = \sup_{\lambda} \{ \psi(\lambda) : \lambda \in \text{dom} \psi \cap \mathbb{R}_+^m \} \leq f^*$$

注意到: 对 $\forall \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in \text{dom} \psi$, $\forall x_1 \in X^*(\lambda_1)$, $\forall x_2 \in X^*(\lambda_2)$

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\lambda_2) &= f_0(x_2) + \sum_{j=1}^m \lambda_2^{(j)} f_j(x_2) \\ &\leq f_0(x_1) + \sum_{j=1}^m \lambda_2^{(j)} f_j(x_1) \\ &= \psi(\lambda_1) + \langle f(x_1), \lambda_2 - \lambda_1 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

问题在于 $\nabla \psi(\lambda) \big|_{\lambda=\lambda_1} = f(x_1)$?

想证明 $\psi(\lambda)$ 是凹的是简单的, 只需用定义

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(t\lambda_1 + (1-t)\lambda_2) &= \inf \{ f_0(x) + \langle t\lambda_1 + (1-t)\lambda_2, f(x) \rangle \} \\ &= \inf \{ t f_0(x) + t \langle \lambda_1, f(x) \rangle + (1-t) f_0(x) + (1-t) \langle \lambda_2, f(x) \rangle \} \\ &\geq t \inf \{ f_0(x) + \langle \lambda_1, f(x) \rangle \} + (1-t) \inf \{ f_0(x) + \langle \lambda_2, f(x) \rangle \} \\ &= t \psi(\lambda_1) + (1-t) \psi(\lambda_2) \end{aligned}$$

$\psi(\lambda)$ 一定可导吗? 不一定

引理: 设 Q 紧, 令 $\bar{\lambda} \in \mathbb{R}^m$, 设 $X^*(\bar{\lambda}) = \{\bar{x}\}$ 是单点集.

则若 $\lambda_k \rightarrow \bar{\lambda}$, 则设 $x_k \in X^*(\lambda_k)$, 有 $x_k \rightarrow \bar{x}$

证明: 用反证法, 设 $\lambda_k \rightarrow \bar{\lambda}$, $x_k \in X^*(\lambda_k)$, \exists 指标集 N_0 ,

s.t. $\|x_k - \bar{x}\| > \varepsilon > 0$, 对 $\forall k \in N_0$

由 Q 紧, 故 $\exists N_1 \subset N_0$, s.t. $\{x_k\}_{N_1} \rightarrow y \in Q$, 且 $\|y - \bar{x}\| \geq \varepsilon$

对 $\forall \lambda_k, k \in N_1$, 有

$$f_0(x_k) + \langle \lambda_k, f(x_k) \rangle \leq f_0(\bar{x}) + \langle \lambda_k, f(\bar{x}) \rangle$$

两边对 $k \rightarrow +\infty, k \in N_1$, 有

$$f_0(y) + \langle \bar{\lambda}, f(y) \rangle \leq f_0(\bar{x}) + \langle \bar{\lambda}, f(\bar{x}) \rangle$$

故 $y \in X^*(\bar{\lambda})$, 与 $X^*(\bar{\lambda})$ 是单点集矛盾

□

定理：上引理条件下， ψ 在 \bar{x} 处可微，且 $\nabla\psi(\lambda)|_{\lambda=\bar{\lambda}} = f(\bar{x})$

证明：由 f_0, f 连续，则 $\psi(\lambda, \lambda)$ 连续，且 Ω 紧，故对

$\forall \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^m, \exists X_\lambda \in X^*(\lambda)$ ，显然

$$\psi(\lambda) - \psi(\bar{\lambda}) = \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ f_0(x) + \langle \lambda, f(x) \rangle \}$$

$$- \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ f_0(x) + \langle \bar{\lambda}, f(x) \rangle \}$$

$$\leq \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ \langle \lambda - \bar{\lambda}, f(x) \rangle \} \leq \langle \lambda - \bar{\lambda}, f(\bar{x}) \rangle$$

$$\psi(\bar{\lambda}) - \psi(\lambda) \leq \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ \langle \bar{\lambda} - \lambda, f(x) \rangle \}$$

$$\leq \langle \bar{\lambda} - \lambda, f(X_\lambda) \rangle$$

$$\text{故 } 0 \geq \psi(\lambda) - \psi(\bar{\lambda}) - \langle f(\bar{x}), \lambda - \bar{\lambda} \rangle$$

$$\geq \langle \lambda - \bar{\lambda}, f(X_\lambda) - f(\bar{x}) \rangle$$

$$\geq -\|\lambda - \bar{\lambda}\| \|f(X_\lambda) - f(\bar{x})\|$$

$$\text{故} \quad 0 \geq \frac{\psi(\lambda) - \psi(\bar{x}) - \langle f(\bar{x}), \lambda - \bar{x} \rangle}{\|\lambda - \bar{x}\|} \geq -\|f(x_\lambda) - f(\bar{x})\|$$

令 $\lambda \rightarrow \bar{x}$, 则 $x_\lambda \rightarrow \bar{x}$, 故 $f(x_\lambda) \rightarrow f(\bar{x})$

$$\text{故} \quad \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow \bar{x}} \frac{\psi(\lambda) - \psi(\bar{x}) - \langle f(\bar{x}), \lambda - \bar{x} \rangle}{\|\lambda - \bar{x}\|} = 0$$

$$\text{故} \quad \nabla \psi(\lambda) \Big|_{\lambda = \bar{x}} = f(\bar{x})$$



定理 1.3.2 (Certificate of Global Optimality)

令 λ^* 是 (1.3.8) 的最优解, 设 $\exists \varepsilon > 0$, 有

$$\Delta_\varepsilon^+(\lambda^*) = \{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_+^m : \|\lambda - \lambda^*\| \leq \varepsilon\} \subseteq \text{dom } \psi$$

令 $x(\lambda) \in X^*(\lambda)$, $\lambda \neq \lambda^*$ 是唯一-确定的, 且极限:

$$x^* = \lim_{\substack{\lambda \rightarrow \lambda^* \\ \lambda \in \Delta_\varepsilon^+(\lambda^*)}} x(\lambda)$$

是存在的, 则若 $x^* \in X^*(\lambda^*)$, 则 x^* 是 (1.3.5) 的一个全局 optimal

证明:

令 $g(\lambda) = f(x(\lambda))$, 令 $I^* = \{j : \lambda_j^* > 0\}$, 选取 $j \in I^*$, $\varepsilon > 0$,

s.t. $\lambda_* \pm \varepsilon e_j \in \text{dom } \psi \cap \mathbb{R}_+^m$, 则有:

$$\psi(\lambda_*) \leq \psi(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j) + \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), -\varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

$$\leq \psi(\lambda_*) + \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), -\varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

$$\psi(\lambda_*) \leq \psi(\lambda_* - \varepsilon e_j) + \langle g(\lambda_* - \varepsilon e_j), \varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

$$\leq \psi(\lambda_*) + \langle g(\lambda_* - \varepsilon e_j), \varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

$$\text{故 } \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), e_j \rangle \leq 0 \leq \langle g(\lambda_* - \varepsilon e_j), e_j \rangle$$

则令 $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ 得

$$\langle f(x^*), e_j \rangle \leq 0 \leq \langle f(x^*), e_j \rangle$$

$$\text{故 } f_j(x^*) = 0$$

同样地, 若 $j \notin I^*$, 可取 ε 充分小, s.t. $\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j \in \text{dom } \psi \cap \mathbb{R}_+^m$

则

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\lambda_*) &\leq \psi(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j) + \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), -\varepsilon e_j \rangle \\ &\leq \psi(\lambda_*) + \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), -\varepsilon e_j \rangle \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), e_j \rangle \leq 0, \text{ 取 } \varepsilon \rightarrow 0 \text{ 得 } f_j(x^*) \leq 0$$

故 x^* 属于 (1.3.5) 的可行集, 且

$$\lambda_*^{(j)} f_j(x^*) = 0, \quad 1 \leq j \leq m$$

故

$$f_0(x^*) = f_0(x^*) + \sum_{j=1}^m \lambda_*^{(j)} f_j(x^*) = \psi(\lambda_*) \leq f^*$$

$$\text{故 } f_0(x^*) = f^*$$



例: $\Omega = \mathbb{R}^2$, $f_0(x) = \frac{1}{2} \|x - \bar{e}_2\|^2$, $f_1(x) = x^{(1)} - \frac{1}{2} x^{(2)2}$

$\bar{e}_2 = (1, 1)^T$, 则:

$$\mathcal{L}(x, \lambda) = \frac{1}{2} \|x - \bar{e}_2\|^2 + \lambda \left[x^{(1)} - \frac{1}{2} x^{(2)2} \right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} (x^{(1)} - 1)^2 + \frac{1}{2} (x^{(2)} - 1)^2 + \lambda x^{(1)} - \frac{\lambda}{2} x^{(2)2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} x^{(1)2} + (\lambda - 1) x^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2} (1 - \lambda) x^{(2)2} - x^{(2)} + 1$$

故令 $\psi(\lambda) = \inf_{x \in \mathbb{R}^2} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda)$, 则

$$\text{dom} \psi(\lambda) = (-\infty, 1)$$

对于固定 λ , $x(\lambda)$ 可以如下方法求得

$$\begin{cases} x^{(1)}(\lambda) - 1 + \lambda = 0 \\ x^{(2)}(\lambda) - 1 - \lambda x^{(2)}(\lambda) = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x^{(1)}(\lambda) \\ x^{(2)}(\lambda) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - \lambda \\ \frac{1}{1 - \lambda} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \forall \lambda \in \text{dom} \psi(\lambda)$$

$$\psi(\lambda) = \lambda - \frac{1}{2} \lambda^2 - \frac{1}{2(1-\lambda)} + \frac{1}{2}$$

例 $\lambda_* = \operatorname{argmax}_{\lambda \in (0,1)} \psi(\lambda) = 1 - (\frac{1}{2})^{\frac{1}{3}}$

由 $x(\lambda)$ 是唯一确定的, 且在 $(-\infty, 1)$ 上连续.

故 $x^* = \lim_{\substack{\lambda \rightarrow \lambda_* \\ \lambda \in \Delta_c^+(\lambda)}} x(\lambda) = x(\lambda_*) \in X(\lambda_*)$

故由 1.3.2

$x(\lambda_*) = (2^{-\frac{1}{3}}, 2^{\frac{1}{3}})$ 是全局极小!



1.3.3.2 Penalty Functions

Penalty Function Method
<p>0. Choose $x_0 \in Q$. Choose a sequence of penalty coefficients: $0 < t_k < t_{k+1}$ and $t_k \rightarrow \infty$.</p> <p>1. kth iteration ($k \geq 0$). Find $x_{k+1} = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in Q} \{f_0(x) + t_k \Phi(x)\}$ using x_k as starting point.</p>

假设 x_{k+1} 是辅助func的全局极小, 定义:

$$\Psi_k(x) = f_0(x) + t_k \Phi(x)$$

$$\Psi_k^* = \min_{x \in Q} \bar{\Psi}_k(x) = \bar{\Psi}_k(x_{k+1})$$

定理 1.3.3

设 $\exists \bar{\epsilon} > 0$, s.t. $S = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid f_0(x) + \bar{\epsilon} \Phi(x) \leq f_0(x^*)\}$

是有界的, 则:

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow +\infty} f_0(x_k) = f_0(x^*) \quad \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \Phi(x_k) = 0$$

证明:

注意到:

$$\Psi_k^* \leq \bar{\Psi}_k(x^*) = f_0(x^*), \text{ 且对 } \forall x \in Q, \text{ 有 } \bar{\Psi}_{k+1}(x) \geq \bar{\Psi}_k(x)$$

故 $\bar{\Psi}_{k+1}^* \geq \bar{\Psi}_k^*$, 故存在极限

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\Psi}_k^* \equiv \Psi^* \leq f_0(x^*)$$

若 $t_k > \bar{\epsilon}$, 则

$$f_0(x_{k+1}) + \bar{\epsilon} \Phi(x_{k+1}) \leq f_0(x_{k+1}) + t_k \Phi(x_{k+1}) = \bar{\Psi}_k^* \leq f_0(x^*)$$

故对 k 充分大, 有 $x_k \in S$, 由 S 是列紧的, 则 $\{x_k\}$ 有聚点集合 X^* , 由 $t_k \rightarrow \infty$, 故对 $\forall x^* \in X^*$, 均有 $\Phi(x^*) = 0$
 故 $x^* \in \mathcal{F}$, 又由 $f_0(x^*) \leq f_0(x^*)$, 故 $f_0(x^*) = f_0(x^*)$



1.3.3.3 Barrier Function

Barrier Function Method
<p>0. Choose $x_0 \in \mathcal{F}_0$ and a sequence of penalty coefficients: $0 < t_k < t_{k+1}$ and $t_k \rightarrow \infty$.</p> <p>1. kth iteration ($k \geq 0$), Find $x_{k+1} = \arg \min_{x \in \mathcal{F}_0} \left\{ f_0(x) + \frac{1}{t_k} F(x) \right\}$ using x_k as the starting point.</p>

定义:

$$\bar{\Psi}_k(x) = f_0(x) + \frac{1}{t_k} F(x)$$

$$\bar{\Psi}_k^* = \min_{x \in \mathcal{F}_0} \bar{\Psi}_k(x)$$

定理 1.3.4

令 barrier $F(\cdot)$ 是在 \mathcal{F}_0 上下方有界, 则

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\Psi}_k^* = f^*$$

证明: 令 $F(x) \geq F^*$, 对 $\forall x \in \mathcal{F}_0$, 故对 $\forall x \in \mathcal{F}_0$, 有

$$\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \psi_k^* \leq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} [f_0(x) + \frac{1}{\epsilon_k} F(x)] = f_0(x)$$

故 $\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \psi_k^* \leq f^*$, 另一方面:

$$\bar{\psi}_k^* = \min_{x \in \mathcal{F}_0} [f_0(x) + \frac{1}{\epsilon_k} F(x)]$$

$$\geq \inf_{x \in \mathcal{F}_0} [f_0(x) + \frac{1}{\epsilon_k} F^*]$$

$$= f^* + \frac{1}{\epsilon_k} F^*$$

$$\text{故 } \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\psi}_k^* \geq f^*$$

$$\text{故 } f^* \leq \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\psi}_k^* \leq \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\psi}_k^* \leq f^*$$

$$\text{故 } \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\psi}_k^* = f^*$$

□

1.3.3 Constrained Minimization

$$\min_{x \in Q} f_0(x)$$

$$f_j(x) \leq 0, j=1, \dots, m$$

$Q \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ 是闭的, f_0, \dots, f_m 连续

1.3.3.1 Lagrangian Relaxation

定理 1.3.1

令 $F(x, \lambda)$ 定义在 $x \in Q_1 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n, \lambda \in Q_2 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m, Q_1, Q_2 \neq \emptyset$, 则

$$\sup_{\lambda \in Q_2} \inf_{x \in Q_1} F(x, \lambda) \leq \inf_{x \in Q_1} \sup_{\lambda \in Q_2} F(x, \lambda)$$

证明: 对 $\forall x \in Q_1, \lambda \in Q_2$

$$F(x, \lambda) \leq \sup_{\xi \in Q_2} F(x, \xi)$$

$$\text{则 } \inf_{x \in Q_1} F(x, \lambda) \leq \inf_{x \in Q_1} \sup_{\xi \in Q_2} F(x, \xi) \quad \text{对 } \forall \lambda \in Q_2$$

$$\text{故 } \sup_{\lambda \in Q_2} \inf_{x \in Q_1} F(x, \lambda) \leq \inf_{x \in Q_1} \sup_{\lambda \in Q_2} F(x, \lambda)$$



注意到

$$f^* = \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ f_0(x) : f_j(x) \leq 0, j=1, \dots, m \}$$

$$= \inf_{x \in \Omega} \sup_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_+^m} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda)$$

$$\text{其中 } \mathbb{R}_+^m = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^m, \lambda^{(j)} \geq 0, j=1, \dots, m \}$$

$$\mathcal{L}(x, \lambda) = f_0(x) + \langle \lambda, f(x) \rangle$$

则显然

$$\sup_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_+^m} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda) = \begin{cases} +\infty & , x \notin \Omega \\ f_0(x) & , x \in \Omega \end{cases}, \Omega \text{ 是可行集}$$

定义:

$$\psi(\lambda) = \inf_{x \in \Omega} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda)$$

$$\text{dom } \psi = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^m : \psi(\lambda) > -\infty \}$$

$$X^*(\lambda) = \text{Arg} \inf_{x \in \Omega} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda)$$

假设: 对 $\forall \lambda \in \text{dom} \psi \cap \mathbb{R}_+^m \neq \emptyset$ 时, 有 $X^*(\lambda) \neq \emptyset$

有如下 Lagrangian dual problem:

$$f_* = \sup_{\lambda} \{ \psi(\lambda) : \lambda \in \text{dom} \psi \cap \mathbb{R}_+^m \} \leq f^*$$

注意到: 对 $\forall \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in \text{dom} \psi$, $\forall x_1 \in X^*(\lambda_1)$, $\forall x_2 \in X^*(\lambda_2)$

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\lambda_2) &= f_0(x_2) + \sum_{j=1}^m \lambda_2^{(j)} f_j(x_2) \\ &\leq f_0(x_1) + \sum_{j=1}^m \lambda_2^{(j)} f_j(x_1) \\ &= \psi(\lambda_1) + \langle f(x_1), \lambda_2 - \lambda_1 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

问题在于 $\nabla \psi(\lambda) \big|_{\lambda=\lambda_1} = f(x_1)$?

想证明 $\psi(\lambda)$ 是凹的是简单的, 只需用定义

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(t\lambda_1 + (1-t)\lambda_2) &= \inf \{ f_0(x) + \langle t\lambda_1 + (1-t)\lambda_2, f(x) \rangle \} \\ &= \inf \{ t f_0(x) + t \langle \lambda_1, f(x) \rangle + (1-t) f_0(x) + (1-t) \langle \lambda_2, f(x) \rangle \} \\ &\geq t \inf \{ f_0(x) + \langle \lambda_1, f(x) \rangle \} + (1-t) \inf \{ f_0(x) + \langle \lambda_2, f(x) \rangle \} \\ &= t \psi(\lambda_1) + (1-t) \psi(\lambda_2) \end{aligned}$$

$\psi(\lambda)$ 一定可导吗? 不一定

引理: 设 Q 紧, 令 $\bar{\lambda} \in \mathbb{R}^m$, 设 $X^*(\bar{\lambda}) = \{\bar{x}\}$ 是单点集.

则若 $\lambda_k \rightarrow \bar{\lambda}$, 则设 $x_k \in X^*(\lambda_k)$, 有 $x_k \rightarrow \bar{x}$

证明: 用反证法, 设 $\lambda_k \rightarrow \bar{\lambda}$, $x_k \in X^*(\lambda_k)$, \exists 指标集 N_0 ,

s.t. $\|x_k - \bar{x}\| > \varepsilon > 0$, 对 $\forall k \in N_0$

由 Q 紧, 故 $\exists N_1 \subset N_0$, s.t. $\{x_k\}_{N_1} \rightarrow y \in Q$, 且 $\|y - \bar{x}\| \geq \varepsilon$

对 $\forall \lambda_k, k \in N_1$, 有

$$f_0(x_k) + \langle \lambda_k, f(x_k) \rangle \leq f_0(\bar{x}) + \langle \lambda_k, f(\bar{x}) \rangle$$

两边对 $k \rightarrow +\infty, k \in N_1$, 有

$$f_0(y) + \langle \bar{\lambda}, f(y) \rangle \leq f_0(\bar{x}) + \langle \bar{\lambda}, f(\bar{x}) \rangle$$

故 $y \in X^*(\bar{\lambda})$, 与 $X^*(\bar{\lambda})$ 是单点集矛盾

□

定理：上引理条件下， ψ 在 \bar{x} 处可微，且 $\nabla \psi(\lambda)|_{\lambda=\bar{\lambda}} = f(\bar{x})$

证明：由 f_0, f 连续，则 $\psi(\lambda, \lambda)$ 连续，且 Ω 紧，故对

$\forall \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^m, \exists X_\lambda \in X^*(\lambda)$ ，显然

$$\begin{aligned}\psi(\lambda) - \psi(\bar{\lambda}) &= \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ f_0(x) + \langle \lambda, f(x) \rangle \} \\ &\quad - \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ f_0(x) + \langle \bar{\lambda}, f(x) \rangle \}\end{aligned}$$

$$\leq \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ \langle \lambda - \bar{\lambda}, f(x) \rangle \} \leq \langle \lambda - \bar{\lambda}, f(\bar{x}) \rangle$$

$$\begin{aligned}\psi(\bar{\lambda}) - \psi(\lambda) &\leq \inf_{x \in \Omega} \{ \langle \bar{\lambda} - \lambda, f(x) \rangle \} \\ &\leq \langle \bar{\lambda} - \lambda, f(X_\lambda) \rangle\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{故 } 0 &\geq \psi(\lambda) - \psi(\bar{\lambda}) - \langle f(\bar{x}), \lambda - \bar{\lambda} \rangle \\ &\geq \langle \lambda - \bar{\lambda}, f(X_\lambda) - f(\bar{x}) \rangle \\ &\geq -\|\lambda - \bar{\lambda}\| \|f(X_\lambda) - f(\bar{x})\|\end{aligned}$$

故

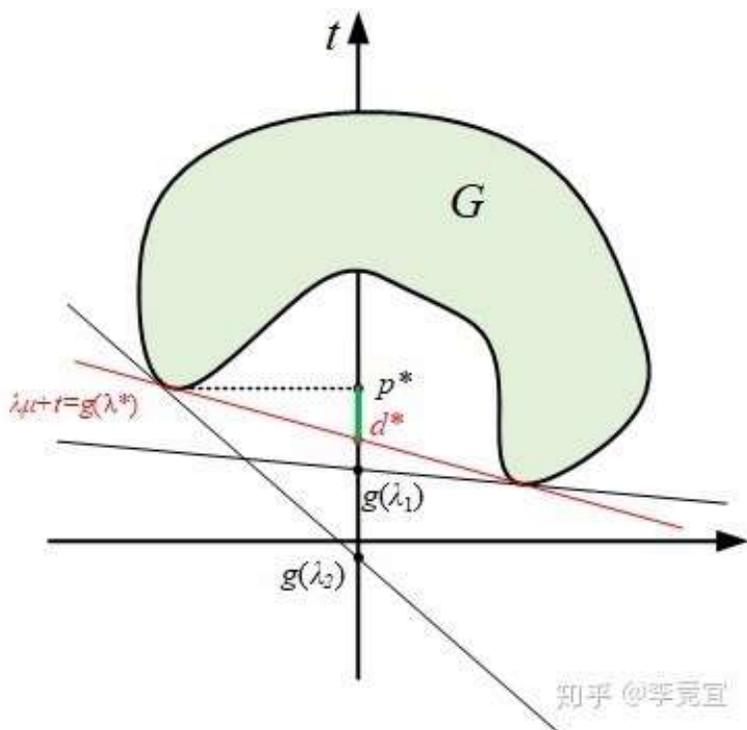
$$0 \geq \frac{\psi(\lambda) - \psi(\bar{\lambda}) - \langle f(\bar{x}), \lambda - \bar{\lambda} \rangle}{\|\lambda - \bar{\lambda}\|} \geq -\|f(x_\lambda) - f(\bar{x})\|$$

令 $\lambda \rightarrow \bar{\lambda}$, 则 $x_\lambda \rightarrow \bar{x}$, 故 $f(x_\lambda) \rightarrow f(\bar{x})$

故

$$\lim_{\lambda \rightarrow \bar{\lambda}} \frac{\psi(\lambda) - \psi(\bar{\lambda}) - \langle f(\bar{x}), \lambda - \bar{\lambda} \rangle}{\|\lambda - \bar{\lambda}\|} = 0$$

故 $\nabla \psi(\lambda)|_{\lambda=\bar{\lambda}} = f(\bar{x})$



$p^* - d^*$ 对偶间隙

定理 1.3.2 (Certificate of Global Optimality)

令 λ^* 是 (1.3.8) 的最优解, 设 $\exists \varepsilon > 0$, 有

$$\Delta_\varepsilon^+(\lambda^*) = \{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_+^m : \|\lambda - \lambda^*\| \leq \varepsilon\} \subseteq \text{dom } \psi$$

令 $x(\lambda) \in X^*(\lambda)$, $\lambda \neq \lambda^*$ 是唯一-确定的, 且极限:

$$x^* = \lim_{\substack{\lambda \rightarrow \lambda^* \\ \lambda \in \Delta_\varepsilon^+(\lambda^*)}} x(\lambda)$$

是存在的, 则若 $x^* \in X^*(\lambda^*)$, 则 x^* 是 (1.3.5) 的一个全局 optimal

证明:

令 $g(\lambda) = f(x(\lambda))$, 令 $I^* = \{j : \lambda_j^* > 0\}$, 选取 $j \in I^*$, $\varepsilon > 0$,

s.t. $\lambda_* \pm \varepsilon e_j \in \text{dom } \psi \cap \mathbb{R}_+^m$, 则有:

$$\psi(\lambda_*) \leq \psi(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j) + \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), -\varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

$$\leq \psi(\lambda_*) + \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), -\varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

$$\psi(\lambda_*) \leq \psi(\lambda_* - \varepsilon e_j) + \langle g(\lambda_* - \varepsilon e_j), \varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

$$\leq \psi(\lambda_*) + \langle g(\lambda_* - \varepsilon e_j), \varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

$$\text{故 } \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), e_j \rangle \leq 0 \leq \langle g(\lambda_* - \varepsilon e_j), e_j \rangle$$

则令 $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ 得

$$\langle f(x^*), e_j \rangle \leq 0 \leq \langle f(x^*), e_j \rangle$$

$$\text{故 } f_j(x^*) = 0$$

同样地, 若 $j \notin I^*$, 可取 ε 充分小, s.t. $\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j \in \text{dom } \psi \cap \mathbb{R}_+^m$

则

$$\psi(\lambda_*) \leq \psi(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j) + \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), -\varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

$$\leq \psi(\lambda_*) + \langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), -\varepsilon e_j \rangle$$

故 $\langle g(\lambda_* + \varepsilon e_j), e_j \rangle \leq 0$, 取 $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ 得 $f_j(x^*) \leq 0$

故 x^* 属于 (1.3.5) 的可行集, 且

$$\lambda_*^{(j)} f_j(x^*) = 0, \quad 1 \leq j \leq m$$

故

$$f_0(x^*) = f_0(x^*) + \sum_{j=1}^m \lambda_*^{(j)} f_j(x^*) = \psi(\lambda_*) \leq f^*$$

$$\text{故 } f_0(x^*) = f^*$$



例: $\Omega = \mathbb{R}^2$, $f_0(x) = \frac{1}{2} \|x - \bar{e}_2\|^2$, $f_1(x) = x^{(1)} - \frac{1}{2} x^{(2)2}$

$\bar{e}_2 = (1, 1)^T$, 则:

$$\mathcal{L}(x, \lambda) = \frac{1}{2} \|x - \bar{e}_2\|^2 + \lambda \left[x^{(1)} - \frac{1}{2} x^{(2)2} \right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} (x^{(1)} - 1)^2 + \frac{1}{2} (x^{(2)} - 1)^2 + \lambda x^{(1)} - \frac{\lambda}{2} x^{(2)2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} x^{(1)2} + (\lambda - 1) x^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2} (1 - \lambda) x^{(2)2} - x^{(2)} + 1$$

故令 $\psi(\lambda) = \inf_{x \in \mathbb{R}^2} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda)$, 则

$$\text{dom } \psi(\lambda) = (-\infty, 1)$$

对于固定 λ , $x(\lambda)$ 可以如下方法求得

$$\begin{cases} x^{(1)}(\lambda) - 1 + \lambda = 0 \\ x^{(2)}(\lambda) - 1 - \lambda x^{(2)}(\lambda) = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x^{(1)}(\lambda) \\ x^{(2)}(\lambda) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - \lambda \\ \frac{1}{1 - \lambda} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \forall \lambda \in \text{dom } \psi(\lambda)$$

$$\psi(\lambda) = \lambda - \frac{1}{2} \lambda^2 - \frac{1}{2(1 - \lambda)} + \frac{1}{2}$$

例 $\lambda_* = \operatorname{argmax}_{\lambda \in (0,1)} \psi(\lambda) = 1 - (\frac{1}{2})^{\frac{1}{3}}$

由 $x(\lambda)$ 是唯一确定的, 且在 $(-\infty, 1)$ 上连续.

故 $x^* = \lim_{\substack{\lambda \rightarrow \lambda_* \\ \lambda \in \Delta_c^+(\lambda)}} x(\lambda) = x(\lambda_*) \in X(\lambda_*)$

故由 1.3.2

$x(\lambda_*) = (2^{-\frac{1}{3}}, 2^{\frac{1}{3}})$ 是全局极小!



1.3.3.2 Penalty Functions

Penalty Function Method
<p>0. Choose $x_0 \in Q$. Choose a sequence of penalty coefficients: $0 < t_k < t_{k+1}$ and $t_k \rightarrow \infty$.</p> <p>1. kth iteration ($k \geq 0$). Find $x_{k+1} = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in Q} \{f_0(x) + t_k \Phi(x)\}$ using x_k as starting point.</p>

假设 x_{k+1} 是辅助func的全局极小, 定义:

$$\Psi_k(x) = f_0(x) + t_k \Phi(x)$$

$$\Psi_k^* = \min_{x \in Q} \bar{\Psi}_k(x) = \bar{\Psi}_k(x_{k+1})$$

定理 1.3.3

设 $\exists \bar{\epsilon} > 0$, s.t. $S = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid f_0(x) + \bar{\epsilon} \Phi(x) \leq f_0(x^*)\}$

是有界的, 则:

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow +\infty} f_0(x_k) = f_0(x^*) \quad \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \Phi(x_k) = 0$$

证明:

注意到:

$$\Psi_k^* \leq \bar{\Psi}_k(x^*) = f_0(x^*), \text{ 且对 } \forall x \in Q, \text{ 有 } \bar{\Psi}_{k+1}(x) \geq \bar{\Psi}_k(x)$$

故 $\bar{\Psi}_{k+1}^* \geq \bar{\Psi}_k^*$, 故存在极限

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\Psi}_k^* \equiv \Psi^* \leq f_0(x^*)$$

若 $t_k > \bar{\epsilon}$, 则

$$f_0(x_{k+1}) + \bar{\epsilon} \Phi(x_{k+1}) \leq f_0(x_{k+1}) + t_k \Phi(x_{k+1}) = \bar{\Psi}_k^* \leq f_0(x^*)$$

故对 k 充分大, 有 $x_k \in S$, 由 S 是列紧的, 则 $\{x_k\}$ 有聚点集合 X^* , 由 $t_k \rightarrow \infty$, 故对 $\forall x^* \in X^*$, 均有 $\Phi(x^*) = 0$
故 $x^* \in \bar{F}$, 又由 $f_0(x^*) \leq f_0(x^*)$, 故 $f_0(x^*) = f_0(x^*)$



1.3.3.3 Barrier Function

令 \mathcal{F} 是 \mathbb{R}^n 中闭集, 且有非空内部。连续 func $F(\cdot)$

称为 barrier func, 若 $F(x) \rightarrow \infty$ ($x \rightarrow \partial\mathcal{F}$)

Slater 条件: $\exists \bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$, s.t. $f_j(\bar{x}) < 0$
 $j=1, \dots, m$

Barrier Function Method
0. Choose $x_0 \in \mathcal{F}_0$ and a sequence of penalty coefficients: $0 < t_k < t_{k+1}$ and $t_k \rightarrow \infty$.
1. k th iteration ($k \geq 0$). Find $x_{k+1} = \arg \min_{x \in \mathcal{F}_0} \left\{ f_0(x) + \frac{1}{t_k} F(x) \right\}$ using x_k as the starting point.

定义:

$$\bar{\Psi}_k(x) = f_0(x) + \frac{1}{t_k} F(x)$$

$$\bar{\Psi}_k^* = \min_{x \in \mathcal{F}_0} \bar{\Psi}_k(x)$$

定理 1.3.4

令 barrier $F(\cdot)$ 是在 \mathcal{F}_0 上下方有界, 则

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\Psi}_k^* = f^*$$

证明: 令 $F(x) \geq F^*$, 对 $\forall x \in \mathcal{F}_0$, 故对 $\forall x \in \mathcal{F}_0$, 有

$$\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \psi_k^* \leq \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} [f_0(x) + \frac{1}{\epsilon_k} F(x)] = f_0(x)$$

故 $\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \psi_k^* \leq f^*$, 另一方面:

$$\bar{\psi}_k^* = \min_{x \in \mathcal{F}_0} [f_0(x) + \frac{1}{\epsilon_k} F(x)]$$

$$\geq \inf_{x \in \mathcal{F}_0} [f_0(x) + \frac{1}{\epsilon_k} F^*]$$

$$= f^* + \frac{1}{\epsilon_k} F^*$$

$$\text{故 } \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\psi}_k^* \geq f^*$$

$$\text{故 } f^* \leq \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\psi}_k^* \leq \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\psi}_k^* \leq f^*$$

$$\text{故 } \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \bar{\psi}_k^* = f^*$$

□

常见的 Barrier func 见例 1.3.4, 如:

$$\text{Log-Barrier: } F(x) = -\sum_{j=1}^m \ln(-f_j(x))$$

故 barrier func 方法实际上找 $\mathcal{F}_0 = \mathbb{R}^n \cap \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ 中的极小

$$\tilde{\mathcal{F}} = \{x : f_j(x) < 0, j=1, 2, \dots, m\}$$

但 $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ 与 $\text{int } \mathcal{F}$ 不一定相等, 例:

$$f_1(x) = \begin{cases} -e^{-\frac{1}{x}}, & x > 0 \\ 0 & x \leq 0 \end{cases} \quad / \quad f_1 \in C^\infty$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \min (x+2)^2 \\ & x \in \mathbb{R} \\ \text{s.t. } & f_1(x) \leq 0 \end{aligned}$$

实际: $x = -2$ 时, $f_{\min} = 0$

barrier 法: 下确界是 4

§ 2.1.1 Smooth Convex function

想建立一个函数类 \mathcal{F} , 满足:
 \rightarrow (可微的)

- ① 一阶最优性条件 \Rightarrow 全局最优
- ② 若 $f_1, f_2 \in \mathcal{F}$, 则 $\alpha f_1 + \beta f_2 \in \mathcal{F}$, $\alpha, \beta \geq 0$
- ③ 线性函数类 $\subset \mathcal{F}$

设 $f \in \mathcal{F}$, 取 $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$, 考虑:

$$\phi(y) = f(y) - \underbrace{\langle \nabla f(x_0), y \rangle}_{\text{线性func}} \in \mathcal{F}$$

$$\text{故 } \nabla \phi(y) \Big|_{y=x_0} = \nabla f(x_0) - \nabla f(x_0) = 0$$

$$\text{故 } \phi(y) \geq \phi(x_0) = f(x_0) - \langle \nabla f(x_0), x_0 \rangle$$

$$\Leftrightarrow f(y) \geq f(x_0) + \langle \nabla f(x_0), y - x_0 \rangle$$

(凸func的一阶条件)

故 $f \in$ 函数类 $\mathcal{F} \Rightarrow f \in$ 凸函数, 下证反过来成立

定理 2.1.1: 若 $f \in \mathcal{F}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$ 且 $\nabla f(x^*) = 0$, 则 x^* 是

$f(\cdot)$ 在 \mathbb{R}^n 上全局极小

证: $f(x) \geq f(x^*) + \langle \nabla f(x^*), x - x^* \rangle = f(x^*)$ \square

引理 2.1.1: 若 $f_1, f_2 \in \mathcal{F}'(\mathbb{R})$, $\alpha, \beta \geq 0$, 则 $f = \alpha f_1 + \beta f_2 \in \mathcal{F}'(\mathbb{R})$

证明显然
~~~~~

以下建立凸 func 几个等价定义 (光滑性足够),  $f$  定义在凸集  $Q$  上:

1)  $\forall x, y \in Q, \forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有 最原始,  $f$  不需

$$f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) \leq \alpha f(x) + (1-\alpha)f(y) \quad \text{可微}$$

2)  $\forall x, y \in Q, f(y) \geq f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle$

3)  $\forall x, y \in Q, \langle \nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y), x-y \rangle \geq 0$

4) 若  $f$  二次可微,  $\forall x \in Q, \nabla^2 f(x) \geq 0$

5)  $\forall x \in Q, \forall v \in \mathbb{R}^n, g(t) = f(x+tv)$  凸

证明:

2)  $\Rightarrow$  1) 令  $x_\alpha = \alpha x + (1-\alpha)y$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{则 } f(x_\alpha) &\leq f(y) - \langle \nabla f(x_\alpha), y-x \rangle \\ &= f(y) - \alpha \langle \nabla f(x_\alpha), y-x \rangle \end{aligned} \quad \dots \textcircled{1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_\alpha) &\leq f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x_\alpha), x-x_\alpha \rangle \\ &= f(x) + (1-\alpha) \langle \nabla f(x_\alpha), y-x \rangle \end{aligned} \quad \dots \textcircled{2}$$

$(1-\alpha) \times \textcircled{1} + \alpha \times \textcircled{2}$  即证 1)

1)  $\Rightarrow$  2) 令  $x_\alpha = \alpha x + (1-\alpha)y$ , 取  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) &\geq \frac{1}{1-\alpha} [f(x_\alpha) - \alpha f(x)] \\ &= f(x) + \frac{1}{1-\alpha} [f(x_\alpha) - f(x)] \\ &= f(x) + \frac{1}{1-\alpha} [f(x + (1-\alpha)(y-x)) - f(x)] \end{aligned}$$

令  $\alpha \rightarrow 1$ , 则  $f(y) \geq f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle$

2)  $\Rightarrow$  3)  $f(x) \geq f(y) + \langle \nabla f(y), x-y \rangle \dots \textcircled{3}$

$f(y) \geq f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle \dots \textcircled{4}$

$\textcircled{3} + \textcircled{4}$  即证 3)

3)  $\Rightarrow$  2) 令  $x_\tau = x + \tau(y-x) \in Q$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) &= f(x) + \int_0^1 \langle \nabla f(x + \tau(y-x)), y-x \rangle d\tau \\ &= f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle + \int_0^1 \langle \nabla f(x_\tau) - \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle d\tau \\ &= f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle + \int_0^1 \frac{1}{\tau} \langle \nabla f(x_\tau) - \nabla f(x), x_\tau - x \rangle d\tau \\ &\geq f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle \end{aligned}$$

3)  $\Rightarrow$  4) 令  $S \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $x_\tau = x + \tau S \in \mathbb{Q}$ ,  $\tau > 0$ , 且

$$0 \leq \frac{1}{\tau^2} \langle \nabla f(x_\tau) - \nabla f(x), x_\tau - x \rangle$$

$$= \frac{1}{\tau} \langle \nabla f(x_\tau) - \nabla f(x), S \rangle$$

$$= \frac{1}{\tau} \int_0^\tau \langle \nabla^2 f(x + \lambda S) S, S \rangle d\lambda$$

令  $\tau \rightarrow 0^+$ , 由  $S \in \mathbb{R}^n$  的任意性知:  $\nabla^2 f(x) \geq 0$

4)  $\Rightarrow$  2) 对  $\forall y \in \mathbb{Q}$

$$f(y) = f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle + \int_0^1 \int_0^\tau \langle \nabla^2 f(x + \lambda(y-x))(y-x), y-x \rangle d\lambda d\tau$$

$$\geq f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle$$

1)  $\Rightarrow$  5) 取  $\forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$

$$g(\alpha t_1 + (1-\alpha)t_2) = f(x + (\alpha t_1 + (1-\alpha)t_2)v)$$

$$= f(x + \alpha t_1 v + (1-\alpha)t_2 v)$$

$$= f(\alpha(x + t_1 v) + (1-\alpha)(x + t_2 v))$$

$$\leq \alpha g(t_1) + (1-\alpha)g(t_2)$$

5)  $\Rightarrow$  1) 取  $t \in [0, 1]$

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x+tv) &= g(t) \leq tg(1) + (1-t)g(0) \\
 &= t f(x+v) + (1-t) f(x)
 \end{aligned}$$

取  $v = y - x$ ,  $y \in \mathbb{R}^n$  即证



例:  $f(x) = |x|^p$  凸

证: 只需证明:  $|w_1 x + w_2 y| \leq (w_1 |x|^p + w_2 |y|^p)^{\frac{1}{p}}$ ,  $w_1 + w_2 = 1$

$$|w_1 x + w_2 y| \leq w_1 |x| + w_2 |y| \quad \dots \textcircled{*}$$

$$= (w_1^{\frac{1}{p}} |x|) w_1^{\frac{1}{q}} + (w_2^{\frac{1}{p}} |y|) w_2^{\frac{1}{q}}$$

$$\text{(Hölder)} \leq (w_1 |x|^p + w_2 |y|^p)^{\frac{1}{p}} (w_1 + w_2)^{\frac{1}{q}}$$

$$= (w_1 |x|^p + w_2 |y|^p)^{\frac{1}{p}}$$

其中  $\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1$ , 事实上,  $|x|^p$  ( $p > 1$ ) 严格 convex

只须验证 Hölder 不等式 等号成立条件:

$$\begin{cases}
 w_1^{\frac{1}{q}} = c w_1^{\frac{p-1}{p}} |x|^{p-1} \\
 w_2^{\frac{1}{q}} = c w_2^{\frac{p-1}{p}} |y|^{p-1}
 \end{cases} \quad \dots \textcircled{1}$$

由  $\frac{1}{q} = \frac{p-1}{p}$ , 则  $\textcircled{1} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} 1 = c |x|^{p-1} \\ 1 = c |y|^{p-1} \end{cases}$

若  $x, y$  是异号的, 则  $\otimes$  是严格的  $\Rightarrow$  严格 convex

若  $x, y$  是同号的, 则  $|x| = |y| = \frac{1}{2} \Leftrightarrow x = y \Rightarrow$  严格 convex

□

定义 算子范数

有限维空间均可达范

$$\|g\|_* = \max_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} \{ \langle g, x \rangle : \|x\| \leq 1 \}$$

即  $x \in (\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|) \doteq X$ , 则  $g \in X^*$

定义  $f \in \mathcal{F}_L^1(\mathbb{Q}, \|\cdot\|)$ , 则  $\mathbb{Q} \subseteq \text{dom} f$ , 且:

$$\|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_* \leq L \|x - y\|, \forall x, y \in \mathbb{Q}$$

注:  $(\ell^p)^* = \ell^q$  ( $1 \leq p < \infty$ ), 特别地  $(\ell^2)^* = \ell^2$   
等价意义

引理 2.1.4: 对  $\forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有:

$$\alpha \|x\|^2 + (1-\alpha) \|y\|^2 \geq \alpha(1-\alpha) (\|x\| + \|y\|)^2 \geq \alpha(1-\alpha) \|x-y\|^2$$

证明显然.

**Theorem 2.1.5** All conditions below, holding for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\alpha$  from  $[0, 1]$ , are equivalent to the inclusion  $f \in \mathcal{F}_L^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$ :

$$0 \leq f(y) - f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle \leq \frac{L}{2} \|x - y\|^2, \quad (2.1.9)$$

$$f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle + \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2 \leq f(y), \quad (2.1.10)$$

$$\frac{1}{L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2 \leq \langle \nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y), x - y \rangle, \quad (2.1.11)$$

$$0 \leq \langle \nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y), x - y \rangle \leq L \|x - y\|^2, \quad (2.1.12)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha f(x) + (1 - \alpha)f(y) &\geq f(\alpha x + (1 - \alpha)y) \\ &+ \frac{\alpha(1 - \alpha)}{2L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2, \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.13)$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 \leq \alpha f(x) + (1 - \alpha)f(y) - f(\alpha x + (1 - \alpha)y) \\ \leq \alpha(1 - \alpha)\frac{L}{2} \|x - y\|^2. \end{aligned} \quad (2.1.14)$$

Moreover, if  $f \in \mathcal{F}_L^{1,1}(Q)$ , then inequalities (2.1.9), (2.1.12), and (2.1.14) are valid for all  $x, y \in Q$ .

证明:

$$f \in \mathcal{F}_L^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|) \Rightarrow (2.1.9)$$

$$0 \leq f(y) - f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle \quad \text{显然}$$

$$f(y) - f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle$$

$$= \int_0^1 \langle \nabla f(x + \tau(y-x)) - \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle d\tau$$

$$\leq \int_0^1 \|\nabla f(x + \tau(y-x)) - \nabla f(x)\|_* \|y - x\| d\tau$$

$$\leq \int_0^1 L\tau \|y - x\|^2 d\tau = \frac{L}{2} \|y - x\|^2$$

(2.1.9)  $\Rightarrow$  (2.1.10)

固定  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 考虑  $\phi(y) = f(y) - \langle \nabla f(x_0), y \rangle$

则  $\phi \in \mathcal{F}_L^1(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$ , 且  $\phi$  的 optimal 是  $x_0$ .

故:

$$\phi(x_0) = \min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} \phi(x)$$

$$\stackrel{(2.1.9)}{\leq} \min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} \left\{ \phi(y) + \langle \nabla \phi(y), x - y \rangle + \frac{L}{2} \|x - y\|^2 \right\}$$

$$= \min_{r \geq 0} \left\{ \phi(y) - \underbrace{r \|\nabla \phi(y)\|_*}_{\text{wavy}} + \frac{L}{2} r^2 \right\}$$

注:  $\langle \nabla \phi(y), x - y \rangle \geq -\|\nabla \phi(y)\|_* \|x - y\|$

且由  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 故  $\exists \tilde{x}$ , s.t. 上式取等号

$$= \phi(y) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla \phi(y)\|_*^2$$

$$= \phi(y) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y) - \nabla f(x_0)\|_*^2$$

(2.1.10)  $\Rightarrow$  (2.1.11)

$$\begin{cases} f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle + \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2 \leq f(y) \dots \textcircled{1} \\ f(y) + \langle \nabla f(y), x - y \rangle + \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y) - \nabla f(x)\|_*^2 \leq f(x) \dots \textcircled{2} \end{cases}$$

$$\textcircled{1} + \textcircled{2} \Rightarrow (2.1.11)$$

(2.1.11)  $\Rightarrow$  原始定义: 由 Cauchy 不等式

$$(2.1.9) \Rightarrow (2.1.12)$$

$$\begin{cases} 0 \leq f(y) - f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle \leq \frac{L}{2} \|x-y\|^2 \quad \dots \textcircled{3} \\ 0 \leq f(x) - f(y) - \langle \nabla f(y), x-y \rangle \leq \frac{L}{2} \|x-y\|^2 \quad \dots \textcircled{4} \end{cases}$$

$$\textcircled{3} + \textcircled{4} \Rightarrow (2.1.12)$$

$$(2.1.12) \Rightarrow (2.1.9)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) - f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle &= \int_0^1 \langle \nabla f(x + \tau(y-x)) - \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle d\tau \\ &\leq \frac{1}{2} L \|y-x\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$(2.1.10) \Rightarrow (2.1.13)$$

令  $x_\alpha = \alpha x + (1-\alpha)y$ , 则由 (2.1.10)

$$f(x) \geq f(x_\alpha) + \langle \nabla f(x_\alpha), (1-\alpha)(x-y) \rangle + \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(x_\alpha)\|_*^2 \quad \dots \textcircled{3}$$

$$f(y) \geq f(x_\alpha) + \langle \nabla f(x_\alpha), \alpha(y-x) \rangle + \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y) - \nabla f(x_\alpha)\|_*^2 \quad \dots \textcircled{4}$$

$$\alpha \times \textcircled{3} + (1-\alpha) \times \textcircled{4} \Rightarrow$$

$$\alpha f(x) + (1-\alpha)f(y) \geq f(x_\alpha) + \frac{\alpha}{2L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(x_\alpha)\|_*^2 + \frac{1-\alpha}{2L} \|\nabla f(y) - \nabla f(x_\alpha)\|_*^2$$

$$\geq f(x_\alpha) + \frac{\alpha(1-\alpha)}{2L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2$$

(2.1.13)  $\Rightarrow$  (2.1.10)

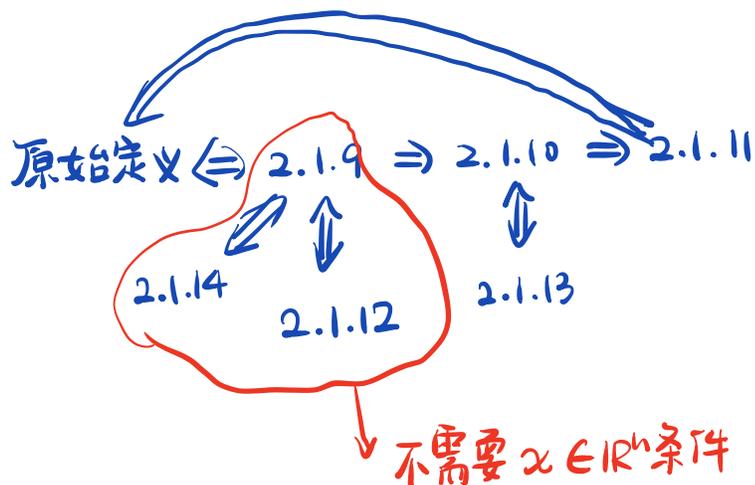
$$f(y) \geq \frac{f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) - \alpha f(x)}{1-\alpha} + \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2$$

$$= \frac{f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) - f(x)}{1-\alpha} + f(x) + \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2$$

$$\text{取 } \alpha \rightarrow 1 = \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle + f(x) + \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2$$

(2.1.9)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (2.1.14) 同理

□



2.1.9  $\Rightarrow$  原始定义显然

定理 2.1.6  $f \in F_L^{2,1}(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|) \Leftrightarrow \forall x, h \in \mathbb{R}^n,$

$$0 \leq \langle \nabla^2 f(x)h, h \rangle \leq L \|h\|^2$$

证：左边显然，右边是 (2.1.12) 极限形式

$$\langle \nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y), x - y \rangle \leq L \|x - y\|^2$$

设  $x - y = \alpha h$ , 则

$$\langle \nabla f(y + \alpha h) - \nabla f(y), \alpha h \rangle \leq L \alpha^2 \|h\|^2$$

$\alpha \rightarrow 0^+$ , 则  $\langle \nabla^2 f(y)h, h \rangle \leq L \|h\|^2$





故

$$\langle \nabla^2 f_k(x) h, h \rangle = \frac{L}{4} \left[ (h^{(1)})^2 + \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} (h^{(i)} - h^{(i+1)})^2 + (h^{(k)})^2 \right] \geq 0$$

且

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \nabla^2 f_k(x) h, h \rangle &\leq \frac{L}{4} \left[ (h^{(1)})^2 + \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} 2(h^{(i)})^2 + (h^{(i+1)})^2 + (h^{(k)})^2 \right] \\ &\leq L \|h\|_2^2 \end{aligned}$$

从而, 由定理 2.1.6,  $f_k \in \mathcal{F}_L^{\text{loc}, 1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$

方程  $\nabla f_k(x) = A_k x - e_1 = 0$  的解是

$$\bar{x}_k^{(i)} = \begin{cases} 1 - \frac{i}{k+1}, & i=1, \dots, k \\ \text{任意}, & k+1 \leq i \leq n \end{cases}$$

为 0, 若  $\bar{x}_k \in \mathbb{R}^{k,n}$

由  $f_k$  凸, 故:

$$\begin{aligned} f_k^* &= f_k(\bar{x}_k) = \frac{L}{4} \left[ \frac{1}{2} \langle A_k \bar{x}_k, \bar{x}_k \rangle - \langle e_1, \bar{x}_k \rangle \right] \\ &= \frac{L}{8} \left( -1 + \frac{1}{k+1} \right) \end{aligned}$$

注意到:  $\sum_{i=1}^k i^2 = \frac{k(k+1)(2k+1)}{6} \leq \frac{(k+1)^3}{3}$

故

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^k \left(\bar{x}_k^{(i)}\right)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^k \left(1 - \frac{i}{k+1}\right)^2 \\ &= k - \frac{2}{k+1} \sum_{i=1}^k i + \frac{1}{(k+1)^2} \sum_{i=1}^k i^2 \\ &\leq k - \frac{2}{k+1} \cdot \frac{k(k+1)}{2} + \frac{1}{(k+1)^2} \frac{(k+1)^3}{3} \\ &= \frac{1}{3}(k+1)\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{令 } \mathbb{R}^{k,n} = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid x^{(i)} = 0, k+1 \leq i \leq n\}$$

$$\text{则 } \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^{k,n}, f_p(x) \equiv f_k(x), p = k, \dots, n$$

固定  $p, 1 \leq p \leq n$ , 且  $p \geq k$

引理 2.1.5: 令  $x_0 = 0$ , 则对  $\forall \{x_k\}_{k=0}^p$ , 满足

$$x_k \in \mathcal{J}_k \triangleq \text{Lin} \{ \nabla f_p(x_0), \dots, \nabla f_p(x_{k-1}) \}$$

$$\text{则 } \mathcal{J}_k \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{k,n}$$

证明: 由  $x_0 = 0$ , 故  $\nabla f_p(x_0) = -\frac{1}{4}e_1 \in \mathbb{R}^{1,n}$

故  $\mathcal{J}_1 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{1,n}$ , 用数归:

设  $\mathcal{J}_k \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{k,n}$ , 则由  $A_p$  是三对角阵.  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}^{k,n}$ ,

有  $\nabla f_p(x) = \frac{L}{4} (A_p x - e) \in \mathbb{R}^{k+1, n}$

故  $\mathcal{I}_{k+1} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{k+1, n}$ , 即证  $\square$

定理 2.1.7:  $\forall k, 1 \leq k \leq \frac{1}{2}(n-1), \forall x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n, \exists f \in \mathcal{F}_L^{\alpha, 1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,

使得对任意一阶方法  $M$  满足假设 2.1.4, 有:

$$f(x_k) - f^* \geq \frac{3L \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{32(k+1)^2}$$

$$\|x_k - x^*\|^2 \geq \frac{1}{8} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$$

$x^*$  是  $f$  全局极小

证明:

W.L.O.G., 设  $x_0 = 0$ , 否则  $f(x) = f(x+x_0)$

固定  $k$ , 令  $f(x) = f_{2k+1}(x)$ , 则  $x^* = \bar{x}_{2k+1}, f^* = f_{2k+1}^*$

由推论 2.1.1, 有:

$$f(x_k) \equiv f_{2k+1}(x_k) = f_k(x_k) \geq f^*$$

由  $x_0 = 0$ , 故由 (2.1.17), (2.1.19) 知

$f^*$        $f^*$

$$\frac{\overset{J_k}{f(x_k)} - \overset{J_{2k+1}}{f^*}}{\|x_0 - x^*\|^2} \geq \frac{\frac{L}{8}(-1 + \frac{1}{k+1} + 1 - \frac{1}{2k+2})}{\frac{1}{3}(2k+2)}$$

$$= \frac{3}{8}L \cdot \frac{1}{4(k+1)^2}$$

$$\|x_k - x^*\|^2 \geq \sum_{i=k+1}^{2k+1} (\bar{x}_{2k+1}^{(i)})^2$$

$$= \sum_{i=k+1}^{2k+1} (1 - \frac{i}{2k+2})^2$$

$$= k+1 - \frac{1}{k+1} \sum_{i=k+1}^{2k+1} i + \frac{1}{4(k+1)^2} \sum_{i=k+1}^{2k+1} i^2$$

$$= k+1 - \frac{1}{k+1} \frac{(3k+2)(k+1)}{2} + \frac{(2k+1)(7k+6)}{24(k+1)}$$

$$= \frac{2k^2+7k+6}{24(k+1)}$$

$$(2.1.19) \Rightarrow \frac{2k^2+7k+6}{16(k+1)^2} \|x_0 - \bar{x}_{2k+1}\|^2$$

$$\geq \frac{1}{8} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$$

□

注：定理 2.1.7 证的是存在性，因为本节找的是  $F^*$  上的最低复杂度。所以找一个最差的 func，它的复杂度就是

$\mathcal{F}_L^{\infty,1}$  的 Lower complexity bound

### § 2.1.3 Strongly convex functions

$\mathcal{F}'_{\mu}(Q, \|\cdot\|)$

定义 2.1.3: 连续可微 func  $f(\cdot)$  是 强凸的, 若  $\exists \mu > 0$ .

s.t.  $\forall x, y \in Q$ , 有:

$$f(y) \geq f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y-x \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \mu \|y-x\|^2$$

定理 2.1.8: 若  $f \in \mathcal{F}'_{\mu}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,  $\nabla f(x^*) = 0$ , 则

$$f(x) \geq f(x^*) + \frac{1}{2} \mu \|x - x^*\|^2 \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

证: 显然.

引理 2.1.6  $f_1 \in \mathcal{F}'_{\mu_1}(Q_1, \|\cdot\|)$ ,  $f_2 \in \mathcal{F}'_{\mu_2}(Q_2, \|\cdot\|)$ .

$\alpha, \beta \geq 0$ , 则:

$$f = \alpha f_1 + \beta f_2 \in \mathcal{F}'_{\alpha\mu_1 + \beta\mu_2}(Q_1 \cap Q_2, \|\cdot\|)$$

证: 显然.

定理 2.1.9: 以下等价于  $f \in \mathcal{F}_\mu^1(Q, \|\cdot\|)$

$$\langle \nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y), x - y \rangle \geq \mu \|x - y\|^2$$

$$\alpha f(x) + (1 - \alpha) f(y) \geq f(\alpha x + (1 - \alpha)y) + \alpha(1 - \alpha) \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - y\|^2$$

证明:  $g(x) = f(x) - \frac{\mu}{2} \|x\|^2$  是 convex func

$$\textcircled{\text{证}}: f(y) \geq f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|y - x\|^2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } f(y) - \frac{\mu}{2} \|y\|^2 &\geq f(x) - \frac{\mu}{2} \|x\|^2 \\ &\quad + \langle \nabla f(x) - \mu x, y - x \rangle \end{aligned}$$

下面用定理 2.1.2 和 2.1.3 对  $g(x)$  即可  $\square$

定理 2.1.10: 若  $f \in \mathcal{F}_\mu^1(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$  则  $\forall x, y$ , 有

$$f(y) \leq f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle + \frac{1}{2\mu} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2 \quad (2.1.24)$$

$$\langle \nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y), x - y \rangle \leq \frac{1}{\mu} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2 \quad (2.1.25)$$

$$\mu \|x - y\|^2 \leq \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|_*^2 \quad (2.1.26)$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \|\nabla f(x)\|_*^2 \geq \mu (f(x) - f^*) \quad (P-L)$$

证明: 固定  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 考虑

$$\phi(y) = f(y) - \langle \nabla f(x), y \rangle \in \mathcal{F}'_{\mu}(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$$

由  $\nabla \phi(y) = 0$ , 故对  $\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$\phi(x) = \min_{v \in \mathbb{R}^n} \phi(v)$$

$$\geq \min_{v \in \mathbb{R}^n} [\phi(y) + \langle \nabla \phi(y), v - y \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \mu \|y - v\|^2]$$

$$= \min_{r \geq 0} [\phi(y) - \|\nabla \phi(y)\|_* r + \frac{1}{2} \mu r^2]$$

$$= \phi(y) - \frac{1}{2\mu} \|\nabla \phi(y)\|_*^2$$

成立是显然的, 由有限维赋范空间均可达范, 且  $v \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,

(2.1.24) 即证, (2.1.25) 只需将 (2.1.24)  $x, y$  互换, 再相加.   
且  $v - y \in \mathbb{R}^n$

(2.1.26) 由 (2.1.25), (2.1.22) 可证

强凸  $\Rightarrow$  PL 条件:

$$f(x^*) = \min_{y \in \mathbb{R}^n} f(y) \geq \min_{y \in \mathbb{R}^n} \left\{ f(x) + \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|y - x\|^2 \right\}$$

$$= \min_{r \geq 0} \left\{ f(x) - r \|\nabla f(x)\|_* + \frac{\mu}{2} r^2 \right\}$$

$$= f(x) - \frac{1}{2\mu} \|\nabla^2 f(x)\|_*^2$$

定理 2.1.11:  $f$  二次可微, 则  $f \in \mathcal{F}_\mu^2(Q, \|\cdot\|) \Leftrightarrow$

$\forall x \in \text{int} Q, h \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有:

$$\langle \nabla^2 f(x)h, h \rangle \geq \mu \|h\|^2$$

证明: 由 (2.1.22), 取  $y = x + \alpha h$ , 令  $\alpha \rightarrow 0^+$  即得

(同定理 2.1.6)

例:  $\eta(x) = \sum_{i=1}^n x^{(i)} \ln x^{(i)}$

$$x \in \Delta_n^+ = \{x \in \mathbb{R}_+^n : \langle \bar{e}_n, x \rangle \leq 1\} \quad (\text{凸集})$$

则对  $\forall h \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有  $\langle \nabla^2 \eta(x)h, h \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{(h^{(i)})^2}{x^{(i)}}$

故  $\langle \nabla^2 \eta(x)h, h \rangle$  关于  $x^{(i)} \forall i \downarrow$ , 则考察:

$$\min_{\langle \bar{e}_n, x \rangle = 1} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{(h^{(i)})^2}{x^{(i)}}$$

Ex Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{J}(x, \lambda) = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{(h^{(i)})^2}{x^{(i)}} + \lambda (\langle \bar{e}_n, x \rangle - 1)$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{J}}{\partial x_i} = -\frac{(h^{(i)})^2}{(x^{(i)})^2} + \lambda$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial \lambda} = \langle \bar{e}_n, x \rangle - 1$$

故有:  $x^*$  满足  $\lambda_* = \frac{(h^{(i)})^2}{(x_*^{(i)})^2}$

$$\lambda_* = \frac{|h^{(i)}|}{x_*^{(i)}}$$

故  $\sum_{i=1}^n x_*^{(i)} = \lambda_*^{-1} \sum_{i=1}^n |h^{(i)}| = 1$

$$\text{故 } \langle \nabla^2 \eta(x) h, h \rangle \geq \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{(h^{(j)})^2}{x_*^{(j)}}$$

$$= \lambda_* \sum_{i=1}^n x_*^{(i)}$$

$$= \lambda_*$$

$$= \left( \sum_{i=1}^n |h^{(i)}| \right)^2$$

$$= \|h\|_1^2$$



考虑函数类  $\mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ :  $\rightarrow$  2 范数.

$$\langle \nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y), x - y \rangle \geq \mu \|x - y\|^2$$

$$\|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\| \leq L \|x - y\|$$

### Example: Strongly Convex Function

We show an example  $\eta$ -strongly convex function  $f$ , in blue. At any point  $p$ , it is sandwiched between two convex quadratic functions in green. The convex quadratic function which lower bounds  $f$  has an  $L$ -Lipschitz gradient.

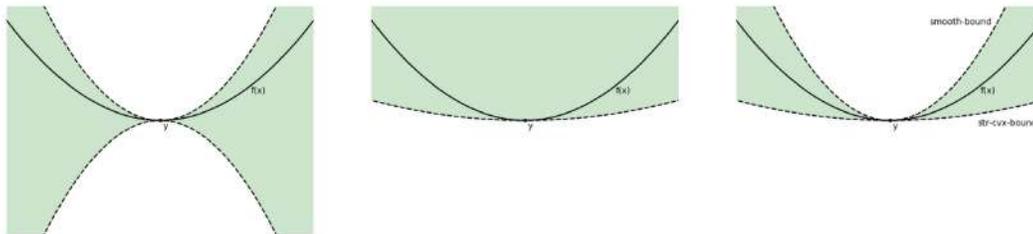
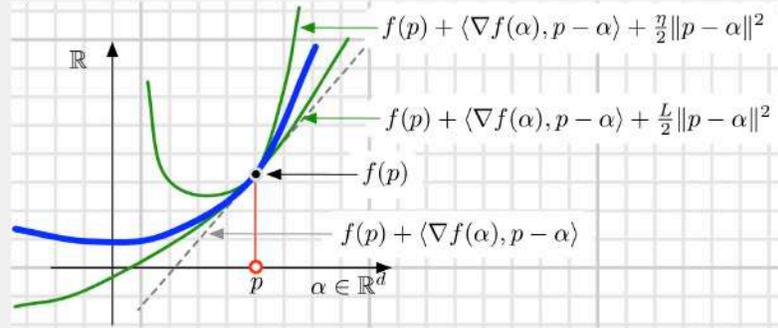


Figure 3: (Left) Upper and lower bounds from equation 4 for smoothness constraint (Middle) Lower bound from equation 5 for strong convexity constraint (Right) Combination of upper bound from smoothness and lower bound from strong convexity

定理 2.1.12: 若  $f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 对  $\forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有:

$$\langle \nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y), x - y \rangle \geq \frac{\mu L}{\mu + L} \|x - y\|^2 + \frac{1}{\mu + L} \|\nabla f(x) - \nabla f(y)\|^2$$

证明: 定义  $\phi(x) = f(x) - \frac{1}{2}\mu \|x\|^2$  则

$$\nabla \phi(x) = \nabla f(x) - \mu x$$

$$\text{由 } 0 \leq \phi(y) - \phi(x) - \langle \nabla \phi(x), y - x \rangle$$

$$= f(y) - f(x) - \langle \nabla f(x), y - x \rangle - \frac{1}{2}\mu \|x - y\|^2$$

$$\leq \frac{L - \mu}{2} \|x - y\|^2$$

故  $\phi(x) \in \mathcal{F}_{L - \mu}^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$

$\mu = L$  时结论已经证明。

$\mu < L$  时, 有

$$\langle \nabla \phi(x) - \nabla \phi(y), x - y \rangle \geq \frac{1}{L - \mu} \|\nabla \phi(x) - \nabla \phi(y)\|^2$$

这等价于 (2.1.32)



## §2.1.4 Lower Complexity bounds for $\mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{\infty, 1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$

定义条件数  $\kappa_f = \frac{L}{\mu}$ , 定义  $f_{\mu, \kappa_f} : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

$$f_{\mu, Q_f}(x) = \frac{\mu(Q_f - 1)}{8} \left\{ (x^{(1)})^2 + \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} (x^{(i)} - x^{(i+1)})^2 - 2x^{(1)} \right\} + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x\|^2$$

$$\text{令 } L = \mu Q_f, \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & \ddots \\ 0 & 0 & \ddots & \ddots \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{则 } \nabla^2 f_{\mu, Q_f}(x) = \frac{\mu(Q_f - 1)}{4} A + \mu I$$

易知  $0 \leq A \leq 4I$  ( $A$  和  $4I - A$  都严格主对角占优)

$$\text{故 } \mu I \leq \nabla^2 f_{\mu, Q_f}(x) \leq (\mu(Q_f - 1) + \mu)I = \mu Q_f I = L I$$

$$\text{故 } f_{\mu, Q_f} \in \mathcal{Y}_{\mu, L}^{\infty, 1}(l^2)$$

则由一阶最优性条件

$$\nabla f_{\mu, Q_f}(x) = \left( \frac{\mu(Q_f - 1)}{4} A + \mu I \right) x - \frac{\mu(Q_f - 1)}{4} e_1 = 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \left( A + \frac{4}{Q_f - 1} I \right) x = e_1$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} 2 \frac{Q_f + 1}{Q_f - 1} x^{(1)} - x^{(2)} = 1 \\ x^{(k+1)} - 2 \frac{Q_f + 1}{Q_f - 1} x^{(k)} + x^{(k-1)} = 0, \quad k = 2, \dots \end{cases}$$

特征方程:

$$q^2 - 2 \frac{Q_f + 1}{Q_f - 1} q + 1 = 0$$

则  $q = \frac{\sqrt{Q_f} - 1}{\sqrt{Q_f} + 1}$  (为了解  $x^* \in \mathcal{L}$ , 故舍去大于1解)

则  $(x^*)^{(k)} = q^k, k=1, 2, \dots$

定理 2.1.13: 对  $\forall x_0 \in \mathcal{L}^2, \forall \mu > 0, Q_f > 1, \exists f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{(b, 1)}(\mathcal{L}^2)$ .

s.t. 任意一阶算法  $M$  满足假设 2.1.4, 有:

$$\|x_k - x^*\|^2 \geq \left( \frac{\sqrt{Q_f} - 1}{\sqrt{Q_f} + 1} \right)^{2k} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 \quad (1)$$

$$f(x_k) - f(x^*) \geq \frac{\mu}{2} \left( \frac{\sqrt{Q_f} - 1}{\sqrt{Q_f} + 1} \right)^{2k} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 \quad (2)$$

证明: W.L.O.G. 设  $x_0 = 0$ , 取  $f(x) = f_{\mu, Q_f}(x)$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} [(x^*)^{(i)}]^2 \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} q^{2i} = \frac{q^2}{1 - q^2} \end{aligned}$$

由  $\nabla^2 f_{\mu, Q_f}(x)$  是三对角算子, 且  $\nabla f_{\mu, Q_f}(0) = -\frac{L-\mu}{4} e_1$

同样由递归,  $x_k \in \mathbb{R}^k$ , 故

$$\|x_k - x^*\|^2 \geq \sum_{i=k+1}^{\infty} [f(x^*)^{(i)}]^2 = \frac{q^{2(k+1)}}{1-q^2} = q^{2k} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$$

又由定理 2.1.8,  $f(x) \geq f(x^*) + \frac{1}{2}\mu \|x - x^*\|^2$

则②得证



## § 2.1.5 The gradient method

优化的问题:  $\min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} f(x), f \in \mathcal{F}_L^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$

定理 2.1.14: 令  $f \in \mathcal{F}_L^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,  $0 < h < \frac{2}{L}$ , 则梯度法生成的序列  $\{x_k\}$  满足:

$$f(x_k) - f^* \leq \frac{2(f(x_0) - f^*) \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{2\|x_0 - x^*\|^2 + kh(2-Lh)(f(x_0) - f^*)}, k \geq 0$$

证明: 令  $r_k = \|x_k - x^*\|$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} r_{k+1}^2 &= \|x_k - x^* - h \nabla f(x_k)\|^2 \\ &= r_k^2 - 2h \langle \nabla f(x_k), x_k - x^* \rangle + h^2 \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 \\ &\stackrel{(2.1.11)}{\leq} r_k^2 - h \left(\frac{2}{L} - h\right) \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

由 (2.1.9):

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_{k+1}) &\leq f(x_k) + \langle \nabla f(x_k), x_{k+1} - x_k \rangle + \frac{L}{2} \|x_{k+1} - x_k\|^2 \\ &= f(x_k) - h \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 + \frac{1}{2} h^2 \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 \\ &= f(x_k) - \omega \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 \quad \dots \quad (*) \end{aligned}$$

其中  $\omega = h(1 - \frac{1}{2}h)$ , 记  $\Delta_k = f(x_k) - f^*$

故由  $f$  的凸性:

$$\Delta_k \leq \langle \nabla f(x_k), x_k - x^* \rangle \leq \|\nabla f(x_k)\| r_k \leq r_0 \|\nabla f(x_k)\|$$

由\*知:

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_{k+1} &\leq \Delta_k - \omega \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 \leq \Delta_k - \frac{\omega}{r_0^2} \Delta_k^2 \\ &\leq \Delta_k - \frac{\omega}{r_0^2} \Delta_{k+1} \Delta_k \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } \frac{1}{\Delta_{k+1}} \geq \frac{1}{\Delta_k} + \frac{\omega}{r_0^2} \geq \frac{1}{\Delta_0} + (k+1) \frac{\omega}{r_0^2} \quad \square$$

由:

$$f(x_k) - f^* \leq \frac{2(f(x_0) - f^*) \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{2\|x_0 - x^*\|^2 + k \underbrace{h(2-Lh)}_{\text{取极大值}} (f(x_0) - f^*)}$$

$h = \frac{1}{L}$  时, 取极大值

故  $h^* = \frac{1}{L}$  时

$$f(x_k) - f^* \leq \frac{2L(f(x_0) - f^*) \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{2L\|x_0 - x^*\|^2 + k(f(x_0) - f^*)}$$

又由 (2.1.9):

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_0) - f^* &\leq \langle \nabla f(x^*), x_0 - x^* \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } f(x_k) - f^* &\leq \frac{2L \|y_0 - x^*\|^2}{2L \frac{\|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{f(x_0) - f^*} + k} \\ &\leq \frac{2L \|y_0 - x^*\|^2}{k+4} \quad \dots \text{ (推论 2.1.2)} \end{aligned}$$

定理 2.1.15: 若  $f \in \mathcal{J}_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,  $0 < h \leq \frac{2}{\mu+L}$ , 则梯度法生成的序列  $\{x_k\}$  满足:

$$\|x_k - x^*\|^2 \leq \left(1 - \frac{2h\mu L}{\mu+L}\right)^k \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$$

若  $h = \frac{2}{\mu+L}$ , 则

$$\|x_k - x^*\| \leq \left(\frac{Q_f - 1}{Q_f + 1}\right)^k \|x_0 - x^*\|$$

$$f(x_k) - f^* \leq \frac{L}{2} \left(\frac{Q_f - 1}{Q_f + 1}\right)^{2k} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$$

证明:  $r_k = \|x_k - x^*\|$ , 则

$$r_{k+1}^2 = \|x_k - x^* - h \nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

$$= r_k^2 - 2h \langle \nabla f(x_k), x_k - x^* \rangle + h^2 \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

$$\stackrel{(2.1.32)}{\leq} \left(1 - \frac{2h\mu L}{\mu+L}\right) r_k^2 + \underbrace{h\left(h - \frac{2}{\mu+L}\right)}_{\lambda_0} \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$$

$$\leq \left(1 - \frac{2h\mu L}{\mu + L}\right) r_k^2 \leq \left(1 - \frac{2h\mu L}{\mu + L}\right)^{k+1} r_0^2$$

当  $h = \frac{2}{\mu + L}$  时, 结论是显然的



注:  $f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{\text{b}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$  时  $0 < \mu \leq L$

$$\frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x)\|^2 \leq f(x) - f^* \leq \frac{1}{2\mu} \|\nabla f(x)\|^2$$

$$\frac{\mu}{2} \|x - x^*\|^2 \leq f(x) - f^* \leq \frac{L}{2} \|x - x^*\|^2$$

## § 2.2.1 Estimating Sequence

定义 2.2.1 序列  $\{\phi_k(x)\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$  和  $\{\lambda_k\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$ ,  $\lambda_k \geq 0$  叫

做  $f(\cdot)$  的 estimating 序列, 若: 对  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\forall k \geq 0$ , 有

$$\phi_k(x) \leq (1 - \lambda_k) f(x) + \lambda_k \phi_0(x), \text{ 且 } \lambda_k \rightarrow 0$$

引理 2.2.1 若对序列  $\{x_k\}$  有:  $f(x_k) \leq \phi_k^* \doteq \min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} \phi_k(x)$

$$\text{则 } f(x_k) - f^* \leq \lambda_k [\phi_0(x^*) - f^*] \rightarrow 0$$

证明:

$$f(x_k) \leq \phi_k^* = \min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} \phi_k(x)$$

$$= \min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} [(1 - \lambda_k) f(x) + \lambda_k \phi_0(x)]$$

$$\leq (1 - \lambda_k) f(x^*) + \lambda_k \phi_0(x^*)$$



引理 2.2.2 假设

1.  $f \in J_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$
2.  $\phi_0(\cdot)$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  中任意凸 func
3.  $\{\gamma_k\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  中任意序列

4.  $\{\alpha_k\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$  满足:  $\alpha_k \in (0,1)$ ,  $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k = \infty$

5.  $\lambda_0 = 1$

则定义序列  $\{\phi_k\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$  和  $\{\lambda_k\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$  :

$$\lambda_{k+1} = (1 - \alpha_k) \lambda_k$$

$$\phi_{k+1}(x) = (1 - \alpha_k) \phi_k(x) + \alpha_k \left[ f(y_k) + \langle \nabla f(y_k), x - y_k \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - y_k\|^2 \right] \quad (2.2.4)$$

是 estimating 序列:

证明:  $\phi_0(x) \leq (1 - \lambda_0) f(x) + \lambda_0 \phi_0(x) \equiv \phi_0(x)$

设  $k$  时成立. 则:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{k+1}(x) &\leq (1 - \alpha_k) \phi_k(x) + \alpha_k f(x) \\ &= (1 - (1 - \alpha_k) \lambda_k) f(x) + (1 - \alpha_k) (\phi_k(x) - (1 - \lambda_k) f(x)) \\ &\leq (1 - (1 - \alpha_k) \lambda_k) f(x) + (1 - \alpha_k) \lambda_k \phi_0(x) \\ &\leq (1 - \lambda_{k+1}) f(x) + \lambda_{k+1} \phi_0(x) \end{aligned}$$

即  $k+1$  时成立

□

引理 2.2.3: 令  $\phi_0(x) = \phi_0^* + \frac{\nu_0}{2} \|x - v_0\|^2$ , 则 (2.2.4) 有:

$$\phi_k(x) \equiv \phi_k^* + \frac{\nu_k}{2} \|x - v_k\|^2, \text{ 其中: } \quad (2.2.5)$$

$$y_{k+1} = (1-\alpha_k)y_k + \alpha_k \mu$$

$$v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\rho_{k+1}} [(1-\alpha_k)\rho_k v_k + \alpha_k \mu y_k - \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k)]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{k+1}^* &= (1-\alpha_k)\phi_k^* + \alpha_k f(y_k) - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\rho_{k+1}} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 \\ &\quad + \frac{\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)\rho_k}{\rho_{k+1}} \left( \frac{\mu}{2} \|y_k - v_k\|^2 + \langle \nabla f(y_k), v_k - y_k \rangle \right) \end{aligned}$$

证明：注意到  $\nabla^2 \phi_0(x) = \rho_0 I_n$ ，下证  $\nabla^2 \phi_k(x) = \rho_k I_n, k \geq 0$

设  $k$  时成立，则

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla^2 \phi_{k+1}(x) &= (1-\alpha_k) \nabla^2 \phi_k(x) + \alpha_k \mu I_n \\ &= ((1-\alpha_k)\rho_k + \alpha_k \mu) I_n \equiv \rho_{k+1} I_n \end{aligned}$$

故  $\phi_k$  应有 (2.2.5) 的形式，进一步地

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{k+1}(x) &= (1-\alpha_k) \left( \phi_k^* + \frac{\rho_k}{2} \|x - v_k\|^2 \right) \\ &\quad + \alpha_k \left[ f(y_k) + \langle \nabla f(y_k), x - y_k \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - y_k\|^2 \right] \end{aligned}$$

则令  $\nabla \phi_{k+1}(x) = 0$ ，有：

$$(1-\alpha_k)\rho_k(x - v_k) + \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k) + \alpha_k \mu(x - y_k) = 0$$

$$\text{则 } x = v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\rho_{k+1}} [(1-\alpha_k)\rho_k v_k + \alpha_k \mu y_k - \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k)]$$

最后计算  $\phi_{k+1}^*$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\phi_{k+1}^* + \frac{\gamma_{k+1}}{2} \|y_k - v_{k+1}\|^2 &= \phi_{k+1}(y_k) \\ &= (1 - \alpha_k) \left( \phi_k^* + \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \|y_k - v_k\|^2 \right) + \alpha_k f(y_k)\end{aligned}$$

由  $v_{k+1}$  的递归定义:

$$v_{k+1} - y_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} \left[ (1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k (v_k - y_k) - \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k) \right]$$

故

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\gamma_{k+1}}{2} \|v_{k+1} - y_k\|^2 &= \frac{1}{2\gamma_{k+1}} \left[ (1 - \alpha_k)^2 \gamma_k^2 \|v_k - y_k\|^2 - \right. \\ &\quad \left. 2\alpha_k (1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k \langle \nabla f(y_k), v_k - y_k \rangle + \alpha_k^2 \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 \right]\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{故 } \phi_{k+1}^* &= - \frac{\gamma_{k+1}}{2} \|v_{k+1} - y_k\|^2 + \underbrace{(1 - \alpha_k) \left( \phi_k^* + \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \|y_k - v_k\|^2 \right)}_{\text{}} + \alpha_k f(y_k) \\ &= \underbrace{\left( - \frac{1}{2\gamma_{k+1}} (1 - \alpha_k)^2 \gamma_k^2 + (1 - \alpha_k) \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \right)}_{\text{}} \|y_k - v_k\|^2 \\ &\quad - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 + \frac{\alpha_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} (1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k \langle \nabla f(y_k), v_k - y_k \rangle \\ &\quad + (1 - \alpha_k) \phi_k^* + \alpha_k f(y_k)\end{aligned}$$

$$= (1-\alpha_k) \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \left(1 - \frac{(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}}\right)$$

$$= (1-\alpha_k) \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \frac{\alpha_k \mu}{\gamma_{k+1}}$$



假设我们已经有  $x_k$ , 且有  $\phi_k^* \geq f(x_k)$ , 则由引理 2.2.3

$$\phi_{k+1}^* \geq (1-\alpha_k) f(x_k) + \alpha_k f(y_k) - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2$$

$$+ \frac{\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} \langle \nabla f(y_k), v_k - y_k \rangle$$

$$\geq f(y_k) - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2$$

$$+ (1-\alpha_k) \langle \nabla f(y_k), \frac{\alpha_k \gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} (v_k - y_k) + x_k - y_k \rangle$$

我们想让  $\phi_{k+1}^* \geq f(x_{k+1})$ , 由:

$$f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 \geq f(x_{k+1})$$

不妨令  $x_{k+1} = y_k - h_k \nabla f(y_k)$ ,  $h_k = \frac{1}{L}$

且  $\alpha_k$  定义为下二次方程的根:

$$L \alpha_k^2 = (1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu (= \gamma_{k+1})$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{故 } \phi_{k+1}^* &\geq f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 \\
&\quad + (1-\alpha_k) \langle \nabla f(y_k), \frac{\alpha_k \gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} (v_k - y_k) + x_k - y_k \rangle \\
&\geq f(x_{k+1}) + (1-\alpha_k) \langle \nabla f(y_k), \frac{\alpha_k \gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} (v_k - y_k) + x_k - y_k \rangle
\end{aligned}$$

由于  $\{y_k\}$  是任意选的, 故可以令:

$$\frac{\alpha_k \gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} (v_k - y_k) + x_k - y_k = 0$$

| General Scheme of Optimal Method                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| <p><b>0.</b> Choose the point <math>x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n</math>, some <math>\gamma_0 &gt; 0</math>, and set <math>v_0 = x_0</math>.</p> <p><b>1. <math>k</math>th iteration (<math>k \geq 0</math>).</b></p> <p>(a) Compute <math>\alpha_k \in (0, 1)</math> from the equation</p> $L\alpha_k^2 = (1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu.$ <p>Set <math>\gamma_{k+1} = (1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu</math>.</p> <p>(b) Choose <math>y_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu} [\alpha_k\gamma_k v_k + \gamma_{k+1}x_k]</math>. Compute <math>f(y_k)</math> and <math>\nabla f(y_k)</math>.</p> <p>(c) Find <math>x_{k+1}</math> such that</p> $f(x_{k+1}) \leq f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \ \nabla f(y_k)\ ^2$ <p>(see Sect. 1.2.3 for the step-size rules).</p> <p>(d) Set <math>v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} [(1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k v_k + \alpha_k\mu y_k - \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k)]</math>.</p> | (2.2.7) |

定理 2.2.1: 算法 2.2.7 生成的序列  $\{x_k\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$  满足:

$$f(x_k) - f^* \leq \lambda_k \left[ f(x_0) - f^* + \frac{\gamma_0}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 \right]$$

其中  $\lambda_0 = 1$ ,  $\lambda_k = \prod_{i=0}^{k-1} (1 - \alpha_i)$

证明: 取  $\phi_0(x) = f(x_0) + \frac{\lambda_0}{2} \|x - v_0\|^2$ , 则  $f(x_0) = \phi_0^*$

且  $f(x_k) \leq \phi_k^*$ , 故由引理 2.2.1 立即得  $\square$

引理 2.2.4 定  $\forall q_f = \frac{1}{\alpha_f} = \frac{\mu}{L}$

若 (2.2.7) 取  $\gamma_0 \in (\mu, 3L + \mu]$ , 则对  $\forall k \geq 0$ . 有:

$$\lambda_k \leq \frac{4\mu}{(\gamma_0 - \mu) [\exp(\frac{k+1}{2} q_f^{\frac{1}{2}}) - \exp(-\frac{k+1}{2} q_f^{\frac{1}{2}})]^2} \leq \frac{4L}{(\gamma_0 - \mu)(k+1)^2}$$

对  $\gamma_0 = \mu$ , 有  $\lambda_k = (1 - \sqrt{q_f})^k$ ,  $k \geq 0$

证明: 设  $\gamma_0 > \mu$ , 则由

$$\gamma_{k+1} = (1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu$$

则  $\gamma_{k+1} - \mu = (1 - \alpha_k)(\gamma_k - \mu) = \dots = \lambda_{k+1}(\gamma_0 - \mu)$

由  $\alpha_k = 1 - \frac{\lambda_{k+1}}{\lambda_k}$ , 故由  $L\alpha_k^2 = (1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu = \gamma_{k+1}$

$$1 - \frac{\lambda_{k+1}}{\lambda_k} = \left[ \frac{\gamma_{k+1}}{L} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} = \left[ \frac{\mu}{L} + \lambda_{k+1} \frac{\gamma_0 - \mu}{L} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$\text{故 } \frac{1}{\lambda_{k+1}} - \frac{1}{\lambda_k} = \frac{1}{\lambda_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \left[ \frac{q_f}{\lambda_{k+1}} + \frac{\gamma_0 - \mu}{L} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$= \left( \frac{1}{\lambda_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}} + \frac{1}{\lambda_k^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right) \left( \frac{1}{\lambda_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}} - \frac{1}{\lambda_k^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)$$

$$\leq \frac{2}{\lambda_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \left( \frac{1}{\lambda_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}} - \frac{1}{\lambda_k^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right) \dots \textcircled{*}$$

定义  $\xi_k = \left[ \frac{L}{(\gamma_0 - \mu)\lambda_k} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$ , 则由  $\textcircled{*}$

$$\left[ \frac{q_f}{\lambda_{k+1}} + \frac{r_0 - \mu}{L} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 2 \left( \frac{1}{\lambda_{k+1}^{\frac{1}{2}}} - \frac{1}{\lambda_k^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right)$$

两边同除  $\sqrt{\frac{r_0 - \mu}{L}}$ , 则有

$$\sqrt{\frac{L}{\lambda_{k+1}(r_0 - \mu)}} - \sqrt{\frac{L}{\lambda_k(r_0 - \mu)}} \geq \frac{1}{2} \left[ q_f \cdot \frac{L}{\lambda_{k+1}(r_0 - \mu)} + 1 \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$\text{即 } \xi_{k+1} - \xi_k \geq \frac{1}{2} (q_f \xi_{k+1}^2 + 1)^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

令  $\delta = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{q_f}$ , 下证: (用数归)

$$\xi_k \geq \frac{1}{4\delta} [e^{(k+1)\delta} - e^{-(k+1)\delta}], k \geq 0$$

对  $k=0$ , 有:

$$\xi_0 = \left[ \frac{L}{r_0 - \mu} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} > \frac{1}{2} (e^{\frac{1}{2}} - e^{-\frac{1}{2}}) \geq \frac{1}{4\delta} [e^{\delta} - e^{-\delta}] \quad \checkmark$$

设  $k$  时成立, 下证  $k+1$  时成立, 考虑  $\psi(t) = \frac{1}{4\delta} [e^{(t+1)\delta} - e^{-(t+1)\delta}]$

则  $\psi(t) = \frac{1}{4} [e^{(t+1)\delta} + e^{-(t+1)\delta}] \uparrow$ , 故  $\psi(t)$  增

$$\text{故 } \psi(k) \leq \xi_k \leq \xi_{k+1} - \frac{1}{2} [q_f \xi_{k+1}^2 + 1]^{\frac{1}{2}} = \nu(\xi_{k+1})$$

↑  
由假设

$$\begin{aligned} \text{注意到: } \nu'(\xi) &= 1 - \frac{\frac{1}{2} q_f \xi}{[q_f \xi^2 + 1]} \geq 1 - \frac{\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{q_f} \xi^2 + 1}{q_f \xi^2 + 1} \\ &= 1 - \frac{1}{2 \sqrt{q_f} \xi^2 + 1} > 0 \end{aligned}$$

用反证法, 设  $\xi_{k+1} < \psi(k+1)$

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(t) &< \psi(t+1) - \frac{1}{2} \left[ 4\delta^2 \left( \frac{1}{4\delta} [e^{(t+2)\delta} - e^{-(t+2)\delta}] \right)^2 + 1 \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= \psi(t+1) - \frac{1}{4} [e^{(t+2)\delta} + e^{-(t+2)\delta}] \\ &= \psi(t+1) + \psi'(t+1)(t - (t+1)) \leq \psi(t) \end{aligned}$$

矛盾! 故:

$$\xi_k \geq \frac{1}{4\delta} [e^{(k+1)\delta} - e^{-(k+1)\delta}]$$

即: 
$$\lambda_k \leq \frac{4\mu}{(\nu_0 - \mu) [\exp(\frac{k+1}{2} q_f^{\frac{1}{2}}) - \exp(-\frac{k+1}{2} q_f^{\frac{1}{2}})]^2}$$

当  $\nu_0 = \mu$  时, 有  $\nu_k = \mu$  ( $\forall k \geq 0$ ), 则  $\alpha_k = \sqrt{q_f}$ ,  $\forall k$

□

定理 2.2.2 在 (2.2.7) 中取  $\nu_0 = 3L + \mu$ , 则生成的  $\{x_k\}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{满足: } f(x_k) - f^* &\leq \frac{2(4+q_f)\mu \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{3 [\exp(\frac{k+1}{2} q_f^{\frac{1}{2}}) - \exp(-\frac{k+1}{2} q_f^{\frac{1}{2}})]^2} \\ &\leq \frac{2(4+q_f)L \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{3(k+1)^2} \end{aligned}$$

这意味着 (2.2.7) 对解无约束优化问题是 optimal 的

$f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,  $\mu \geq 0$ , 当精度  $\varepsilon > 0$  足够小,

$$\varepsilon \leq \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$$

若  $\mu = 0$ , 则该方法对  $\varepsilon \leq \frac{3L}{32} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$  是 optimal 的

证明: 由  $f(x_0) - f^* \leq \frac{L}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$ , 故由定理 2.2.1

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_k) - f^* &\leq \lambda_k \left[ f(x_0) - f^* + \frac{\gamma_0}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 \right] \\ &\leq \frac{\lambda_k}{2} (L + \gamma_0) \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

由引理 2.2.4

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_k) - f^* &\leq \frac{2\mu(L + \gamma_0) \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{(\gamma_0 - \mu) \left[ \exp\left(\frac{k+1}{2} \rho_f^{\frac{1}{2}}\right) - \exp\left(-\frac{k+1}{2} \rho_f^{\frac{1}{2}}\right) \right]^2} \\ &\leq \frac{2L(L + \gamma_0) \|x_0 - x^*\|}{(\gamma_0 - \mu) (k+1)^2} \end{aligned}$$

将  $\gamma_0 = 3L + \mu$  代入上式即证

令  $\mu > 0$ , 有:

$$f(x_k) - f^* \geq \frac{\mu}{2} \left( \frac{\sqrt{\rho_f} - 1}{\sqrt{\rho_f} + 1} \right)^{2k} R^2 \geq \frac{\mu}{2} \exp\left(-\frac{4k}{\sqrt{\rho_f} - 1}\right) R^2$$

其中  $R = \|x_0 - x^*\|$

注：下证  $\left(\frac{\sqrt{Q_f}-1}{\sqrt{Q_f}+1}\right)^{2k} \geq \exp\left(-\frac{4k}{\sqrt{Q_f}-1}\right)$

即证：  $2k \ln\left(1 - \frac{2}{\sqrt{Q_f}+1}\right) \geq -\frac{4k}{\sqrt{Q_f}-1}$   $\textcircled{*}$

$\Leftrightarrow \frac{2}{\sqrt{Q_f}-1} + \ln\left(1 - \frac{2}{\sqrt{Q_f}+1}\right) \geq 0$  对  $\forall Q_f > 1$  成立

令  $g(x) = \frac{2}{x-1} + \ln\left(1 - \frac{2}{x+1}\right)$ ,  $x > 1$

$g'(x) = -\frac{2}{(x-1)^2} + \frac{2}{(x-1)(x+1)} = \frac{2}{x-1} \left(\frac{1}{x+1} - \frac{1}{x-1}\right) < 0$

而  $\lim_{x \rightarrow +\infty} g(x) = 0$ , 故  $\textcircled{*}$  成立

故  $f(x_k) - f^* \leq \varepsilon$  不可能好于：  $k \geq \frac{\sqrt{Q_f}-1}{4} \ln \frac{\mu R^2}{2\varepsilon}$   $\textcircled{*}$

对于我们的算法：

$$f(x_k) - f^* \leq \frac{2(4+Q_f)\mu \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{3[\exp(\frac{k+1}{2} q_f^{\frac{1}{2}}) - \exp(-\frac{k+1}{2} q_f^{\frac{1}{2}})]^2}$$

$$\leq \frac{10}{3} \mu R^2 [e^{(k+1)q_f^{\frac{1}{2}}} - 2]^{-1}$$

则  $k > \sqrt{Q_f} \ln\left(2 + \frac{10\mu R^2}{3\varepsilon}\right)$

$$\begin{aligned} \ln\left(2 + \frac{10\mu R^2}{3\varepsilon}\right) &\leq \ln\left(\frac{\mu R^2}{\varepsilon} + \frac{10\mu R^2}{3\varepsilon}\right) \\ &= \ln\frac{13}{3} + \ln\frac{\mu R^2}{\varepsilon} \end{aligned}$$

则由  $\sqrt{q_f} (\ln\frac{13}{3} + \ln\frac{\mu R^2}{\varepsilon})$  与  $\otimes$  成比例, 故 (2.2.7) 是最优的



注: 对于强凸情形 ( $\mu > 0$ )

$$\begin{aligned} f(X_k) - f^* &\leq \frac{2(4+q_f)\mu \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{3\left[\exp\left(\frac{k+1}{2}\sqrt{q_f}\right) - \exp\left(-\frac{k+1}{2}\sqrt{q_f}\right)\right]^2} \\ &\leq \frac{2(4+q_f)\mu \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{3\left[\exp\left(\frac{k+1}{2}\sqrt{q_f}\right) - 1\right]^2} \\ &= O\left(e^{-(k+1)\sqrt{q_f}}\right) \end{aligned}$$

**Constant Step Scheme I**

0. Choose the point  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , some  $\gamma_0 > 0$ , and set  $v_0 = x_0$ .

1.  $k$ th iteration ( $k \geq 0$ ).

(a) Compute  $\alpha_k \in (0, 1)$  from the equation

$$L\alpha_k^2 = (1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu. \quad (2.2.19)$$

Set  $\gamma_{k+1} = (1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu$ .

(b) Choose  $y_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu} [\alpha_k\gamma_k v_k + \gamma_{k+1}x_k]$ . Compute  $f(y_k)$  and  $\nabla f(y_k)$ .

(c) Set  $x_{k+1} = y_k - \frac{1}{L}\nabla f(y_k)$  and

$$v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} [(1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k v_k + \alpha_k\mu y_k - \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k)].$$

注意到：这里把 (2.2.7) 中的 Find  $x_{k+1}$ , s.t.

$$f(x_{k+1}) \leq f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2$$

换成  $x_{k+1} = y_k - \frac{1}{L}\nabla f(y_k)$ , 则由 1.2.3 节的分析:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_{k+1}) &\leq f(y_k) + \langle \nabla f(y_k), x_{k+1} - y_k \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \|x_{k+1} - y_k\|^2 \\ &= f(y_k) - \frac{1}{L} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{L^2} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 \\ &= f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

故取固定步长  $\frac{1}{L}$  满足 (2.2.7) 的要求

下将 (2.2.19) 化简成更简单的形式, 注意到:

$$y_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu} (\alpha_k \gamma_k v_k + \gamma_{k+1} x_k)$$

$$x_{k+1} = y_k - \frac{1}{L} \nabla f(y_k)$$

$$v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} [(1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k v_k + \alpha_k \mu y_k - \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k)]$$

故

$$v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} \left\{ \frac{(1 - \alpha_k)}{\alpha_k} [(\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu) y_k - \gamma_{k+1} x_k] + \alpha_k \mu y_k - \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k) \right\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} \left\{ \frac{(1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k}{\alpha_k} y_k + \mu y_k \right\} - \frac{1 - \alpha_k}{\alpha_k} x_k - \frac{\alpha_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} \nabla f(y_k)$$

$$= x_k + \frac{1}{\alpha_k} (y_k - x_k) - \frac{1}{\alpha_k L} \nabla f(y_k)$$

$$= x_k + \frac{1}{\alpha_k} (x_{k+1} - x_k)$$

故：

$$y_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1} + \alpha_{k+1} \mu} (\alpha_{k+1} \gamma_{k+1} v_{k+1} + \gamma_{k+2} x_{k+1})$$

$$= x_{k+1} + \frac{\alpha_{k+1} \gamma_{k+1} (v_{k+1} - x_{k+1})}{\gamma_{k+1} + \alpha_{k+1} \mu}$$

$$= x_{k+1} + \beta_k (x_{k+1} - x_k)$$

$$\left( \text{由 } v_{k+1} = x_{k+1} - \frac{\alpha_k - 1}{\alpha_k} (x_{k+1} - x_k) \right)$$

$$\text{其中 } \beta_k = \frac{\alpha_{k+1} Y_{k+1} (1 - \alpha_k)}{\alpha_k (Y_{k+1} + \alpha_{k+1} \mu)}$$

$\{Y_k\}$  的更新准则不变, 仍是

$$\alpha_k^2 L = (1 - \alpha_k) Y_k + \mu \alpha_k \equiv Y_{k+1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } \beta_k &= \frac{\alpha_{k+1} Y_{k+1} (1 - \alpha_k)}{\alpha_k (Y_{k+1} + \alpha_{k+1} \mu)} \\ &= \frac{\alpha_{k+1} Y_{k+1} (1 - \alpha_k)}{\alpha_k (Y_{k+1} + \alpha_{k+1}^2 L - (1 - \alpha_{k+1}) Y_{k+1})} \\ &= \frac{Y_{k+1} (1 - \alpha_k)}{\alpha_k (Y_{k+1} + \alpha_{k+1} L)} \\ &= \frac{\alpha_k^2 L (1 - \alpha_k)}{\alpha_k (\alpha_k^2 L + \alpha_{k+1} L)} = \frac{\alpha_k (1 - \alpha_k)}{\alpha_k^2 + \alpha_{k+1}} \end{aligned}$$

又注意到  $\left(\frac{Y_{k+1}}{L} = \alpha_k^2\right)$

$$\alpha_{k+1}^2 = (1 - \alpha_{k+1}) \alpha_k^2 + \rho_f \alpha_{k+1}$$

$$\alpha_0^2 L = (1 - \alpha_0) Y_0 + \mu \alpha_0$$

故  $Y_0$  可以视为  $\alpha_0$  的函数!

**Constant Step Scheme II**

**0.** Choose the point  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , some  $\alpha_0 \in (0, 1)$ , and set  $y_0 = x_0$ .

**1.  $k$ th iteration ( $k \geq 0$ ).**

(a) Compute  $f(y_k)$  and  $\nabla f(y_k)$ . Set  $x_{k+1} = y_k - \frac{1}{L} \nabla f(y_k)$ .

(b) Compute  $\alpha_{k+1} \in (0, 1)$  from the equation

$$\alpha_{k+1}^2 = (1 - \alpha_{k+1})\alpha_k^2 + q_f \alpha_{k+1}.$$

Set  $\beta_k = \frac{\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)}{\alpha_k^2 + \alpha_{k+1}}$  and  $y_{k+1} = x_{k+1} + \beta_k(x_{k+1} - x_k)$ .

(2.2.20)

定理 2.2.3: (2.2.20) 取  $\alpha_0$  满足:

$$\sqrt{q_f} \leq \alpha_0 \leq \frac{2(3+q_f)}{3+\sqrt{21+4q_f}} \quad (2.2.21)$$

$$\text{则 } f(x_k) - f^* \leq \frac{4\mu [f(x_0) - f^* + \frac{\nu_0}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2]}{(\nu_0 - \mu) [\exp(\frac{k+1}{2} \sqrt{q_f}) - \exp(-\frac{k+1}{2} \sqrt{q_f})]^2}$$

$$\leq \frac{4L}{(\nu_0 - \mu)(k+1)^2} [f(x_0) - f^* + \frac{\nu_0}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2]$$

$$\text{其中 } \nu_0 = \frac{\alpha_0(\alpha_0 L - \mu)}{1 - \alpha_0}$$

证明: (2.2.21) 与 lemma 2.2.4 中的  $\nu_0 \in [\mu, 3L + \mu]$  等价

故该定理不用证。

若  $\alpha_0 = \sqrt{q_f}$ , 则:  $\alpha_k = \sqrt{q_f}$ ,  $\beta_k = \frac{1 - \sqrt{q_f}}{1 + \sqrt{q_f}} \quad \forall k \geq 0$

| Constant Step scheme III                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>0. Choose <math>y_0 = x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n</math>.</p> <p>1. <math>k</math>th iteration (<math>k \geq 0</math>).</p> $x_{k+1} = y_k - \frac{1}{L} \nabla f(y_k),$ $y_{k+1} = x_{k+1} + \frac{1 - \sqrt{q_f}}{1 + \sqrt{q_f}} (x_{k+1} - x_k).$ |

(2.2.22)

故:

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x_k) - f^* &\leq (1 - \sqrt{q_f})^k [f(x_0) - f^* + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2] \\
 &\leq \frac{L + \mu}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 (1 - \sqrt{q_f})^k \\
 &\leq \frac{L + \mu}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 e^{-k\sqrt{q_f}}, \quad k \geq 0
 \end{aligned}$$

注: 对  $\mu = 0$  ( $q_f = 0$ ) 时, 此法不适用

定理 2.2.4: (2.2.7) 应用于 func  $f \in \mathcal{F}_L^{\text{bl}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,

则对  $\forall k \geq 0$ , 有:

$$\|v_k - x^*\| \leq [1 + \frac{1}{k_0} L]^{\frac{1}{2}} \tilde{r}_0$$

$$\|x_k - x^*\| \leq [1 + \frac{1}{k_0} L]^{\frac{1}{2}} \tilde{r}_0$$

其中  $\tilde{r}_0 = \|x^* - x_0\|$ , 更多地, 对  $g_k = \frac{\lambda_k}{1 - \lambda_k} \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \frac{\alpha_i}{\lambda_{i+1}} \nabla f(y_k)$

它的系数满足:  $\sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \frac{\alpha_i}{\lambda_{i+1}} = \frac{1-\lambda_k}{\lambda_k}$ ,  $k \geq 1$ . 且

$$\|g_k\| \leq \frac{\lambda_k \nu_0}{1-\lambda_k} (1 + [1 + \frac{1}{\nu_0} L]^{\frac{1}{2}}) \tilde{\nu}_0$$

证明:

estimating function 可以如下形式表示:

$$\phi_k(x) = t_k(x) + \lambda_k (f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \nu_0 \|x - x_0\|^2), \quad k \geq 0$$

其中  $t_k(x)$  满足:  $t_0(x) \equiv 0$ ,

$$t_{k+1}(x) = (1-\alpha_k) t_k(x) + \alpha_k [f(y_k) + \langle \nabla f(y_k), x - y_k \rangle], \quad k \geq 0$$

Why? 用数学归纳法:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_0(x) &= t_0(x) + \lambda_0 (f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \nu_0 \|x - x_0\|^2) \\ &= f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \nu_0 \|x - x_0\|^2 \quad \text{满足条件} \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

设  $\phi_k(x)$  满足, 下证  $\phi_{k+1}(x)$  也满足:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{k+1}(x) &= t_{k+1}(x) + \lambda_{k+1} (f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \nu_0 \|x - x_0\|^2) \\ &= (1-\alpha_k) t_k(x) + \alpha_k [f(y_k) + \langle \nabla f(y_k), x - y_k \rangle] \\ &\quad + (1-\alpha_k) \lambda_k (f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \nu_0 \|x - x_0\|^2) \\ &= (1-\alpha_k) \phi_k(x) + \alpha_k [f(y_k) + \langle \nabla f(y_k), x - y_k \rangle] \end{aligned}$$

由 (2.2.4) 知,  $\phi_{k+1}(x)$  仍是估计 func □

定义  $\nabla t_k \equiv \nabla t_k(x)$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  ( $t_k$  是仿射, 故良定义)

由  $\phi_k(x)$  的强凸性, 且凸系数是  $\lambda_k \gamma_0$ , 则对  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有:

$$f(x_k) + \frac{1}{2} \lambda_k \gamma_0 \|x - v_k\|^2 \leq \phi_k^* + \frac{1}{2} \lambda_k \gamma_0 \|x - v_k\|^2$$

$$\leq \phi_k(x) \quad (\text{由 } \phi_k \text{ 的强凸性})$$

$$\stackrel{(2.2.2)}{\leq} f(x) + \lambda_k (f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \gamma_0 \|x - x_0\|^2 - f(x))$$

故令  $x = x^*$ , 则

$$\frac{1}{2} \lambda_k \gamma_0 \|x^* - v_k\|^2 \leq f(x^*) - f(x_k) + \lambda_k (f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \gamma_0 \|x^* - x_0\|^2 - f(x^*))$$

$$\leq \lambda_k (f(x_0) + \frac{1}{2} \gamma_0 \|x^* - x_0\|^2 - f(x^*))$$

即证 (2.2.24), 下证 (2.2.25), 用数学归纳法:

当  $k=0$  时, 有  $v_0 = x_0$ , (2.2.25) 成立

设  $k$  时成立, 下证  $k+1$  时也成立

$$\begin{aligned} \|v_k - x^*\| &= \left\| \frac{1}{\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu} [\alpha_k \gamma_k v_k + \gamma_{k+1} x_k] - x^* \right\| \\ &\leq \frac{\alpha_k \gamma_k}{\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu} \|v_k - x^*\| + \frac{\gamma_{k+1}}{\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu} \|x_k - x^*\| \end{aligned}$$

$$\leq \left[1 + \frac{1}{\gamma_0} L\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \tilde{\gamma}_0 \quad (k+1 \text{ 时成立})$$

由梯度法:

$$\|x_{k+1} - x^*\| \leq \|y_k - x^*\| \leq \left[1 + \frac{1}{\gamma_0} L\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \tilde{\gamma}_0$$

设  $S_k \triangleq \frac{1}{\lambda_k} \nabla \ell_k$ , 注意到  $S_0 = 0$ , 且

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla \ell_{k+1} &= (1 - \alpha_k) \nabla \ell_k + \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k) \\ &= \frac{\lambda_{k+1}}{\lambda_k} \nabla \ell_k + \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k), \quad k \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } S_k = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \frac{\alpha_i}{\lambda_{i+1}} \nabla f(y_i), \quad \text{令 } \tau_i = \frac{\alpha_i}{\lambda_{i+1}}$$

$$\text{则 } \tau_i = \frac{\alpha_i}{(1 - \alpha_i) \lambda_i} = \frac{1}{\lambda_{i+1}} - \frac{1}{\lambda_i}$$

$$\text{故 } \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \tau_i = \frac{1}{\lambda_k} - 1,$$

$$g_k = \frac{\lambda_k S_k}{1 - \lambda_k} \equiv \frac{\lambda_k}{1 - \lambda_k} \nabla \ell_k(x), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

注意到:

$$V_k = x_0 - \frac{1}{\lambda_k \gamma_0} \nabla \ell_k = x_0 - \frac{1 - \lambda_k}{\lambda_k \gamma_0} g_k$$

同样用数学归纳法:

$$v_0 = x_0 \quad \checkmark$$

设  $k$  时成立, 下证  $k+1$  时成立

$$\begin{aligned}v_{k+1} &= x_0 - \frac{1}{\lambda_{k+1}\gamma_0} \nabla \ell_{k+1} \\&= x_0 - \frac{1}{\lambda_{k+1}\gamma_0} \left( \frac{\lambda_{k+1}}{\lambda_k} \nabla \ell_k + \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k) \right) \\&= x_0 - \frac{1}{\lambda_k \gamma_0} \nabla \ell_k - \frac{\alpha_k}{\lambda_{k+1}\gamma_0} \nabla f(y_k) \\&= v_k - \frac{\alpha_k}{\prod_{n=0}^k (1-\alpha_n)\gamma_0} \nabla f(y_k) \\&= \frac{(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} - \frac{\alpha_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} \nabla f(y_k) \quad \checkmark\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{故 } [1 + \frac{1}{\gamma_0}L]^{\frac{1}{2}} \tilde{r}_0 &\geq \| x_0 - \frac{1-\lambda_k}{\lambda_k \gamma_0} g_k - x^* \| \\&\geq \frac{1-\lambda_k}{\lambda_k \gamma_0} \| g_k \| - \tilde{r}_0\end{aligned}$$



## § 2.2.2 Decreasing the norm of gradient

先考虑一般的梯度法 (2.1.37),  $h_k = \frac{1}{L}$

记  $R_0 = \|x_0 - x^*\|$ , 固定  $T \geq 3$ , 当  $0 \leq k < T$  时

$$f(x_k) - f^* \stackrel{(2.1.39)}{\leq} \frac{2LR_0^2}{k+4}$$

设  $i \geq k$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_i) - f(x_{i+1}) &\geq \langle \nabla f(x_i), x_i - x_{i+1} \rangle - \frac{L}{2} \|x_i - x_{i+1}\|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{L} \|\nabla f(x_i)\|^2 - \frac{L}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{L^2} \|\nabla f(x_i)\|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(x_i)\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

记  $g_{k,T} = \min_{k \leq i \leq T} \|\nabla f(x_i)\|$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} (T-k+1)g_{k,T}^2 &\leq \sum_{i=k}^T \|\nabla f(x_i)\|^2 \\ &\leq 2L \sum_{i=k}^T (f(x_i) - f(x_{i+1})) \\ &= 2L (f(x_k) - f(x_{T+1})) \\ &\leq 2L (f(x_k) - f^*) \leq \frac{4L^2 R_0^2}{k+4} \end{aligned}$$

故 
$$g_{0,T}^2 \leq \frac{4L^2R_0^2}{(k+4)(T-k+1)}$$

令  $q(k) = (k+4)(T-k+1)$ , 注意到:

$$q^* = \max_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} q(k) \geq q(\tau^* + \frac{1}{2}), \tau^* = \operatorname{argmax}_{\tau \in \mathbb{R}} q(\tau)$$

[ $\tau^*, \tau^* + \frac{1}{2}$ ] 内总有一个整数

由  $\tau^* = \frac{T-3}{2}$ , 则  $q^* \geq q(\frac{T-2}{2}) = \frac{1}{4}(T+4)(T+6)$

从而得到下面的定理:

定理 2.2.5 令  $f \in \mathcal{F}_L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 取 (2.1.37) 中  $h_k = \frac{1}{k}$ , 则当  $T \geq 3$ ,

有: 
$$g_{0,T} \leq \frac{4LR_0}{[(T+4)(T+6)]^{\frac{1}{2}}}$$

下面介绍单调版本的 Optimal Method.

| <b>Monotone Constant Step Scheme I<sub>A</sub></b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| <p><b>0.</b> Choose the point <math>x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n</math>. Set <math>\lambda_0 = 1</math> and <math>v_0 = x_0</math>.</p> <p><b>1. <math>k</math>th iteration (<math>k \geq 0</math>).</b></p> <p>(a) Compute <math>\alpha_k \in (0, 1)</math> from equation <math>\alpha_k^2 = 3(1-\alpha_k)\lambda_k</math>.</p> <p>(b) Set <math>y_k = \alpha_k v_k + (1-\alpha_k)x_k</math> and <math>\lambda_{k+1} = (1-\alpha_k)\lambda_k</math>.</p> <p>(c) Compute <math>\nabla f(y_k)</math> and set <math>\hat{x}_{k+1} = y_k - \frac{1}{L}\nabla f(y_k)</math>.</p> <p>(d) Define <math>v_{k+1} = v_k - \frac{1}{L\alpha_k}\nabla f(y_k)</math>.</p> <p>(e) Set <math>\hat{y}_k = \operatorname{argmin}\{f(y) : y \in \{x_k, \hat{x}_{k+1}\}\}</math>.</p> <p>(f) Compute <math>\nabla f(\hat{y}_k)</math> and set <math>x_{k+1} = \hat{y}_k - \frac{1}{L}\nabla f(\hat{y}_k)</math>.</p> | (2.2.32) |

上面的方法又对应于(2.2.7)中取  $\gamma_0 = 3L$ ,  $\mu = 0$ , 从而由

$$\begin{cases} \gamma_{k+1} = (1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k, \gamma_0 = 3L \\ \lambda_{k+1} = (1 - \alpha_k) \lambda_0, \lambda_0 = 1 \end{cases}$$

$\Rightarrow \gamma_k \equiv 3L \lambda_k$ , 故

$$f(x_k) \stackrel{(2.2.32)e}{\geq} f(\hat{y}_k) \stackrel{(2.2.32)f}{\geq} f(x_{k+1}) + \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(\hat{y}_k)\|^2$$

| General Scheme of Optimal Method                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| <p>0. Choose the point <math>x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n</math>, some <math>\gamma_0 &gt; 0</math>, and set <math>v_0 = x_0</math>.</p> <p>1. <math>k</math>th iteration (<math>k \geq 0</math>).</p> <p>(a) Compute <math>\alpha_k \in (0, 1)</math> from the equation</p> $L\alpha_k^2 = (1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu.$ <p>Set <math>\gamma_{k+1} = (1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu</math>.</p> <p>(b) Choose <math>y_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu} [\alpha_k\gamma_k v_k + \gamma_{k+1}x_k]</math>. Compute <math>f(y_k)</math> and <math>\nabla f(y_k)</math>.</p> <p>(c) Find <math>x_{k+1}</math> such that</p> $f(x_{k+1}) \leq f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \ \nabla f(y_k)\ ^2$ <p>(see Sect. 1.2.3 for the step-size rules).</p> <p>(d) Set <math>v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} [(1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k v_k + \alpha_k\mu y_k - \alpha_k \nabla f(y_k)]</math>.</p> | (2.2.7) |

(2.2.7)

$$\begin{matrix} x_k & \longrightarrow & y_k & \longrightarrow & x_{k+1} \\ (2.2.32) & & & & \end{matrix}$$

$$x_k \longrightarrow y_k \longrightarrow \hat{x}_{k+1} \longrightarrow \hat{y}_k \longrightarrow x_{k+1}$$

$f(\hat{x}_{k+1}) \leq f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 \Leftarrow$  就是(2.2.7)中  $x_{k+1}$  的一种实现(2.2.19)

想证: (2.2.32)中:  $f(x_{k+1}) \leq f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{证: } f(x_{k+1}) &\leq f(\hat{y}_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(\hat{y}_k)\|^2 \\ &\leq f(x_{k+1}) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(\hat{y}_k)\|^2 \\ &\leq f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(\hat{y}_k)\|^2 \\ &\leq f(y_k) - \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(y_k)\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

□

故  $T > 3$  时, 当  $0 \leq k < T$ :

$$f(x_k) - f^* \stackrel{(2.2.18)}{\leq} \frac{8LR_0^2}{3(k+1)^2}$$

若  $i \geq k$ , 有:

$$f(x_i) - f(x_{i+1}) \stackrel{(2.2.33)}{\geq} \frac{1}{2L} \|\nabla f(\hat{y}_i)\|^2$$

令  $g_{k,T} = \min_{k \leq i \leq T} \|\nabla f(\hat{y}_i)\|$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} (T-k+1)g_{k,T}^2 &\leq \sum_{i=k}^T \|\nabla f(\hat{y}_i)\|^2 \\ &\leq 2L \sum_{i=k}^T (f(x_i) - f(x_{i+1})) \\ &= 2L (f(x_k) - f(x_{T+1})) \\ &\leq 2L (f(x_k) - f^*) \end{aligned}$$

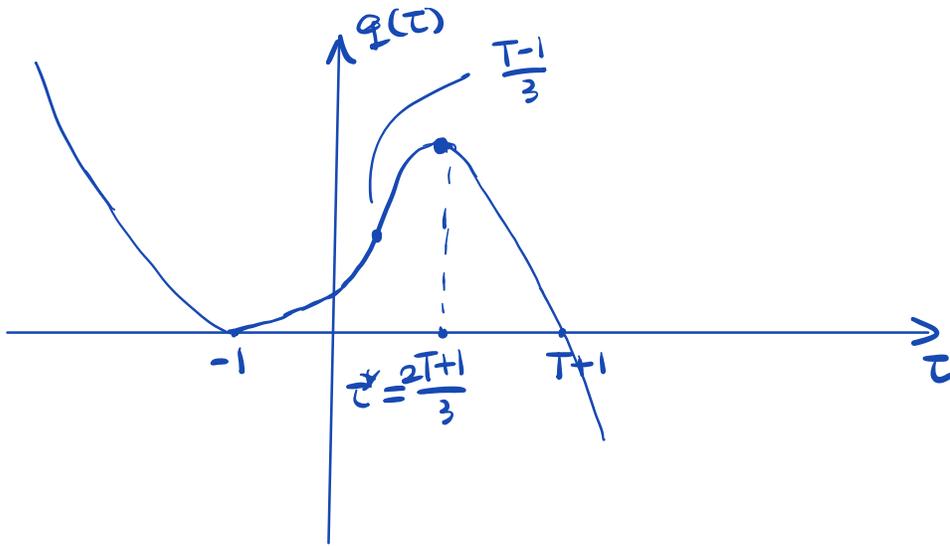
$$\leq \frac{16L^2R_0^2}{3(k+1)^2}$$

$$\text{故 } g_{0,T}^2 \leq \frac{16L^2R_0^2}{3(k+1)^2(T-k+1)}$$

$$\text{令 } q(k) = (k+1)^2(T-k+1)$$

$$q'(k) = (k+1)(2T+1-3k)$$

$$q''(k) = 2T-2-6k$$



$$\text{故 } q^* \geq \min \left\{ q\left(\tau^* - \frac{1}{2}\right), q\left(\tau^* + \frac{1}{2}\right) \right\}$$

$$= \min_{\delta = \pm \frac{1}{2}} \left\{ q(\tau^*) + \frac{1}{2} q'(\tau^*) \delta + \frac{1}{6} q''(\tau^*) \delta^3 \right\}$$

$$= q(\tau^*) + \frac{1}{8} q''(\tau^*) - \frac{1}{8}$$

$$= \frac{4}{27} (T+2)^3 + \frac{1}{8} (-2T-4) - \frac{1}{8}$$

$$= \frac{4}{27}(T+2)^3 - \frac{1}{4}(T+2) - \frac{1}{8}$$

定理 2.2.6

若  $f \in \mathcal{F}_L^{(1)}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 则 (2.2.32) 有:

$$g_{0,T} \leq \frac{4LR_0^2}{\left[\frac{4}{27}(T+2)^3 - \frac{1}{4}(T+2) - \frac{1}{8}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}} \quad T \geq 1$$

Regularization 技术

$$\text{取 } f_\delta(x) = f(x) + \frac{1}{2}\delta \|x - x_0\|^2$$

取  $f_\delta \in \mathcal{F}_{\delta, L+\delta}^{(1)}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 令  $x_\delta^*$  是  $f_\delta$  的全局最优, 则

$$\nabla f(x_\delta^*) + \delta(x_\delta^* - x) = 0$$

注意到

$$\begin{aligned} f_\delta(x_\delta^*) + \frac{1}{2}\delta \|x_\delta^* - x^*\|^2 &\stackrel{(2.1.21)}{\leq} f_\delta(x^*) \\ &= f(x^*) + \frac{1}{2}\delta \|x^* - x_0\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

由  $f(x^*) \leq f(x_\delta^*)$ , 有:

$$\|x_\delta^* - x_0\|^2 + \|x_\delta^* - x^*\|^2 \leq \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$$

又由

$$\|\nabla f(x_\delta^*)\| = \delta \|x_\delta^* - x_0\| \leq \delta R_0$$

故对  $f_\delta$  用 (2.2.22),

$$\begin{aligned} \|\nabla f(x_T)\| &\leq \|\nabla f(x_\delta^*)\| + \|\nabla f(x_T) - \nabla f(x_\delta^*)\| \\ &\leq \delta R_0 + L \|x_T - x_\delta^*\| \\ &\leq \delta R_0 + L \left[ \frac{2}{\delta} (f_\delta(x_T) - f_\delta(x_\delta^*)) \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\stackrel{(2.2.23)}{\leq} \delta R_0 + L \left[ \frac{L+2\delta}{\delta} R_0^2 e^{-T\sqrt{q_\delta}} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{取 } \delta R_0 = \frac{1}{2}\varepsilon, \text{ 则 } \frac{1}{q_\delta} = 1 + \frac{L}{\delta} = 1 + \frac{2LR_0}{\varepsilon}$$

$$\text{故要保证 } \|\nabla f(x_T)\| < \varepsilon, \text{ 只需}$$

$$LR_0 \left[ \frac{L+2\delta}{\delta} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} e^{-T\sqrt{\frac{1}{q_\delta}}}$$

$$\text{即 } T \geq \frac{2}{\sqrt{q_\delta}} \ln \left( \left( \frac{1}{q_\delta} - 1 \right) \left( 1 + \frac{1}{q_\delta} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \right)$$

$$\text{而 } \frac{2}{\sqrt{q_\delta}} \ln \left( \frac{1}{q_\delta} \right) > \frac{2}{\sqrt{q_\delta}} \ln \left( \left( \frac{1}{q_\delta} - 1 \right) \left( 1 + \frac{1}{q_\delta} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \right)$$

定理 2.2.7:

令  $f \in \mathcal{F}_L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,  $\delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{2R_0}$ , 则迭代步数  $T$  使得

(2.2.22) 作用在  $f_\delta$  上, s.t.  $\|\nabla f(x_T)\| \leq \varepsilon$ , 有

$$T \leq 3 \sqrt{1 + \frac{2LR_0}{\varepsilon}} \ln\left(1 + \frac{2LR_0}{\varepsilon}\right)$$

注: 对于  $\min_{0 \leq k \leq T} \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2 = \mathcal{O}\left(\frac{L^2}{k^3}\right)$

对一般的 Nesterov 算法也成立, 但系数不同

**Theorem 6** Let  $f \in \mathcal{F}_L^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$ . For any step size  $0 < s \leq 1/(3L)$ , the iterates  $\{x_k\}_{k=0}^\infty$  generated by NAG-C obey

$$\min_{0 \leq i \leq k} \|\nabla f(x_i)\|^2 \leq \frac{8568 \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{s^2(k+1)^3},$$

for all  $k \geq 0$ . In addition, we have  $f(x_k) - f(x^*) \leq \frac{119 \|x_0 - x^*\|^2}{s(k+1)^2}$  for all  $k \geq 0$ .

所以方法的单调性不是  $\min_{0 \leq k \leq T} \|\nabla f(x_k)\|^2$

收敛速度的关键

## § 2.2.3 Convex set

### 引理 2.2.5

若  $f(\cdot)$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上的 func, 则对  $\forall \beta \in \mathbb{R}$

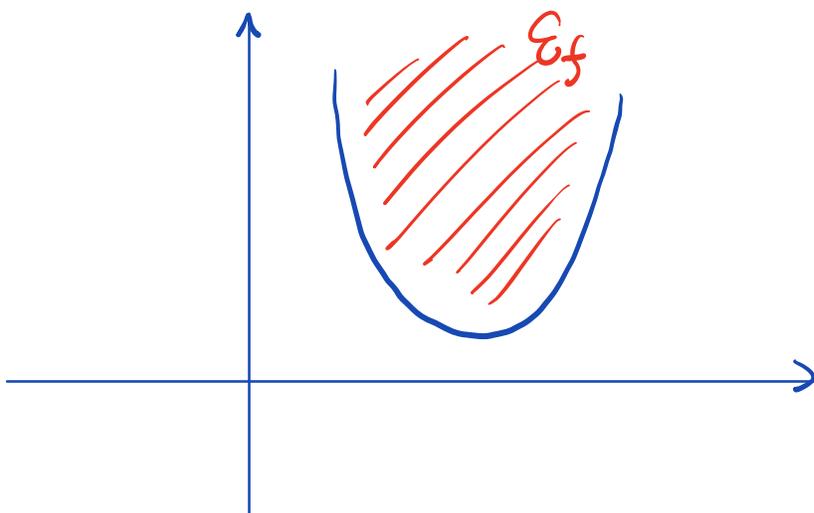
$$\mathcal{L}_f(\beta) = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid f(x) \leq \beta\} \quad \text{凸/空}$$

证明简单

### 引理 2.2.6

若  $f(\cdot)$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上的 func, 则上图

$$\mathcal{E}_f = \{(x, \tau) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid f(x) \leq \tau\} \quad \text{凸}$$



**Theorem 2.2.8** Let  $Q_1 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $Q_2 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$  be closed convex sets, and  $\mathcal{A}(\cdot)$  be a linear operator:

$$\mathcal{A}(x) = Ax + b : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m.$$

1. The intersection of two sets ( $m = n$ ),  $Q_1 \cap Q_2 = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid x \in Q_1, x \in Q_2\}$ , is convex and closed.
2. The sum of two sets ( $m = n$ ),  $Q_1 + Q_2 = \{z = x + y \mid x \in Q_1, y \in Q_2\}$ , is convex. It is closed provided that one of the sets is bounded.
3. The direct product of two sets,  $Q_1 \times Q_2 = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+m} \mid x \in Q_1, y \in Q_2\}$  is convex and closed.
4. The conic hull of a set,  $\mathcal{K}(Q_1) = \{z \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid z = \beta x, x \in Q_1, \beta \geq 0\}$ , is convex. It is closed if the set  $Q_1$  is bounded and does not contain the origin.
5. The convex hull of two sets,

$$\text{Conv}(Q_1, Q_2) = \{z \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid z = \alpha x + (1 - \alpha)y, x \in Q_1, y \in Q_2, \alpha \in [0, 1]\},$$

is convex. It is closed if both sets are bounded.

6. The affine image of a set,  $\mathcal{A}(Q_1) = \{y \in \mathbb{R}^m \mid y = \mathcal{A}(x), x \in Q_1\}$ , is convex and closed. (若  $Q_1$  有界)
7. The inverse affine image:  $\mathcal{A}^{-1}(Q_2) = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \mathcal{A}(x) \in Q_2\}$  is convex. It is closed if  $Q_2$  is bounded.

证明:

① 显然

② 设  $z_1 = x_1 + y_1, z_2 = x_2 + y_2, x_i \in Q_1, y_i \in Q_2$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{则 } \alpha z_1 + (1 - \alpha)z_2 &= \alpha x_1 + (1 - \alpha)x_2 + \\ &\quad \alpha y_1 + (1 - \alpha)y_2 \in Q_1 + Q_2 \quad \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

不妨设  $Q_2$  有界, 考虑序列  $z_k = x_k + y_k \rightarrow \bar{z}$

由  $Q_2$  有界, 故  $\exists \{n_k\}_{k=1}^{\infty} = \{k\}_{k=1}^{\infty}, y_{n_k} \rightarrow \bar{y}$ , 故  $x_{n_k} \rightarrow \bar{z} - \bar{y}$

由  $Q_1$  与  $Q_2$  闭, 故  $Q_1 + Q_2$  闭

③ 显然

④ 设  $z_1 = \beta_1 x_1, z_2 = \beta_2 x_2$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha z_1 + (1-\alpha)z_2 &= \alpha\beta_1 x_1 + (1-\alpha)\beta_2 x_2 \\ &= \gamma(\bar{\alpha}x_1 + (1-\bar{\alpha})x_2)\end{aligned}$$

$$\gamma = \alpha\beta_1 + (1-\alpha)\beta_2, \quad \bar{\alpha} = \frac{\alpha\beta_1}{\gamma} \in [0,1] \quad \text{证} \quad \checkmark$$

考虑序列  $\{z_k = \beta_k x_k \rightarrow \bar{z}\}$

若  $Q_1$  有界, 则  $\{x_k\}$  有界, 若  $0 \notin Q_1$ , 则  $\{\beta_k\}$  有界

故 W.L.O.G., 设  $\{x_k\}, \{\beta_k\}$  收敛, 故  $\bar{z} \in \mathcal{K}(Q_1)$

⑤ 设  $z_1 = \beta_1 x_1 + (1-\beta_1)y_1$

$$z_2 = \beta_2 x_2 + (1-\beta_2)y_2$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{则 } \alpha z_1 + (1-\alpha)z_2 &= \bar{\alpha}(\bar{\beta}_1 x_1 + (1-\bar{\beta}_1)x_2) \\ &\quad + (1-\bar{\alpha})(\bar{\beta}_2 y_1 + (1-\bar{\beta}_2)y_2)\end{aligned}$$

证  $\checkmark$

取一列  $z_k = \beta_k x_k + (1-\beta_k)y_k \rightarrow \bar{z}$

由  $Q_1, Q_2$  的有界性, 证明完全类似 ④

⑥ 凸性显然, 下证  $A(Q_1)$  的闭性

任取一列  $\{y_k = Ax_k \rightarrow \bar{y}\}$ , 则由  $Q_1$  的有界性

W.L.O.G.,  $\{x_k\} \rightarrow \bar{x} \in Q_1$ , 故  $\bar{y} \in A(Q_1)$

⑦ 凸性显然, 闭性由于连续  $\Leftrightarrow$  闭集的原像是闭集

下面要研究带约束的优化问题

$$\min_{x \in Q} f(x), \quad f \in \mathcal{F}^1(Q, \|\cdot\|) \quad (2.2.38)$$

的最优性条件:

定理 2.2.9 令  $f \in \mathcal{F}^1(Q)$ ,  $Q$  凸 + 闭,  $x^*$  是 (2.2.38)

的解  $\Leftrightarrow \langle \nabla f(x^*), x - x^* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in Q$

证明:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{"}\Leftarrow\text{" } f(x) &\geq f(x^*) + \langle \nabla f(x^*), x - x^* \rangle \\ &\geq f(x^*) \quad \forall x \in Q \end{aligned}$$

" $\Rightarrow$ " 设  $\exists x \in Q, \text{s.t. } \langle \nabla f(x^*), x - x^* \rangle < 0$

则令  $\phi(\alpha) = f(x^* + \alpha(x - x^*))$

$$\phi(0) = f(x^*)$$

$$\phi'(0) = \langle \nabla f(x^*), x - x^* \rangle < 0$$

则对充分小  $\alpha$ , 有

$$x^* + \alpha(x - x^*) \in Q$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{且 } f(x^* + \alpha(x - x^*)) &= \phi(\alpha) \\ &< \phi(0) \\ &= f(x^*) \end{aligned}$$



$Q$  的闭性是为了不让问题退化成一般的最优性条件  
( $\nabla f(x^*) = 0$ )

推论 2.2.2: 令  $f \in C_L^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$ , 则对  $x_1^*, x_2^* \in X^*$ ,

$$\text{有: } \nabla f(x_1^*) = \nabla f(x_2^*),$$

$$\langle \nabla f(x_1^*), x_1^* \rangle = \langle \nabla f(x_2^*), x_2^* \rangle$$

证明: 显然

$$\langle \nabla f(x_1^*), x_2^* - x_1^* \rangle \stackrel{(2.2.39)}{\geq} 0$$

$$\langle \nabla f(x_2^*), x_1^* - x_2^* \rangle \stackrel{(2.2.39)}{\geq} 0$$

$$0 \geq \langle \nabla f(x_1^*) - \nabla f(x_2^*), x_1^* - x_2^* \rangle$$

$$\stackrel{(2.1.11)}{\geq} \frac{1}{L} \|\nabla f(x_1^*) - \nabla f(x_2^*)\|_*^2 \geq 0$$

故  $\nabla f(x_1^*) = \nabla f(x_2^*)$ , 从而对  $x^* \in X$ , 令  $\underline{g^*} = \nabla f(x^*)$

良定义

$$\stackrel{(2.2.39)}{0 \geq} \langle \nabla f(x_2^*), x_2^* - x_1^* \rangle$$

$$= \langle g^*, x_2^* - x_1^* \rangle$$

$$= \langle \nabla f(x_1^*), x_2^* - x_1^* \rangle \geq 0$$



定理 2.2.10: 令  $f \in \mathcal{F}_\mu^1(Q, \|\cdot\|)$  ( $\mu > 0$ ),  $Q$  闭凸

则存在问题 (2.2.38) 的唯一解  $x^*$

证明: 令  $x_0 \in Q$ , 定义  $\bar{Q} = \{x \in Q \mid f(x) \leq f(x_0)\}$

则 (2.2.38)  $\Leftrightarrow \min \{f(x) \mid x \in \bar{Q}\}$

集合  $\bar{Q}$  是有界的: 对  $\forall x \in \bar{Q}$ , 有:

$$f(x_0) \geq f(x) \geq f(x_0) + \langle \nabla f(x_0), x - x_0 \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - x_0\|^2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - x_0\|^2 &\leq \langle \nabla f(x_0), x_0 - x \rangle \\ &\leq \|\nabla f(x_0)\|_* \|x_0 - x\| \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } \|x - x_0\| \leq \frac{2}{\mu} \|\nabla f(x_0)\|_* \quad (\text{有界})$$

紧集上的连续 func 有最小值, 故  $x^*$  存在, 下证

唯一性, 设  $x_1^*$  也是 (2.2.38) 的最优点, 则:

$$f^* = f(x_1^*) \geq f^* + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_1^* - x^*\|^2$$

$$\Rightarrow x_1^* = x^*$$

□

注:  $\mathbb{Q}$  一定是闭集吗?

答: 是. 要用到紧集上的连续 func 有最小值

就要证  $\bar{\mathbb{Q}}$  紧. 若  $\mathbb{Q}$  闭, 则  $\forall$  Cauchy  $\{x_k\} \subset \bar{\mathbb{Q}}$

$x_k \xrightarrow{\|\cdot\|} \bar{x}$ , 则  $\{x_k\} \subset \mathbb{Q}$ , 则  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{Q}$ , 且由  $f(x_k) \leq f(x_0)$

及  $f$  连续. 故  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(x_k) = f(\bar{x}) \leq f(x_0)$ , 则  $\bar{x} \in \bar{\mathbb{Q}}$

即证  $\bar{\mathbb{Q}}$  闭. 但  $\mathbb{Q}$  不闭, 不能证明  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{Q}$

例:  $f(x) = x^2$ ,  $\mathbb{Q} = (-\infty, 0)$ , 不存在最小值

例 2.2.4 令  $f \in \mathcal{J}_\mu^1(\mathbb{Q}, \|\cdot\|_p)$ , 考虑原问题:

$$f^* = \min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} \{f(x) : Ax = b\}$$

$A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ ,  $b \in \mathbb{R}^m$ , 那么 Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L}(x, u) = f(x) + \langle u, b - Ax \rangle, x \in \mathbb{Q}, u \in \mathbb{R}^m$$

对偶 func:  $\phi(u) = \min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} \mathcal{L}(x, u)$ , 由定理 2.2.10,

对  $\forall u \in \mathbb{R}^m$ ,  $\phi(u)$  是良定义的, 令  $x(u) = \underset{x \in Q}{\operatorname{argmin}} f(x, u)$   
 $\in Q$

引理: 设  $Q$  紧, 令  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 设  $X^*(\bar{x}) = \{\bar{x}\}$  是单点集

则若  $\lambda_k \rightarrow \bar{x}$ , 则设  $x_k \in X^*(\lambda_k)$ , 有  $x_k \rightarrow \bar{x}$

定理: 上引理条件下,  $\phi$  在  $\bar{x}$  处可微, 且  $\nabla \phi(u)|_{\lambda=\bar{x}} = f(\bar{x})$

由定理 2.2.10 中的证明

$$\min_{x \in Q} \{ f(x) : Ax = b \}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \min_{x \in \bar{Q}} \{ f(x) : Ax = b \}, \text{ 且 } \bar{Q} \text{ 紧,}$$

再用定理 2.2.10,  $X^*(\bar{x}) = \{\bar{x}\}$  是单点集成立, 故  $\forall \lambda$

$$\nabla \phi(u) = b - Ax(u), \forall u, \text{ 故对 } \forall u_1, u_2 \in \mathbb{R}^m$$

$$\text{令 } g(u) = b - Ax(u)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi(u_1) &= f(x(u_1)) + \langle u_1, b - Ax(u_1) \rangle \\
&\leq f(x(u_2)) + \langle u_1, b - Ax(u_2) \rangle \\
&= \phi(u_2) + \langle u_1 - u_2, f(u_2) \rangle
\end{aligned}$$

在  $\mathbb{R}^m$  上引范数  $\|\cdot\|_d$ , 定义:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|A\|_{p,d} &= \max_{x,u} \{ \langle Ax, u \rangle : \|x\|_p \leq 1, \|u\|_d \leq 1 \} \\
&= \max_{x,u} \{ \langle x, A^T u \rangle : \|x\|_p \leq 1, \|u\|_d \leq 1 \}
\end{aligned}$$

$$(2.1.6) \quad = \max_u \{ \|A^T u\|_{p^*} : \|u\|_d \leq 1 \} \quad (\text{由可达范})$$

注:  $\min_{\substack{x \in X \\ y \in Y}} f(x,y) = \min_{x \in X} \min_{y \in Y} f(x,y)$  始终成立

$$= \min_{y \in Y} \min_{x \in X} f(x,y)$$

证: 取  $x_0 \in X, y_0 \in Y$ , 则

$$f(x_0, y_0) \geq \min_{y \in Y} f(x_0, y) \geq \min_{x \in X} \min_{y \in Y} f(x, y)$$

$$\text{取 } x_0, y_0 = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in X, y \in Y} f(x, y)$$

$$\text{则 } \min_{\substack{x \in X \\ y \in Y}} f(x, y) \geq \min_{x \in X} \min_{y \in Y} f(x, y)$$

$$\text{反之, 由 } \min_{\substack{x \in X \\ y \in Y}} f(x, y) \leq f(x_0, y_0), \text{ 取 } y_0 = \arg \min_{y \in Y} f(x_0, y)$$

$$\Rightarrow \min_{\substack{x \in X \\ y \in Y}} f(x, y) \leq \min_{y \in Y} f(x_0, y)$$

$$\text{再取 } x_0 = \arg \min_{x \in X} \min_{y \in Y} f(x, y), \text{ 则}$$

$$\min_{\substack{x \in X \\ y \in Y}} f(x, y) \leq \min_{x \in X} \min_{y \in Y} f(x, y)$$

$$\text{故 } \min_{\substack{x \in X \\ y \in Y}} f(x, y) = \min_{x \in X} \min_{y \in Y} f(x, y)$$

max 同理



则对  $\forall u_1, u_2 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 由  $\nabla_x L(x, u) = \nabla f(x) - A^T u$

$$\text{故 } \langle \nabla f(x(u_2)), x(u_1) - x(u_2) \rangle \stackrel{(2.2.39)}{\geq} \langle A^T u_2, x(u_1) - x(u_2) \rangle$$

故

$$\phi(u_1) = f(x(u_1)) + \langle u_1, b - Ax(u_1) \rangle$$

$$\stackrel{(2.1.20)}{\geq} f(x(u_2)) + \langle \nabla f(x(u_2)), x(u_1) - x(u_2) \rangle \\ + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x(u_1) - x(u_2)\|_p^2 + \langle u_1, b - Ax(u_1) \rangle$$

$$\stackrel{(2.2.44)}{\geq} f(x(u_2)) + \langle u_2, A(x(u_1) - x(u_2)) \rangle \\ + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x(u_1) - x(u_2)\|_p^2 + \langle u_1, b - Ax(u_1) \rangle$$

$$= \phi(u_2) + \langle g(u_2), u_1 - u_2 \rangle$$

$$- \langle u_1 - u_2, A(x(u_1) - x(u_2)) \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x(u_1) - x(u_2)\|_p^2$$

$$\geq \phi(u_2) + \langle g(u_2), u_1 - u_2 \rangle - \frac{1}{2\mu} \|A^T(u_1 - u_2)\|_{p^*}^2$$

由  $g(u_2) = \nabla \phi(u_2)$ , 且

$$\|A^T(u_1 - u_2)\|_{p^*} \leq \|A\|_{p,d} \|u_1 - u_2\|_d$$

证: 只需证  $\|A\|_{p,d} \geq \|A^T \frac{u_1 - u_2}{\|u_1 - u_2\|_d}\|_{p^*}$

由  $\|A\|_{p,d} = \max_u \{ \|A^T u\|_{p^*} : \|u\|_d \leq 1 \}$ , 即证

故  $-\phi \in \mathcal{F}_L^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^m, \|\cdot\|_d)$ ,  $L = \frac{1}{\mu} \|A\|_{p,d}^2$

现在用任意求解光滑凸func的方法解:

$$\min_{u \in \mathbb{R}^m} \{-\phi(u)\} \quad \dots \quad (2.2.45)$$

不妨设  $u^*$  存在, 则

$$0 = \nabla \phi(u^*) = b - Ax(u^*), \text{ 故 } x(u^*) \text{ 是 (2.2.43)}$$

的可行解, 下证最优性:

$$\begin{aligned} f^* &\stackrel{(1.3.6)}{\geq} f_* \triangleq \max_{u \in \mathbb{R}^m} \phi(u) \\ &= f(x(u^*)) + \langle u^*, \nabla \phi(u^*) \rangle \\ &= f(x(u^*)) \geq f^* \end{aligned}$$

故  $f^* = f_*$ ,  $x(u^*)$  是 (2.2.43) 的最优解

现在设  $\bar{u} \in \mathbb{R}^m$  是 (2.2.45) 的近似解, 则

$$\begin{aligned} f(x(\bar{u})) - f^* &= \phi(\bar{u}) - \langle \bar{u}, \nabla \phi(\bar{u}) \rangle \\ &\quad - \phi(u^*) \end{aligned}$$

$$\leq \|\bar{u}\|_d \|\nabla\phi(\bar{u})\|_{d^*}$$

又显然

$$\|\nabla\phi(\bar{u})\|_{d^*} = \|b - A\alpha(\bar{u})\|_{d^*}$$

故

$$\underbrace{\|b - A\alpha(\bar{u})\|_{d^*}}_{\text{逼近可行域的速度}} = \|\nabla\phi(\bar{u})\|_{d^*} \geq \frac{1}{\|\bar{u}\|_d} \underbrace{(f(\alpha(\bar{u})) - f^*)}_{\text{收敛速度}}$$

逼近可行域的速度

收敛速度

注：能否将约束推广到非线性？

答：不可以，此时可行集  $Q$  一定不是凸集，故不再是一个凸优化问题，因为设问题

一个凸优化问题，因为设问题

$$\min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} f(x) \quad f \in \mathcal{F}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$$

$$\text{s.t. } g(x) = 0, \quad g \text{ 非线性}$$

故可行集在  $\mathbb{R}^n$  空间上是一个超曲面，一定不凸，严格证明：

明：

(流形)

$$g(x)=0 \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} g(x) \geq 0 \\ -g(x) \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

为了保证  $Q$  凸, 则  $g(x), -g(x)$  均凸, 故  $g(x)$  只能是线性

注: 例如  $(ax-b)^2=0$  算做线性约束

定义:  $Q$  是闭集,  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 定义

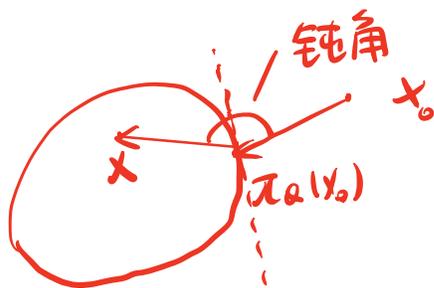
$$\pi_Q(x_0) = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in Q} \|x - x_0\|$$

定理 2.2.11  $Q$  凸, 则存在唯一  $\pi_Q(x_0)$

易证

引理 2.2.7  $Q$  是闭凸集,  $x_0 \notin Q$ , 则对  $\forall x \in Q$ ,

$$\text{有: } \langle \pi_Q(x_0) - x_0, x - \pi_Q(x_0) \rangle \geq 0$$



证明:  $\pi_Q(x_0)$  是  $\min_{x \in Q} f(x)$ ,  $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} \|x - x_0\|^2$

的解, 由定理 2.2.9

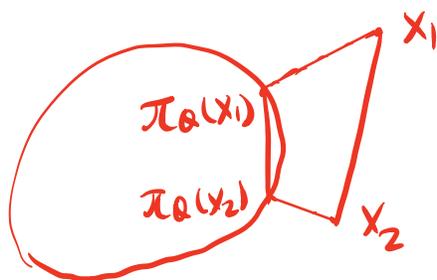
$$\langle \nabla f(\pi_Q(x_0)), x - \pi_Q(x_0) \rangle \geq 0$$

$$\parallel$$
$$\pi_Q(x_0) - x_0$$



推论 2.2.3:  $x_1, x_2 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,

$$\| \pi_Q(x_1) - \pi_Q(x_2) \| \leq \| x_1 - x_2 \|$$



证明:  $\langle \pi_Q(x_1) - x_1, \pi_Q(x_2) - \pi_Q(x_1) \rangle \geq 0$

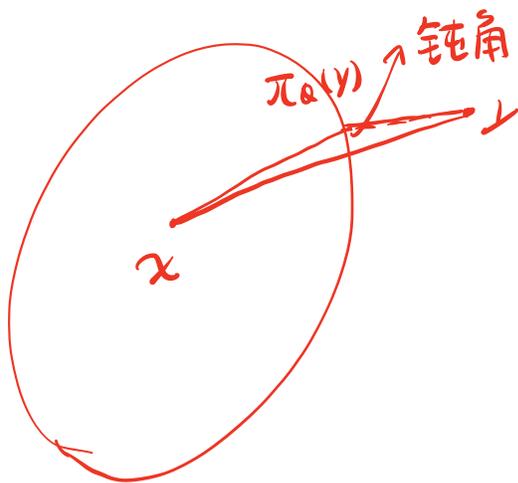
$$\langle \pi_Q(x_2) - x_2, \pi_Q(x_1) - \pi_Q(x_2) \rangle \geq 0$$

相加即证



引理 2.2.8  $x \in Q, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$

$$\|x - \pi_Q(y)\|^2 + \|\pi_Q(y) - y\|^2 \leq \|x - y\|^2$$



由上图是显然的

□

定理 2.2.12 令  $x^*$  是 (2.2.38) 的 optimal, 则

$$\text{对 } \forall \gamma > 0, \text{ 有 } \pi_Q(x^* - \frac{1}{\gamma} \nabla f(x^*)) = x^*$$

证明: 考虑  $\min_{x \in Q} \frac{1}{2} \|x - x^* + \frac{1}{\gamma} \nabla f(x^*)\|^2$ , 则存

在唯一-optimal  $x_*$ , 又由定理 2.2.9  $\Leftrightarrow$

$$\langle x_* - x^* + \frac{1}{\gamma} \nabla f(x^*), x - x_* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in Q$$

故  $x_* = x^*$

□

### § 2.2.3

定义  $p_Q(x) \doteq \frac{1}{2} \|x - \pi_Q(x)\|^2, x \in \mathbb{R}^n$

引理 2.2.9  $p_Q$  在  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上是凸的、可微的, 且

$$\nabla p_Q(x) = x - \pi_Q(x), x \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

是 Lipschitz 连续的 (关于标准欧式 norm), 且 Lipschitz 常数是 1

证明: 固定任意两点  $x_1, x_2 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 令:

$$\pi_1 = \pi_Q(x_1) \in Q, \pi_2 = \pi_Q(x_2) \in Q$$

$$g_1 = x_1 - \pi_1, g_2 = x_2 - \pi_2$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \|g_2\|^2 = \frac{1}{2} \|g_1\|^2 + \langle g_1, g_2 - g_1 \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \|g_2 - g_1\|^2$$

故

$$p_Q(x_2) \geq p_Q(x_1) + \langle x_1 - \pi_Q(x_1), x_2 - x_1 \rangle + \langle \pi_Q(x_1) - x_1, \pi_Q(x_2) - \pi_Q(x_1) \rangle$$

(2.2.47)

$$\geq p_Q(x_1) + \langle g_1, x_2 - x_1 \rangle$$

另一方面:

$$\begin{aligned}
\rho_{\mathcal{Q}}(x_2) - \rho_{\mathcal{Q}}(x_1) &\stackrel{(2.2.53)}{=} \langle g_1, g_2 - g_1 \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \|g_2 - g_1\|^2 \\
&= \langle g_1, x_2 - x_1 \rangle + \langle g_1, \pi_1 - \pi_2 - g_2 \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \|g_1\|^2 + \frac{1}{2} \|g_2\|^2 \\
&\stackrel{(2.2.46)}{\leq} \langle g_1, x_2 - x_1 \rangle + \langle g_1, \pi_1 - x_2 \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \|g_1\|^2 + \frac{1}{2} \|x_2 - \pi_1\|^2 \\
&= \langle g_1, x_2 - x_1 \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \|x_2 - x_1\|^2
\end{aligned}$$

故对  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle g_1, x_2 - x_1 \rangle &\leq \rho_{\mathcal{Q}}(x_2) - \rho_{\mathcal{Q}}(x_1) \\
&\leq \langle g_1, x_2 - x_1 \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \|x_2 - x_1\|^2
\end{aligned}$$

即证引理 2.2.9



## § 2.2.4 The gradient Mapping

定义 2.2.3 固定  $\gamma > 0$ , 定义

$$x_{\mathcal{Q}}(\bar{x}; \gamma) = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \left[ f(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2 \right]$$

$$g_{\mathcal{Q}}(\bar{x}; \gamma) = \gamma(\bar{x} - x_{\mathcal{Q}}(\bar{x}; \gamma))$$

$x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)$  等价于极小化:

$$\underbrace{f(\bar{x}) + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - \bar{x} + \frac{1}{\gamma} \nabla f(\bar{x})\|^2}_{\text{都是定值}} - \underbrace{\frac{1}{2\gamma} \|\nabla f(\bar{x})\|^2}_{\text{都是定值}}$$

都是定值, 故  $x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)$  可以看作  $\bar{x} - \frac{1}{\gamma} \nabla f(\bar{x})$  到可行集  $Q$  的投影

故  $Q \equiv \mathbb{R}^n$  时:

$$x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma) = \bar{x} - \frac{1}{\gamma} \nabla f(\bar{x}), \quad g_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma) = \nabla f(\bar{x})$$

注: gradient mapping  $x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)$  中,  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 而不是  $x \in Q$

定理 2.2.13 令  $f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(Q)$ ,  $\gamma \geq L$ ,  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 则对  $\forall x \in Q$ , 有:

$$f(x) \geq f(x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)) + \langle g_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma), x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)\|^2 + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$$

证明: 令  $x_Q = x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)$ ,  $g_Q = g_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)$

$$\phi(x) = f(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$$

则  $\nabla \phi(x) = \nabla f(\bar{x}) + \gamma(x - \bar{x})$ , 对  $\forall x \in Q$ , 有:

$$\langle \nabla f(\bar{x}) - g_Q, x - x_Q \rangle = \langle \nabla \phi(x_Q), x - x_Q \rangle$$

(2.2.39)

$$\geq 0$$

①

$$\text{故 } f(x) - \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2 \geq f(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle$$

$$= f(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), x_Q - \bar{x} \rangle + \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), x - x_Q \rangle$$

$$\stackrel{\text{①}}{\geq} f(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), x_Q - \bar{x} \rangle + \langle g_Q, x - x_Q \rangle$$

$$= \phi(x_Q) - \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x_Q - \bar{x}\|^2 + \langle g_Q, x - x_Q \rangle$$

$$= \phi(x_Q) + \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_Q\|^2 + \langle g_Q, x - \bar{x} \rangle$$

$$\text{且 } \phi(x_Q) \geq f(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f(\bar{x}), x_Q - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{L}{2} \|x_Q - \bar{x}\|^2$$

$$\geq f(x_Q)$$

□

推论 2.2.4 令  $f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{l, l}(\mathcal{Q})$ ,  $\gamma \geq L$ ,  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 则

$$f(x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)) \leq f(\bar{x}) - \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)\|^2 \quad (2.2.58)$$

$$\langle g_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma), \bar{x} - x^* \rangle \geq \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)\|^2 + \frac{\mu}{2} \|\bar{x} - x^*\|^2$$

$$+ \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma) - x^*\|^2 \quad (2.2.59)$$

证明:

(2.2.57) 中令  $x = \bar{x}$ , 则  $\Rightarrow$  (2.2.58)

(2.2.57) 中令  $x = x^*$ , 则  $\Rightarrow$

$$f(x^*) \geq f(x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)) + \langle g_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma), x^* - \bar{x} \rangle \\ + \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)\|^2 + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x^* - \bar{x}\|^2$$

又由  $f(x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma)) \stackrel{(2.2.40)}{\geq} f(x^*) + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_Q(\bar{x}; \gamma) - x^*\|^2$



## § 2.2.5 Minimization over Simple Sets

$$\min_{x \in Q} f(x)$$

设: ①  $f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(Q)$

②  $Q$  是闭凸集, 且足够简单 (使得 gradient mapping 可以用一个 closed form 表示出来)

## Gradient Method for Simple Set

0. 取  $x_0 \in Q, \gamma > 0$

1.  $k$ th 迭代 ( $k \geq 0$ )

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - \frac{1}{\gamma} g_Q(x_k; \gamma)$$

(2.2.60)

注:  $x_{k+1} = x_Q(x_k; \gamma) = \pi_Q(x_k - \frac{1}{\gamma} \nabla f(x_k))$

定理 2.2.14 令  $f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 若 (2.2.60) 中  $\gamma \geq \frac{L+\mu}{2}$ ,

$$\|x_k - x^*\| \leq \left(1 - \frac{\mu}{\gamma}\right)^k \|x_0 - x^*\|$$

证明: 令  $r_k = \|x_k - x^*\|$ , 则由定理 2.2.12

$$r_{k+1}^2 = \left\| \pi_Q\left(x_k - \frac{1}{\gamma} \nabla f(x_k)\right) - \pi_Q\left(x^* - \frac{1}{\gamma} \nabla f(x^*)\right) \right\|^2$$

(2.2.48)

$$\leq \left\| x_k - x^* - \frac{1}{\gamma} (\nabla f(x_k) - \nabla f(x^*)) \right\|^2$$

$$= r_k^2 - \frac{2}{\gamma} \langle \nabla f(x_k) - \nabla f(x^*), x_k - x^* \rangle + \frac{1}{\gamma^2} \|\nabla f(x_k) - \nabla f(x^*)\|^2$$

(2.1.32)

$$\leq \left(1 - \frac{2}{\gamma} \frac{\mu L}{\mu + L}\right) r_k^2 + \left(\frac{1}{\gamma^2} - \frac{2}{\gamma} \frac{1}{\mu + L}\right) \|\nabla f(x_k) - \nabla f(x^*)\|^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \stackrel{(2.1.26)}{\leq} \left(1 - \frac{2}{\gamma} \frac{\mu L}{\mu+L} + \mu^2 \left( \frac{1}{\gamma^2} - \frac{2}{\gamma} \frac{1}{\mu+L} \right) \right) r_k^2 \\
 & = \left(1 - \frac{\mu}{\gamma}\right)^2 r_k^2 \quad \square
 \end{aligned}$$

取  $\gamma = \frac{L+\mu}{2}$ , 则:

$$\|x_k - x^*\| \leq \left( \frac{L-\mu}{L+\mu} \right)^k \|x_0 - x^*\|$$

注: 与无约束问题收敛速率一致

设  $x_0 \in Q$ , 定义

$$\phi_0(x) = f(x_0) + \frac{\gamma_0}{2} \|x - x_0\|^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \phi_{k+1}(x) = & (1 - \alpha_k) \phi_k(x) + \alpha_k \left[ f(x_Q(y_k; L)) + \frac{1}{2L} \|g_Q(y_k; L)\|^2 \right. \\
 & \left. + \langle g_Q(y_k; L), x - y_k \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - y_k\|^2 \right], \quad k \geq 0
 \end{aligned}$$

这一项在无约束问题的  $\phi_{k+1}$  中没有

$\{\phi_k(x)\}$  可以表示为:  $\phi_k(x) = \phi_k^* + \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \|x - v_k\|^2$

其中:  $v_{k+1} = (1 - \alpha_k) v_k + \alpha_k \mu$

$$v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} \left[ (1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k v_k + \alpha_k \mu \gamma_k - \alpha_k g_Q(y_k; L) \right]$$

$$\phi_{k+1}^* = (1-\alpha_k)\phi_k^* + \alpha_k f(x_Q(y_k; L)) + \left(\frac{\alpha_k}{2L} - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}}\right) \|g_Q(y_k; L)\|^2$$

$$+ \frac{\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} \left( \frac{\mu}{2} \|y_k - v_k\|^2 + \langle g_Q(y_k; L), v_k - y_k \rangle \right)$$

证明: 注意到  $\phi_0(x) = \gamma_0 I_n$ , 下证  $\nabla^2 \phi_k(x) = \gamma_k I_n$ , 用数归, 设  $k$  成立

$$\begin{aligned} \text{则 } \nabla^2 \phi_{k+1}(x) &= (1-\alpha_k) \nabla^2 \phi_k(x) + \alpha_k \mu I_n \\ &= ((1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu) I_n \\ &\equiv \gamma_{k+1} I_n \quad \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } \phi_{k+1}(x) &= (1-\alpha_k) \left( \phi_k^* + \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \|x - v_k\|^2 \right) \\ &+ \alpha_k \left[ f(x_Q(y_k; L)) + \frac{1}{2L} \|g_Q(y_k; L)\|^2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \langle g_Q(y_k; L), x - y_k \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - y_k\|^2 \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } \nabla \phi_{k+1}(x) &= (1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k(x - v_k) + \alpha_k g_Q(y_k; L) \\ &+ \alpha_k \mu(x - y_k) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{即可解得 } v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} \left[ (1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k v_k + \alpha_k \mu y_k - \alpha_k g_Q(y_k; L) \right]$$

最后证明  $\phi_{k+1}^*$  有上面的形式

$$\phi_{k+1}^* + \frac{\gamma_{k+1}}{2} \|y_k - v_{k+1}\|^2 = \phi_{k+1}(y_k) \quad \textcircled{1}$$

$$= (1 - \alpha_k) (\phi_k^* + \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \|y_k - v_k\|^2) + \alpha_k f(x_Q(y_k; L)) + \frac{\alpha_k \gamma_k}{2L} \|g_Q(y_k; L)\|^2$$

$$v_{k+1} - y_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} [(1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k (v_k - y_k) - \alpha_k g_Q(y_k; L)]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } \frac{\gamma_{k+1}}{2} \|y_k - v_{k+1}\|^2 &= \frac{1}{2\gamma_{k+1}} [(1 - \alpha_k)^2 \gamma_k^2 \|v_k - y_k\|^2 \\ &\quad - 2\alpha_k (1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k \langle g_Q(y_k; L), v_k - y_k \rangle + \alpha_k^2 \|g_Q(y_k; L)\|^2] \quad \textcircled{2} \end{aligned}$$

整理 ① ② 即证 □

进一步假设  $\phi_k^* \geq f(x_k)$ , 由

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_k) &\stackrel{(2.2.57)}{\geq} f(x_Q(y_k; L)) + \langle g_Q(y_k; L), x_k - y_k \rangle \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2L} \|g_Q(y_k; L)\|^2 + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_k - y_k\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } \phi_{k+1}^* \geq (1 - \alpha_k) f(x_k) + \alpha_k f(x_Q(y_k; L))$$

$$+ \left( \frac{\alpha_k}{2L} - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}} \right) \|g_Q(y_k; L)\|^2 + \frac{\alpha_k (1 - \alpha_k) \gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} \langle g_Q(y_k; L), v_k - y_k \rangle$$

$$\geq f(x_Q(y_k; L)) + \left(\frac{1}{2L} - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}}\right) \|g_Q(y_k; L)\|^2$$

$$+ (1-\alpha_k) \left\langle g_Q(y_k; L), \frac{\alpha_k \gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} (y_k - y_k) + x_k - y_k \right\rangle = 0$$

故取

$$x_{k+1} = x_Q(y_k; L)$$

$$L \alpha_k^2 = (1-\alpha_k) \gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu \equiv \gamma_{k+1}$$

$$y_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu} (\alpha_k \gamma_k y_k + \gamma_{k+1} x_k)$$

使这一项=0

$$\Rightarrow \phi_{k+1}^* \geq f(x_{k+1})$$

故得到下面 (2.2.20) 的变体

| Constant Step Scheme II for Simple Set                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>0.</b> Choose <math>x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n</math> and <math>\alpha_0 \in \left[ \sqrt{q_f}, \frac{2(3+q_f)}{3+\sqrt{21+4q}} \right]</math>. Set <math>y_0 = x_0</math>.</p> <p><b>1. <math>k</math>th iteration (<math>k \geq 0</math>).</b></p> <p>(a) Compute <math>f(y_k)</math> and <math>\nabla f(y_k)</math>. Set <math>x_{k+1} = x_Q(y_k; L)</math>.</p> <p>(b) Compute <math>\alpha_{k+1} \in (0, 1)</math> from the equation</p> $\alpha_{k+1}^2 = (1 - \alpha_{k+1}) \alpha_k^2 + q_f \alpha_{k+1}.$ <p>Set <math>\beta_k = \frac{\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)}{\alpha_k^2 + \alpha_{k+1}}</math> and <math>y_{k+1} = x_{k+1} + \beta_k(x_{k+1} - x_k)</math>.</p> |

(2.2.63)

## § 2.3.1 The Minmax Problem

$$\min_{x \in Q} [ f(x) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} f_i(x) ]$$

$f_i \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{l, l}(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$ ,  $i=1, \dots, m$ ,  $Q$  是闭凸集

记  $f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{l, l}(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$  若  $f_i \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{l, l}(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$ ,  $i=1, \dots, m$

定义 2.3.1 令  $f$  是 max-type function:

$$f(x) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} f_i(x)$$

$$\text{则 } f(\bar{x}; x) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} [ f_i(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f_i(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle ]$$

叫做  $f$  在  $\bar{x}$  的线性化

引理 2.3.1 对  $\forall x, \bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有:

$$f(x) \geq f(\bar{x}; x) + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2 \quad (2.3.2)$$

$$f(x) \leq f(\bar{x}; x) + \frac{L}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2 \quad (2.3.3)$$

证明: 对  $\forall i=1, \dots, m$ , 有:

$$f_i(x) \geq f_i(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f_i(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$$

两边同时取最大, 即得 (2.3.2), 又由  $\forall i=1, \dots, m$

$$f_i(x) \leq f_i(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f_i(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{L}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$$

两边同时取最大, 即得 (2.3.3)



定理 2.3.1  $x^* \in \mathcal{Q}$  是 (2.3.1) 的 optimal  $\Leftrightarrow$

$$\text{对 } \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}, f(x^*; x) \geq f(x^*, x^*) = f(x^*)$$

证明:

$$(\Leftarrow) f(x) \geq f(x^*; x) \geq f(x^*, x^*) = f(x^*) \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

( $\Rightarrow$ ) 用反证法, 设  $\exists x \in \mathcal{Q}$ , s.t.  $f(x^*; x) < f(x^*)$

考虑  $\phi_i(\alpha) = f_i(x^* + \alpha(x - x^*)) \quad i=1, \dots, m$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{注意到 } & f_i(x^*) + \langle \nabla f_i(x^*), x - x^* \rangle \\ & \leq f(x^*; x) \stackrel{(2.3.2)}{<} f(x^*) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} f_i(x^*) \end{aligned}$$

故对  $\forall i=1, \dots, m$

$$\begin{cases} \phi_i(0) \equiv f_i(x^*) < f(x^*) \\ \phi_i(0) \equiv f_i(x^*) = f(x^*) \\ \phi_i'(0) = \langle \nabla f_i(x^*), x - x^* \rangle < f(x^*) - f_i(x^*) = 0 \end{cases}$$

二者择一发生, 故对充分小的  $\alpha$ , 有

$$f_i(x^* + \alpha(x - x^*)) = \phi_i(\alpha) < f(x^*) \quad \forall i = 1, \dots, m$$

与  $x^*$  是 (2.3.1) 的 optimal 矛盾



推论 2.3.1 令  $x^*$  是 max-type func  $f(\cdot)$  在  $\mathcal{Q}$  上的 minimum

若  $f \in \mathcal{F}'_{\mu}(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$ , 则

$$f(x) \geq f(x^*) + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - x^*\|^2, \text{ 对 } \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

证明: 对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 有

$$f(x) \geq f(x^*; x) + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - x^*\|^2$$

$$\geq f(x^*; x^*) + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - x^*\|^2$$

$$= f(x^*) + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - x^*\|^2$$



定理 2.3.2 设 max-type func  $f \in f'_\mu(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|)$ ,  $\mu > 0$

$\mathcal{Q}$  是闭凸集, 则 (2.3.1) 的解  $x^*$  存在唯一

证明: 令  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 考虑  $\bar{\mathcal{Q}} = \{x \in \mathcal{Q} \mid f(x) \leq f(\bar{x})\}$

$\bar{\mathcal{Q}}$  是闭的, 且 (2.3.1)  $\Leftrightarrow \max\{f(x) \mid x \in \bar{\mathcal{Q}}\}$

下证  $\bar{\mathcal{Q}}$  是有界的: 对  $\forall x \in \bar{\mathcal{Q}}$ , 有  $\forall i=1, \dots, m$

$$f(\bar{x}) \geq f_i(\bar{x}) \geq f_i(x) \geq f_i(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f_i(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$$

$$\text{故 } \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2 \leq \langle \nabla f_i(\bar{x}), \bar{x} - x \rangle + f(\bar{x}) - f_i(\bar{x})$$

$$\leq \|\nabla f_i(\bar{x})\|_* \|\bar{x} - x\| + f(\bar{x}) - f_i(\bar{x}) \quad (\forall i=1, \dots, m)$$

令  $R = \|x - \bar{x}\|$ , 则

$$\frac{\mu}{2} R^2 - \|\nabla f_i(\bar{x})\|_* R + f_i(\bar{x}) - f(\bar{x}) \leq 0 \quad (\forall i=1, \dots, m)$$

开口向上的抛物线, 且  $\Delta = \|\nabla f_i(\bar{x})\|_*^2 + 2\mu(f(\bar{x}) - f_i(\bar{x})) > 0$

故  $R$  有界, 即  $\bar{\mathcal{Q}}$  有界, 从而  $\bar{\mathcal{Q}}$  紧,  $x^*$  存在

下证唯一性: 若  $x_1^*$  也是 (2.3.1) 的 optimal, 则

$$f(x^*) = f(x_1^*) \geq f(x^*; x_1^*) + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_1^* - x^*\|$$

$$\geq f(x^*) + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_1^* - x^*\|$$

$$\Rightarrow x^* = x_1^*$$



## § 2.3.2 Gradient Mapping

固定  $\gamma > 0$ ,  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 对于 max-type function  $f$ , 定义

$$f_\gamma(\bar{x}; x) = f(\bar{x}; x) + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$$

### 定义 2.3.2

$$f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f_\gamma(\bar{x}; x)$$

$$x_f(\bar{x}; \gamma) = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f_\gamma(\bar{x}; x)$$

$$g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma) = \gamma(\bar{x} - x_f(\bar{x}; \gamma))$$

注:  $f_\gamma(\bar{x}, \cdot)$  是一个 max-type func, 分支是:

$$f_i(\bar{x}) + \underbrace{\langle \nabla f_i(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle}_{\text{线性}} + \underbrace{\frac{\gamma}{2} \|\bar{x} - x\|^2}_{\text{二次}} \in f_{\gamma, \gamma}^{|\cdot|}(\mathbb{R}^n), i=1, 2, \dots, m$$

故由定理 2.3.2:  $x_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)$  是良定义的

定理 2.3.3: 对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}, \gamma \geq L, \bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有:

$$f(\bar{x}; x) \geq f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma) + \langle g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma), x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)\|^2$$

证明: 令  $x_f = x_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)$ ,  $g_f = g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)$

显然,  $f_\gamma(\bar{x}; \cdot) \in f_{\gamma, \gamma}^{l, l}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 且是 max-type function

$$f(\bar{x}; x) = f_\gamma(\bar{x}; x) - \frac{\gamma}{2} \|\bar{x} - x\|^2$$

$$\text{(推论 2.3.1)} \geq f_\gamma(\bar{x}; x_f) + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - x_f\|^2 - \frac{\gamma}{2} \|\bar{x} - x\|^2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \|\bar{x}\|^2 - \|x\|^2 &= \langle \bar{x} + x, \bar{x} - x \rangle \\ &= f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma) + \frac{\gamma}{2} \langle \bar{x} - x_f, 2x - x_f - \bar{x} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

$$= f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma) + \frac{\gamma}{2} \langle \bar{x} - x_f, 2(x - \bar{x}) + \bar{x} - x_f \rangle$$

$$= f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma) + \langle g_f, x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_f\|^2$$



推论 2.3.2: 令  $f \in f_{\mu, L}^{l, l}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,  $\gamma \geq L$ , 则:

1) 对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$ ,  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$f(x) \geq f(x_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)) + \langle g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma), x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)\|^2 + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$$

2) 若  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 则

$$f(x_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)) \leq f(\bar{x}) - \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)\|^2$$

3) 对  $\forall \bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$\langle g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma), \bar{x} - x^* \rangle \geq \frac{1}{2\gamma} \|g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)\|^2 + \frac{\mu}{2} \|\bar{x} - x^*\|^2$$

证明: 设  $\gamma > L$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma) &= f_\gamma(\bar{x}; x_f) \\ &= f(\bar{x}; x_f) + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|\bar{x} - x_f\|^2 \\ \text{(引理 2.3.1)} \quad &\geq f(x_f) - \frac{L}{2} \|\bar{x} - x_f\|^2 + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|\bar{x} - x_f\|^2 \\ &\geq f(x_f) \end{aligned}$$

故由  $f(x) \geq f(\bar{x}; x) + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$  即证 1)

令  $x = \bar{x}$ , 即得 2)

令  $x = x^*$ , 由  $f(x_f(\bar{x}; \gamma)) \geq f(x^*)$  即证 3)



引理 2.3.2: 对  $\forall \gamma_1, \gamma_2 > 0, \bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma_2) \geq f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma_1) + \frac{\gamma_2 - \gamma_1}{2\gamma_1\gamma_2} \|g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma_1)\|^2$$

证明: 令  $x_i = x_f(\bar{x}; \gamma_i), g_i = g_f(\bar{x}; \gamma_i), i=1, 2$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{由 (2.3.6)} \quad f(\bar{x}; x) + \frac{\gamma_2}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2 &\geq f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma_1) + \langle g_1, x - \bar{x} \rangle \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2\gamma_1} \|g_1\|^2 + \frac{\gamma_2}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2 \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n \end{aligned}$$

令  $x = x_2$ , 得到:

$$\begin{aligned}
f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma_2) &= f(\bar{x}; x_2) + \frac{\gamma_2}{2} \|x_2 - \bar{x}\|^2 \\
&\geq f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma_1) + \langle g_1, x_2 - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{1}{2\gamma_1} \|g_1\|^2 + \frac{\gamma_2}{2} \|x_2 - \bar{x}\|^2 \\
&= f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma_1) - \frac{1}{\gamma_2} \langle g_1, g_2 \rangle + \frac{1}{2\gamma_1} \|g_1\|^2 + \frac{1}{2\gamma_2} \|g_2\|^2 \\
&\geq f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma_1) + \frac{1}{2\gamma_1} \|g_1\|^2 - \frac{1}{2\gamma_2} \|g_1\|^2 \\
&= f^*(\bar{x}; \gamma_1) + \frac{\gamma_2 - \gamma_1}{2\gamma_1\gamma_2} \|g_1\|^2
\end{aligned}$$



### § 2.3.3 Minimization Methods for the Minmax Problem

#### Gradient Method for Minmax Problem

0. 取  $x_0 \in \mathcal{Q}$ ,  $h > 0$

1.  $k$ th 迭代 ( $k \geq 0$ ) (2.3.11)

$$x_{k+1} = x_k - h g_f(x_k; L)$$

定理 2.3.4 令  $f \in f_{\mu, L}^{bl}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 若 (2.3.11) 取  $h \leq \frac{1}{L}$ , 则:

$$\|x_k - x^*\|^2 \leq (1 - \mu h)^k \|x_0 - x^*\|^2, \quad k \geq 0$$

证明: 令  $r_k = \|x_k - x^*\|$ ,  $g_k = g_f(x_k; L)$ , 则

$$r_{k+1}^2 = \|x_k - hg_k - x^*\|^2 = r_k^2 - 2h \langle g_k, x_k - x^* \rangle + h^2 \|g_k\|^2$$

$$(2.3.9) \leq (1-h\mu)r_k^2 + h(h-\frac{1}{L})\|g_k\|^2$$

$$\leq (1-h\mu)r_k^2$$

令  $\alpha = hL \leq 1$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} x_{k+1} &= x_k - hg_f(x_k; L) \\ &= x_k - hL(x_k - x_f(x_k; L)) \\ &= (1-\alpha)x_k + \alpha x_f(x_k; L) \in \mathcal{Q} \end{aligned}$$



注: 取  $h = \frac{1}{L}$ , 则  $x_{k+1} = x_f(x_k; L)$ , 有收敛速率

$$\|x_k - x^*\|^2 \leq (1-\frac{\mu}{L})^k \|x_0 - x^*\|^2$$

考虑加速, 定义估计序列

$$\phi_0(x) = f(x_0) + \frac{\gamma_0}{2} \|x - x_0\|^2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{k+1}(x) &= (1-\alpha_k)\phi_k(x) + \alpha_k \left[ f(x_f(y_k; L)) + \frac{1}{2L} \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \langle g_f(y_k; L), x - y_k \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - y_k\|^2 \right] \end{aligned}$$

注: 这样定义的原因是为了证明  $\phi_k(x)$  是估计序列, 即

$$\phi_k(x) \leq (1-\lambda_k)f(x) + \lambda_k\phi_0(x) \quad (\text{定义})$$

这时引理 2.2.2 中的证明要利用 (2.3.7) 式, 不再用 (2.1.20)  
强凸带来的不等式

引理 2.3.3 对  $\forall k \geq 0$ , 有

$$\phi_k(x) \equiv \phi_k^* + \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \|x - v_k\|^2$$

其中  $\{\gamma_k\}$ ,  $\{v_k\}$ ,  $\{\phi_k^*\}$  定义如下:  $v_0 = x_0$ ,  $\phi_0^* = f(x_0)$

$$\gamma_{k+1} = (1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu$$

$$v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} [(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k v_k + \alpha_k\mu y_k - \alpha_k g_f(y_k; L)]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_{k+1}^* &= (1-\alpha_k)\phi_k^* + \alpha_k \left( f(x_f(y_k; L)) + \frac{1}{2L} \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2 \right) - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}} \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2 \\ &\quad + \frac{\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} \left( \frac{\mu}{2} \|y_k - v_k\|^2 + \langle g_f(y_k; L), v_k - y_k \rangle \right) \end{aligned}$$

证明: 注意到  $\nabla^2 \phi_0(x) = \gamma_0 I_n$ , 下证  $\nabla^2 \phi_k(x) = \gamma_k I_n$ , 用数归, 设  $k$  成立

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla^2 \phi_{k+1}(x) &= (1-\alpha_k) \nabla^2 \phi_k(x) + \alpha_k \mu I_n \\ &= ((1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu) I_n \\ &\equiv \gamma_{k+1} I_n \quad \checkmark\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{故 } \phi_{k+1}(x) &= (1-\alpha_k) \left( \phi_k^* + \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \|x - v_k\|^2 \right) \\ &+ \alpha_k \left[ f(x_f(y_k; L)) + \frac{1}{2L} \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2 \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \langle g_f(y_k; L), x - y_k \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - y_k\|^2 \right]\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{故 } \nabla \phi_{k+1}(x) &= (1-\alpha_k) \gamma_k (x - v_k) + \alpha_k g_f(y_k; L) \\ &+ \alpha_k \mu (x - y_k) = 0\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{即可解得 } v_{k+1} = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} [(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k v_k + \alpha_k \mu y_k - \alpha_k g_f(y_k; L)]$$

最后证明  $\phi_{k+1}^*$  有上面的形式

$$\begin{aligned}\phi_{k+1}^* + \frac{\gamma_{k+1}}{2} \|y_k - v_{k+1}\|^2 &= \phi_{k+1}(y_k) \\ &= (1-\alpha_k) \left( \phi_k^* + \frac{\gamma_k}{2} \|y_k - v_k\|^2 \right) + \alpha_k f(x_f(y_k; L)) + \frac{\alpha_k}{2L} \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2\end{aligned} \quad \textcircled{1}$$

$$v_{k+1} - y_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_{k+1}} [(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k(v_k - y_k) - \alpha_k g_f(y_k; L)]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } \frac{\gamma_{k+1}}{2} \|y_k - v_{k+1}\|^2 &= \frac{1}{2\gamma_{k+1}} [(1-\alpha_k)^2 \gamma_k^2 \|v_k - y_k\|^2 \\ &\quad - 2\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k \langle g_f(y_k; L), v_k - y_k \rangle + \alpha_k^2 \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2] \quad \textcircled{2} \end{aligned}$$

整理 ① ② 即证



假设  $\phi_k^* \geq f(x_k)$ , 由 (2.3.7)  $x = x_k, \bar{x} = y_k$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow f(x_k) &\geq f(x_f(y_k; L)) + \langle g_f(y_k; L), x_k - y_k \rangle + \frac{1}{2L} \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2 \\ &\quad + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_k - y_k\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\phi_{k+1}^* = (1-\alpha_k) \phi_k^* + \alpha_k (f(x_f(y_k; L)) + \frac{1}{2L} \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2) - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}} \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2$$

$$+ \frac{\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} \left( \frac{\mu}{2} \|y_k - v_k\|^2 + \langle g_f(y_k; L), v_k - y_k \rangle \right)$$

$$\geq (1-\alpha_k) f(x_k) + \alpha_k f(x_f(y_k; L)) + \left( \frac{\alpha_k}{2L} - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}} \right) \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2$$

$$+ \frac{\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} \langle g_f(y_k; L), v_k - y_k \rangle$$

$$\geq f(x_f(y_k; L)) + \left(\frac{1}{2L} - \frac{\alpha_k^2}{2\gamma_{k+1}}\right) \|g_f(y_k; L)\|^2$$

$$+ (1 - \alpha_k) \left\langle g_f(y_k; L), \frac{\alpha_k \gamma_k}{\gamma_{k+1}} (v_k - y_k) + x_k - y_k \right\rangle$$

故取

$$\begin{cases} x_{k+1} = x_f(y_k; L) \\ L\alpha_k^2 = (1 - \alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu \equiv \gamma_{k+1} \\ y_k = \frac{1}{\gamma_k + \alpha_k \mu} (\alpha_k \gamma_k v_k + \gamma_{k+1} x_k) \end{cases}$$

则有  $\phi_{k+1}^* \geq f(x_f(y_k; L)) = f(x_{k+1})$

### Constant Step Scheme II for Minimax Problem

0. Choose  $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\alpha_0 \in \left[ \sqrt{q_f}, \frac{2(3+q_f)}{3+\sqrt{21+4q_f}} \right]$ . Set  $y_0 = x_0$ .

1.  $k$ th iteration ( $k \geq 0$ ).

(a) Compute  $\{f_i(y_k)\}_{i=1}^m$  and  $\{\nabla f_i(y_k)\}_{i=1}^m$ .  
Set  $x_{k+1} = x_f(y_k; L)$ .

(b) Compute  $\alpha_{k+1} \in (0, 1)$  from the equation

$$\alpha_{k+1}^2 = (1 - \alpha_{k+1})\alpha_k^2 + q_f \alpha_{k+1}.$$

Set  $\beta_k = \frac{\alpha_k(1-\alpha_k)}{\alpha_k^2 + \alpha_{k+1}}$  and  $y_{k+1} = x_{k+1} + \beta_k(x_{k+1} - x_k)$ .

(2.3.12)

定理 2.3.5 令 max-type function  $f \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 若

(2.3.12) 取  $\alpha_0 \in \left( \sqrt{q_f}, \frac{2(3+q_f)}{3+\sqrt{21+4q_f}} \right]$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_k) - f^* &\leq \frac{4\mu [f(x_0) - f^* + \frac{r_0}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2]}{(r_0 - \mu) \left[ \exp\left(\frac{k+1}{2} \sqrt{q_f}\right) - \exp\left(-\frac{k+1}{2} \sqrt{q_f}\right) \right]^2} \\ &\leq \frac{4L}{(r_0 - \mu)(k+1)^2} [f(x_0) - f^* + \frac{r_0}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2] \end{aligned}$$

证明: 重新回顾引理 2.2.4, 修正一下  $\mu=0$  时的证明:

$$r_{k+1} = (1 - \alpha_k) r_k = \dots = \lambda_{k+1} r_0$$

由  $\alpha_k = 1 - \frac{\lambda_{k+1}}{\lambda_k}$ , 由  $L\alpha_k^2 = r_{k+1} = \lambda_{k+1} r_0$

$$\Rightarrow 1 - \frac{\lambda_{k+1}}{\lambda_k} = \left[ \frac{r_{k+1}}{L} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} = \left[ \frac{\lambda_{k+1} r_0}{L} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{1}{\lambda_{k+1}} - \frac{1}{\lambda_k} = \sqrt{\frac{r_0}{\lambda_{k+1} L}}, \text{ 故}$$

$$\sqrt{\frac{r_0}{\lambda_{k+1} L}} = \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda_{k+1}}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda_k}} \right) \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda_{k+1}}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda_k}} \right) \leq \frac{2}{\sqrt{\lambda_{k+1}}} \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda_{k+1}}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda_k}} \right) \dots \textcircled{*}$$

故令  $\xi_k = \sqrt{\frac{L}{r_0 \lambda_k}}$ , 则由  $\textcircled{*}$  知  $\xi_{k+1} - \xi_k \geq \frac{1}{2}$

下面证明  $\xi_k \geq \frac{k+1}{2}$ , 用数学归纳法

$$k=0 \text{ 时, } \xi_0 = \sqrt{\frac{L}{\gamma_0 \lambda_0}} = \sqrt{\frac{L}{\gamma_0}} \geq \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \geq \frac{1}{2}$$

设  $k$  时成立, 下证  $k+1$  时成立

$$\text{由 } \xi_{k+1} - \xi_k \geq \frac{1}{2}, \Rightarrow \sqrt{\frac{\gamma_0}{L}} \leq 2 \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda_k} \sqrt{1-\alpha_k}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\lambda_k}} \right)$$

$$\text{则 } \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\alpha_k}} \geq 1 + \frac{\sqrt{\lambda_k}}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\gamma_0}{L}}, \text{ 则有}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \xi_{k+1} &= \sqrt{\frac{L}{\gamma_0 \lambda_{k+1}}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-\alpha_k}} \sqrt{\frac{L}{\gamma_0 \lambda_k}} \\ &\geq \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\lambda_k \gamma_0}{L}} \right) \sqrt{\frac{L}{\gamma_0 \lambda_k}} \\ &\geq \frac{k+1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{k+2}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{证明 } \xi_k = \sqrt{\frac{L}{\gamma_0 \lambda_k}} \geq \frac{k+1}{2} \Leftrightarrow \lambda_k \leq \frac{4L}{\gamma_0 (k+1)^2}$$

为什么能直接用引理 2.2.4 的结论:

利用 (2.3.7), 可以证明引理 2.2.2 的结论, 结合  $\phi_k^* \geq f(x_k)$ ,

可以利用定理 2.2.1, 而  $\{\alpha_k\}$  的更新准则

$$L\alpha_k^2 = (1-\alpha_k)\gamma_k + \alpha_k\mu = \gamma_{k+1}$$

$$\alpha_0 \rightarrow \gamma_1 \rightarrow \alpha_1 \rightarrow \gamma_2 \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \alpha_k \rightarrow \gamma_{k+1} \rightarrow \dots$$

与 2.2 节完全一致, 自然  $\lambda_k = \prod_{i=0}^k (1 - \alpha_i)$  收敛分析完全一致

针对  $\mu > 0$  时, 得到算法的变体:

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| <b>Optimal Method for Minimax Problem with <math>f \in \mathcal{S}_{\mu, L}^{1,1}(\mathbb{R}^n)</math></b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |          |
| <p>0. Choose <math>x_0 \in Q</math>. Set <math>y_0 = x_0</math>, <math>\beta = \frac{1 - \sqrt{\mu/L}}{1 + \sqrt{\mu/L}}</math>.</p> <p>1. <b><math>k</math>th iteration</b> (<math>k \geq 0</math>).<br/>         Compute <math>\{f_i(y_k)\}</math> and <math>\{\nabla f_i(y_k)\}</math>. Set <math>x_{k+1} = x_f(y_k; L)</math> and</p> $y_{k+1} = x_{k+1} + \beta(x_{k+1} - x_k).$ | (2.3.13) |

定理 2.3.6 对于算法 (2.3.13), 有

$$f(x_k) - f^* \leq 2(1 - \sqrt{\frac{\mu}{L}})^k (f(x_0) - f^*)$$

证明: 相当于  $\alpha_0 = \sqrt{\frac{\mu}{L}}$ ,  $\gamma_0 = \mu$ , 则由引理 2.2.4

$$f(x_k) - f^* \leq (1 - \sqrt{\alpha_f})^k [f(x_0) - f^* + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2]$$

$$\text{(推论 2.3.1)} \leq 2(1 - \sqrt{\alpha_f})^k [f(x_0) - f^*]$$



我们要解:

$$\min_{x \in Q} \left\{ \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} [f_i(x_0) + \langle \nabla f_i(x_0), x - x_0 \rangle] + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - x_0\|^2 \right\}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{aligned} \min_{x, t} & \left\{ t + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - x_0\|^2 \right\} \\ \text{s.t.} & f_i(x_0) + \langle \nabla f_i(x_0), x - x_0 \rangle \leq t, \quad i=1, \dots, m \\ & x \in \mathcal{Q}, t \in \mathbb{R} \end{aligned}$$

可以用单纯形法 / 内点法解

## § 2.3.4

$$\min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} f(x)$$

$$\text{s.t. } f_i(x) \leq 0, i=1, \dots, m$$

(2.3.16)

设  $f_i \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu, L}^{l, l}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,  $\mu > 0$

定义参数化的 max-type func:

$$f(t; x) = \max \{ f_0(x) - t, f_i(x), i=1, \dots, m \}, t \in \mathbb{R}, x \in \mathbb{Q}$$

$$f^*(t) = \min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} f(t; x)$$

(2.3.17)

$f(t; x)$  的每一个分支是关于  $x$  的强凸 func, 由 Thm 2.3.2

对  $\forall t \in \mathbb{R}$ , (2.3.17) 的 solution 存在唯一

引理 2.3.4 令  $t^*$  是 (2.3.16) 的 optimal value, 则

$$f^*(t) \leq 0, \text{ 对 } \forall t \geq t^*$$

$$f^*(t) > 0, \text{ 对 } \forall t < t^*$$

证明: 令  $x^*$  是 (2.3.16) 的 solution, 若  $t \geq t^*$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned}
 f^*(t) &\leq f^*(t; x^*) \\
 &= \max \{ f_0(x^*) - t; f_i(x^*) \} \\
 &= \max \{ t^* - t; f_i(x^*) \} \leq 0
 \end{aligned}$$

另一方面, 当  $t < t^*$  时, 用反证法, 设  $f^*(t) \leq 0$ , 即

$$f^*(t) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \max \{ f_0(x) - t; f_i(x) \} \leq 0$$

则  $\exists y \in \mathcal{Q}$ , s.t.

$$f_0(y) \leq t < t^*, \quad f_i(y) \leq 0, \quad i=1, \dots, m$$

与  $x^*$  是 (2.3.16) 的 solution 矛盾



故  $f^*(\cdot)$  的最小根是 (2.3.16) 的 optimal value!

引理 2.3.5: 对  $\forall \Delta \geq 0$ , 有

$$f^*(t) - \Delta \leq f^*(t + \Delta) \leq f^*(t)$$

证明:  $f^*(t + \Delta) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \{ f_0(x) - t - \Delta; f_i(x) \}$

$$\leq \min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \{ f_0(x) - t; f_i(x) \} = f^*(t)$$

$$f^*(t+\Delta) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \{ f_0(x) - t; f_i(x) + \Delta \} - \Delta$$

$$\geq \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \{ f_0(x) - t; f_i(x) \} - \Delta = f^*(t) - \Delta$$



注:  $f^*(t)$  是递减的, 1-Lipschitz 的

引理 2.3.6 对  $\forall t_1 < t_2, \Delta \geq 0$ , 有

$$f^*(t_1 - \Delta) \geq f^*(t_1) + \Delta \frac{f^*(t_1) - f^*(t_2)}{t_2 - t_1} \quad (2.3.18)$$

证明: 令  $t_0 = t_1 - \Delta$ ,  $\alpha = \frac{\Delta}{t_2 - t_0} \equiv \frac{\Delta}{t_2 - t_1 + \Delta} \in [0, 1]$

$$\text{则} \quad \alpha = \frac{t_1 - t_0}{t_2 - t_0} \Rightarrow t_1 = (1 - \alpha)t_0 + \alpha t_2$$

$$(2.3.18) \Leftrightarrow f^*(t_1) \leq (1 - \alpha)f^*(t_0) + \alpha f^*(t_2)$$

令  $x_\alpha = (1 - \alpha)x^*(t_0) + \alpha x^*(t_2)$ , 则

$$f^*(t_1) \leq \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \{ f_0(x_\alpha) - t_1; f_i(x_\alpha) \}$$

$$\leq \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \left\{ (1 - \alpha)(f_0(x^*(t_0)) - t_0) + \alpha(f_0(x^*(t_2)) - t_2); \right. \\ \left. (1 - \alpha)f_i(x^*(t_0)) + \alpha f_i(x^*(t_2)) \right\}$$

$$\leq (1 - \alpha) \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \{ f_0(x^*(t_0)) - t_0; f_i(x^*(t_0)) \}$$

$$+ \alpha \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \{ f_0(x^*(t_2)) - t_2; f_i(x^*(t_2)) \}$$

$$= (1-\alpha) f^*(t_0) + \alpha f^*(t_2)$$

□

注: 引理 2.3.5, 2.3.6 对任意参数化的 max-type 均成立!

定义 linearization of parametric max-type func  $f(t; \cdot)$

$$f(t; \bar{x}; x) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \{ f_0(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f_0(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle - t; f_i(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f_i(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle \}$$

固定  $\gamma > 0$ , 定义:

$$f_\gamma(t; \bar{x}; x) = f(t; \bar{x}; x) + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$$

$$f^*(t; \bar{x}; \gamma) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} f_\gamma(t; \bar{x}; x)$$

$$x_f(t; \bar{x}; \gamma) = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in \mathcal{X}} f_\gamma(t; \bar{x}; x)$$

$$g_f(t; \bar{x}; \gamma) = \gamma(\bar{x} - x_f(t; \bar{x}; \gamma))$$

由于 max-type func  $f_\gamma(t; \bar{x}; \cdot)$  的各个分支是:

$$f_0(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f_0(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle - t + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2$$

$$f_i(\bar{x}) + \langle \nabla f_i(\bar{x}), x - \bar{x} \rangle + \frac{\gamma}{2} \|x - \bar{x}\|^2, \quad i=1, \dots, m$$

故  $f_r(t; \bar{x}; \cdot) \in \mathcal{F}_{r,r}^{|\cdot|}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 则由 Thm 2.3.2:

对  $\forall t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $f^*$ ,  $g_f$ ,  $g_f$  均良定义

由  $f(t; \cdot) \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu,L}^{|\cdot|}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 故由 引理 2.3.1

$$f_{\mu}(t; \bar{x}; x) \leq f(t; x) \leq f_L(t; \bar{x}; x) \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

$$\Rightarrow f^*(t; \bar{x}; \mu) \leq f^*(t) \leq f^*(t; \bar{x}; L)$$

再由 引理 2.3.6: 对  $\forall \bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n, r > 0, \Delta > 0, t_1 < t_2$

$$f^*(t_1 - \Delta; \bar{x}; r) \geq f^*(t_1; \bar{x}; r) + \frac{\Delta}{t_2 - t_1} (f^*(t_1; \bar{x}; r) - f^*(t_2; \bar{x}; r))$$

应用 引理 2.3.2,  $r_1 = L, r_2 = \mu$ :

$$f^*(t; \bar{x}; \mu) \geq f^*(t; \bar{x}; L) - \frac{L - \mu}{2\mu L} \|g_f(t; \bar{x}; L)\|^2$$

定义  $t^*(\bar{x}, t) = \text{root}_t (f^*(t; \bar{x}; \mu))$

最小根

引理 2.3.7 : 令  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \bar{\varepsilon} < t^*, \text{ s.t. } \exists \kappa \in (0, 1), \text{ 有}$

$$f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; \bar{x}; \mu) \geq (1-\kappa) f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; \bar{x}; L)$$

则  $\bar{\varepsilon} < t^*(\bar{x}, \bar{\varepsilon}) \leq t^*$ , 且对  $\forall t < \bar{\varepsilon}, x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$f^*(t; x; L) \geq 2(1-\kappa) f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; \bar{x}; L) \sqrt{\frac{\bar{\varepsilon}-t}{t^*(\bar{x}, \bar{\varepsilon})-\bar{\varepsilon}}}$$

证明: 由  $\bar{\varepsilon} < t^*$ , 则

$$0 < f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}) \leq f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; x; L) \leq \frac{1}{1-\kappa} f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; \bar{x}; \mu)$$

$\Rightarrow f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; \bar{x}; \mu) > 0$ , 由  $f^*(\cdot; \bar{x}; \mu) \downarrow$ , 故

$$t^*(\bar{x}; \bar{\varepsilon}) > \bar{\varepsilon}$$

又由  $f^*(t; \bar{x}; \mu) \leq f^*(t)$ , 故  $t^*(\bar{x}; \bar{\varepsilon}) \leq t^*$

令  $\Delta = \bar{\varepsilon} - t$ , 则由 (2.3.20), 有

$$f^*(t; \bar{x}; L) \geq f^*(t) \geq f^*(t; \bar{x}; \mu)$$

$$\geq f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; \bar{x}; \mu) + \frac{\Delta}{t^*(\bar{x}; \bar{\varepsilon}) - \bar{\varepsilon}} f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; \bar{x}; \mu)$$

$$\geq (1-\kappa) \left(1 + \frac{\Delta}{t^*(\bar{x}; \bar{\varepsilon}) - \bar{\varepsilon}}\right) f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; \bar{x}; L)$$

$$\geq 2(1-\kappa) f^*(\bar{\varepsilon}; \bar{x}; L) \sqrt{\frac{\Delta}{t^*(\bar{x}; \bar{\varepsilon}) - \bar{\varepsilon}}}$$



## § 2.3.5 The Method for Constrained Minimization

| Constrained Minimization Scheme                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>0.</b> Choose <math>x_0 \in Q</math>, <math>\kappa \in (0, \frac{1}{2})</math>, <math>t_0 &lt; t^*</math>, and accuracy <math>\epsilon &gt; 0</math>.</p> <p><b>1. <math>k</math>th iteration (<math>k \geq 0</math>).</b></p> <p>(a) Generate the sequence <math>\{x_{k,j}\}</math> by method (2.3.13) as applied to <math>f(t_k; \cdot)</math> with starting point <math>x_{k,0} = x_k</math>. If</p> $f^*(t_k; x_{k,j}; \mu) \geq (1 - \kappa) f^*(t_k; x_{k,j}; L), \quad (2.3.22)$ <p>then stop the internal process and set <math>j(k) = j</math>,</p> $j^*(k) = \arg \min_{0 \leq j \leq j(k)} f^*(t_k; x_{k,j}; L),$ $x_{k+1} = x_f(t_k; x_{k,j^*(k)}; L).$ <p><b>Global Stop:</b> <math>f^*(t_k; x_{k,j}; L) \leq \epsilon</math> at some iteration of the internal scheme.</p> <p>(b) Set <math>t_{k+1} = t^*(x_{k,j(k)}, t_k)</math>.</p> |

### 引理 2.3.8

$$f^*(t_k; x_{k+1}; L) \leq \frac{t^* - t_0}{1 - \kappa} \left[ \frac{1}{2(1 - \kappa)} \right]^k$$

证明: 令  $\beta = \frac{1}{2(1 - \kappa)} < 1$ ,  $\delta_k = \frac{f^*(t_k; x_{k,j(k)}; L)}{\sqrt{t_{k+1} - t_k}}$

由  $t_{k+1} = t^*(x_{k,j(k)}, t_k)$ , 由引理 2.3.7: 对  $k \geq 1$

$$2(1 - \kappa) \frac{f^*(t_k; x_{k,j(k)}; L)}{\sqrt{t_{k+1} - t_k}} \leq \frac{f^*(t_{k-1}; x_{k-1,j(k-1)}; L)}{\sqrt{t_k - t_{k-1}}}$$

$$\Rightarrow \delta_k \leq \beta \delta_{k-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow f^*(t_k; X_{k,j(k)}; L) &= \delta_k \sqrt{t_{k+1} - t_k} \\ &\leq \beta^k \delta_0 \sqrt{t_{k+1} - t_k} \\ &= \beta^k f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L) \sqrt{\frac{t_{k+1} - t_k}{t_1 - t_0}} \end{aligned}$$

由引理 2.3.5 :  $t_1 - t_0 \geq f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L)$

$$\text{故 } f^*(t_k; X_{k,j(k)}; L) \leq \beta^k f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L) \sqrt{\frac{t_{k+1} - t_k}{f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L)}}$$

$$\leq \frac{\beta^k}{1-\kappa} \sqrt{f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L) (t_{k+1} - t_k)}$$

$$\leq \frac{\beta^k}{1-\kappa} \sqrt{f^*(t_0) (t^* - t_0)}$$

$$\leq \frac{\beta^k}{1-\kappa} (t^* - t_0) \quad (\text{Lemma 2.3.5})$$

又由  $f^*(t_k; X_{k+1}; L) \equiv f^*(t_k; X_{k,j^*(k)}; L) \leq f^*(t_k; X_{k,j(k)}; L)$



## § 2.3.5 The Method for constrained Minimization

0. 取  $x_0 \in \mathcal{Q}$ ,  $\kappa \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$ ,  $t_0 < t^*$ ,  $\varepsilon > 0$

1. 应用 (2.3.13) 于  $f(t_k; \cdot)$ ,  $x_{k,0} = x_k$  生成序列  $\{x_{k,j}\}$  若

$$f^*(t_k; x_{k,j}; \mu) \geq (1-\kappa) f^*(t_k; x_{k,j}; L)$$

则停止内层, 令  $j(k) = j$ ,

$$j^*(k) = \operatorname{argmin}_{0 \leq j \leq j(k)} f^*(t_k; x_{k,j}; L),$$

$$x_{k+1} = x_f(t_k; x_{k,j^*(k)}; L)$$

注:  $t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_{k+1} < \dots \leq t^*$

全局停止条件:  $f^*(t_k; x_{k,j^*(k)}; L) \leq \varepsilon$

(b) 令  $t_{k+1} = t^*(x_{k,j^*(k)}, t_k)$

### 引理 2.3.8

$$f^*(t_k; x_{k+1}; L) \leq \frac{t^* - t_0}{1-\kappa} \left[ \frac{1}{2(1-\kappa)} \right]^k$$

证明: 令  $\beta = \frac{1}{2(1-\kappa)}$ ,  $\delta_k = \frac{f^*(t_k; x_{k,j^*(k)}; L)}{\sqrt{t_{k+1} - t_k}}$

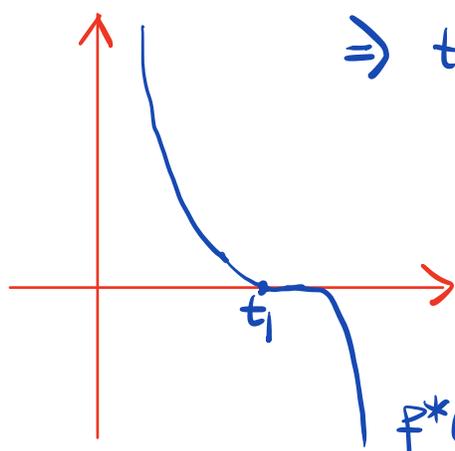
由  $t_{k+1} = t^*(X_{k,j(k)}, t_k)$ , 由 lemma 2.3.7, 对  $k \geq 1$

$$2(1-\alpha) \frac{f^*(t_k; X_{k,j(k)}; L)}{\sqrt{t_{k+1} - t_k}} \leq \frac{f^*(t_{k-1}; X_{k-1,j(k-1)}; L)}{\sqrt{t_k - t_{k-1}}}$$

$$\Rightarrow \delta_k \leq \beta \delta_{k-1}, \text{ 且}$$

$$\begin{aligned} f^*(t_k; X_{k,j(k)}; L) &= \delta_k \sqrt{t_{k+1} - t_k} \\ &\leq \beta^k \delta_0 \sqrt{t_{k+1} - t_k} \\ &= \beta^k f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L) \sqrt{\frac{t_{k+1} - t_k}{t_1 - t_0}} \end{aligned}$$

由引理 2.3.5:  $f^*(t) - \Delta \leq f^*(t + \Delta)$



$$\Rightarrow t_1 - t_0 \geq f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L)$$

$$\text{故 } f^*(t_k; X_{k,j(k)}; L) \leq \beta^k f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L) \sqrt{\frac{t_{k+1} - t_k}{f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L)}}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\leq \frac{\rho^k}{1-\alpha} \sqrt{f^*(t_0; X_{0,j(0)}; L) (t_{k+1} - t_k)} \\ &\leq \frac{\rho^k}{1-\alpha} \sqrt{f^*(t_0) (t^* - t_0)} \\ &\leq \frac{\rho^k}{1-\alpha} (t^* - t_0) \quad (\text{lemma 2.3.5}) \end{aligned}$$

又由 ↗ 怎么来的?

$$f^*(t_k; X_{k+1}; L) \equiv f^*(t_k; X_{k,j^*(k)}; L) \leq f^*(t_k; X_{k,j(k)}; L)$$



外层

上面的结论给了我们估计 (2.3.1b) 的  $\varepsilon$ -solution 的迭代上界的方法:

令  $f^*(t_k; X_{k,j}; L) \leq \varepsilon$ , 则对  $X_* = X_f(t_k; X_{k,j}; L)$  有:

$$\begin{aligned} f(t_k; X_*) &= \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \{ f_0(X_*) - t_k; f_i(X_*) \} \\ &\leq f_L(t_k; X_{k,j}; X_*) = f^*(t_k; X_{k,j}; L) \leq \varepsilon \end{aligned}$$

由  $t_k \leq t^*$ , 故

$$\begin{cases} f_0(X_*) \leq t^* + \varepsilon \\ f_i(X_*) \leq \varepsilon, \quad i=1, \dots, m \end{cases} \quad \text{是原问题的 } \varepsilon\text{-近似解} \quad (2.3.23)$$

由 lemma 2.3.8, 得到 (2.3.23) 至多运行外层循环

$$N(\varepsilon) = \frac{1}{\ln[2(1-\lambda)]} \ln \frac{t^* - t_0}{(1-\lambda)\varepsilon} \text{ 次}$$

下面分析内层循环次数, 由 定理 2.3.6, 有

$$f(t_k; X_{k,j}) - f^*(t_k) \leq 2(1 - \sqrt{q_f})^j (f(t_k; X_k) - f^*(t_k))$$

$$\leq 2e^{-6j} (f(t_k; X_k) - f^*(t_k))$$

$$\leq 2e^{-6j} f(t_k; X_k) \quad (6 = \sqrt{q_f})$$

令  $N$  表示算法 (2.3.22) 的完整迭代次数 ( $N < N(\varepsilon)$ )

故  $j(k)$  对  $0 \leq k \leq N$  良定义, 注意到

$$t_k = t^*(X_{k-1, j^{*(k-1)}}, t_{k-1}) > t_{k-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } f(t_k; X_k) &\leq f(t_{k-1}; X_k) \leq f_L(t_{k-1}; X_{k-1, j^{*(k-1)}}; X_k) \\ &= f^*(t_{k-1}; X_{k-1, j^{*(k-1)}}; L) \end{aligned}$$

定义  $\Delta_k = f^*(t_{k-1}; X_{k-1, j^{*(k-1)}}; L)$ ,  $k \geq 1$ ,  $\Delta_0 = f(t_0; X_0)$

则对  $\forall k \geq 0$ , 有

$$f(t_k; X_k) - f^*(t_k) \leq \Delta_k$$

引理 2.3.9 对  $\forall k, 0 \leq k \leq N$ , 若满足

$$f(t_k; X_{k,j}) - f^*(t_k) \leq \frac{\kappa}{Q_f - 1} f^*(t_k; X_{k,j}; L)$$

则内层循环停止

证明: 设(2.3.25)满足, 由(2.3.8)

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2L} \|g_f(t_k; X_{k,j}; L)\|^2 &\leq f(t_k; X_{k,j}) - f(t_k; \mathcal{X}_f(t_k; X_{k,j}; L)) \\ &\leq f(t_k; X_{k,j}) - f^*(t_k) \end{aligned}$$

由(2.3.21)

$$\begin{aligned} f^*(t_k; X_{k,j}; \mu) &\geq f^*(t_k; X_{k,j}; L) - \frac{L - \mu}{2\mu L} \|g_f(t_k; X_{k,j}; L)\|^2 \\ &\geq f^*(t_k; X_{k,j}; L) - (Q_f - 1)(f(t_k; X_{k,j}) - f^*(t_k)) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\stackrel{(2.3.25)}{\geq} (1 - \kappa) f^*(t_k; X_{k,j}; L) \end{aligned}$$



Lemma 2.3.10 对  $\forall k, 0 \leq k \leq N$ , 有

$$j(k) \leq 1 + \sqrt{Q_f} \ln \frac{2(Q_f - 1) \Delta_k}{\kappa \Delta_{k+1}}$$

证明: 设  $j(k)-1 > \frac{1}{\sigma} \ln \frac{2(Q_f-1)\Delta_k}{\kappa \Delta_{k+1}}$ , 由  $\Delta_{k+1}$  的定义,

注意到内层循环的停止准则在  $j(k)-1$  步不成立, 故由 lemma 2.3.9

$$\begin{aligned} f^*(t_k; X_{k,j}; L) &\leq \frac{Q_f-1}{\kappa} (f(t_k; X_{k,j}) - f^*(t_k)) \\ &\leq 2 \frac{Q_f-1}{\kappa} e^{-\sigma j} \Delta_k \\ &< \Delta_{k+1} \end{aligned}$$

与  $\Delta_{k+1}$  的定义矛盾 □

### 推论 2.3.3

$$\sum_{k=0}^N j(k) \leq (N+1) \left[ 1 + \sqrt{Q_f} \ln \frac{2(L-\mu)}{\kappa \mu} \right] + \sqrt{Q_f} \ln \frac{\Delta_0}{\Delta_{N+1}}$$

考虑最后一步迭代次数  $j^*$

### lemma 2.3.11

$$j^* \leq 1 + \sqrt{Q_f} \ln \frac{2(Q_f-1)\Delta_{N+1}}{\kappa \varepsilon}$$

证明: 设  $j^*-1 > \sqrt{Q_f} \ln \frac{2(Q_f-1)\Delta_{N+1}}{\kappa \varepsilon}$

当  $j = j^*-1$  时, 有

$$\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon &\leq f^*(t_{N+1}; X_{N+1}; L) \\
&\leq \frac{Q_f - 1}{\kappa} (f(t_{N+1}; X_{N+1, j}) - f^*(t_{N+1})) \\
&\leq 2 \frac{Q_f - 1}{\kappa} e^{-\sigma_j \Delta_{N+1}} < \varepsilon \quad \text{矛盾! } \square
\end{aligned}$$

### 推论 2.3.4

$$j^* + \sum_{j=0}^N j(k) \leq (N+2) \left[ 1 + \sqrt{Q_f} \ln \frac{2(Q_f-1)}{\kappa} \right] + \sqrt{Q_f} \ln \frac{\Delta_0}{\varepsilon}$$

$$\sim \ln \frac{t_0 - t^*}{\varepsilon} \underbrace{\sqrt{Q_f} \ln Q_f}_{\text{suboptimal 的, 但是}}$$

与 optimal 的收敛速率差的不大

### 两个技术性问题

1° 在 (2.3.22) 中, 假设能找到  $t_0 < t^*$ , 这是不难的,

可以取  $t_0$  为:  $\min_{x \in \Theta} [f_0(x_0) + \langle \nabla f_0(x_0), x - x_0 \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - x_0\|^2]$

$$= f_0(x_0) - \frac{1}{2\mu} \|\nabla f_0(x_0)\|^2 \stackrel{\text{PL condition}}{\leq} f_0^* \leq t^*$$

2° 需要计算  $t^*(\bar{x}, t)$ , 即  $f^*(t; \bar{x}; \mu) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} f_{\mu}(t; \bar{x}; x)$  的根

可以用 simplex-type 方法和内点法解决

### § 3.1.1 Motivation and definitions

$$\text{dom } f = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid |f(x)| < \infty\}$$

始终假设  $\text{dom } f \neq \emptyset$

Def 3.1.1  $f(\cdot)$  是凸的, 若  $\text{dom } f$  是凸的, 且对  $\forall x, y \in \text{dom } f$ ,  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有:  $f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) \leq \alpha f(x) + (1-\alpha)f(y)$

若不等式严格成立叫严格凸

Lemma 3.1.1 (Jensen's 不等式)

对  $\forall x_1, \dots, x_m \in \text{dom } f$ , 正系数  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ , s.t.  $\sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i = 1$ . 则

$$f\left(\sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i x_i\right) \leq \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i f(x_i)$$

证明: 用数归:

$m=2$  时, 由凸 func 定义, 成立

设  $m \geq 2$  时成立, 下证  $m+1$  时成立:

$$\sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i x_i = \alpha_1 x_1 + (1-\alpha_1) \sum_{i=1}^m \beta_i x_{i+1}, \quad \beta_i = \frac{\alpha_{i+1}}{1-\alpha_1}, \quad i=1, \dots, m$$

故  $\sum_{i=1}^m \beta_i = 1, \beta_i > 0, i=1, \dots, m$

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i x_i\right) &= f\left(\alpha_1 x_1 + (1-\alpha_1) \sum_{i=1}^m \beta_i x_{i+1}\right) \\ &\leq \alpha_1 f(x_1) + (1-\alpha_1) f\left(\sum_{i=1}^m \beta_i x_{i+1}\right) \\ &\leq \sum_{i=1}^{m+1} \alpha_i f(x_i) \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

注:  $x = \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i x_i$  称为  $\{x_i\}_{i=1}^m$  的凸组合

推论 3.1.1  $x$  是  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  的凸组合, 则

$$f(x) \leq \max_{1 \leq j \leq m} f(x_j)$$

证明:

$$f(x) = f\left(\sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i x_i\right) \leq \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i f(x_i) \leq \max_{1 \leq j \leq m} f(x_j) \quad \square$$

推论 3.1.2 令  $\Delta = \text{Conv}\{x_1, \dots, x_m\}$

$$\equiv \left\{ x = \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i x_i \mid \alpha_i \geq 0, \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i = 1 \right\}$$

$$\text{则 } \max_{x \in \Delta} f(x) = \max_{1 \leq j \leq m} f(x_j)$$

证明: 由推论 3.1.1,  $f(x) \leq \max_{1 \leq j \leq m} f(x_j)$ ,  $\forall x \in \Delta$

显然,  $\exists \tilde{x} \in \Delta$ , s.t.  $f(\tilde{x}) = \max_{1 \leq j \leq m} f(x_j)$ , 故

$$\max_{x \in \Delta} f(x) = \max_{1 \leq j \leq m} f(x_j)$$



定理 3.1.1  $f$  是 convex 的  $\Leftrightarrow$  对  $\forall x, y \in \text{dom } f$ ,  $\beta \geq 0$ , s.t.

$y + \beta(y-x) \in \text{dom } f$ , 则

$$f(y + \beta(y-x)) \geq f(y) + \beta(f(y) - f(x))$$

证明:

( $\Rightarrow$ ) 定义  $\alpha = \frac{\beta}{1+\beta}$ ,  $u = y + \beta(y-x)$ , 则

$$y = \frac{1}{1+\beta}(u + \beta x) = (1-\alpha)u + \alpha x$$

故  $f(y) \leq (1-\alpha)f(u) + \alpha f(x)$

$$= \frac{1}{1+\beta}f(u) + \frac{\beta}{1+\beta}f(x)$$

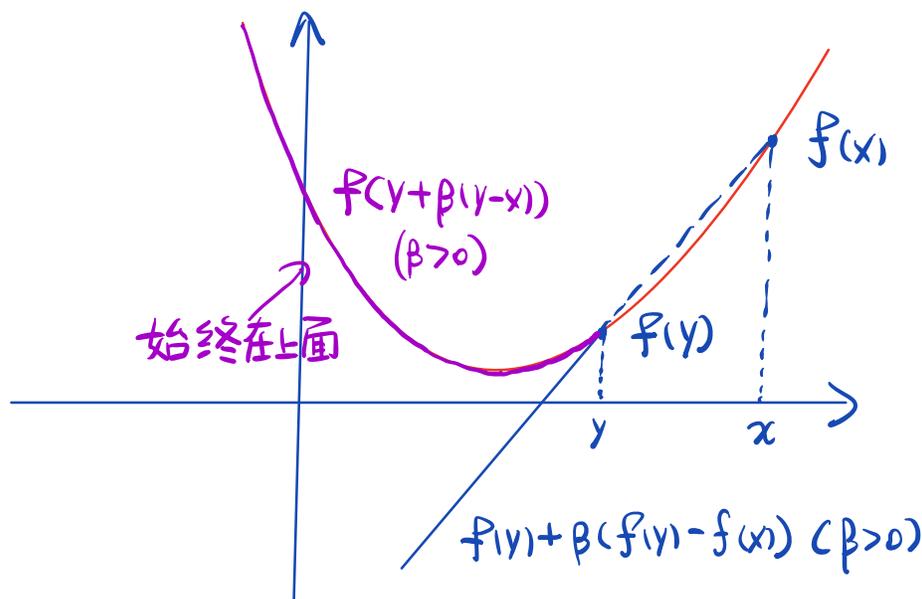
( $\Leftarrow$ ) 固定  $x, y \in \text{dom } f$ ,  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 定义  $\beta = \frac{1-\alpha}{\alpha}$ ,  $u = \alpha x + (1-\alpha)y$

$$\text{则 } x = \frac{1}{\alpha}(u - (1-\alpha)y) = u + \beta(u-y)$$

故  $f(x) \geq f(y) + \beta(f(y) - f(x)) = \frac{1}{\alpha} f(y) - \frac{1-\alpha}{\alpha} f(x)$



注 1°: 几何解释



注 2°: 与第二章凸 func 定义的关系

$$\frac{f(y + \beta(y-x)) - f(y)}{\beta} \geq f(y) - f(x)$$

而  $\lim_{\beta \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(y + \beta(y-x)) - f(y)}{\beta}$  是在  $y$  处关于  $(y-x)$  的方向导数  
(设  $f$  可微)

$= \langle \nabla f(y), y-x \rangle$ , 此时恰好是第二章的定义

定理 3.1.2  $f$  是 convex  $\Leftrightarrow \text{epi}(f) = \{(x, t) \in \text{dom } f \times \mathbb{R} \mid t \geq f(x)\}$  是凸集

证明:

( $\Rightarrow$ ) 若  $(x_1, t_1) \in \text{epi}(f)$ ,  $(x_2, t_2) \in \text{epi}(f)$ , 则对  $\forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有

$$\alpha t_1 + (1-\alpha)t_2 \geq \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2) \geq f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2)$$

故  $(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2, \alpha t_1 + (1-\alpha)t_2) \in \text{epi}(f)$

( $\Leftarrow$ ) 由  $x_1, x_2 \in \text{dom } f$ , 则

$$(x_1, f(x_1)) \in \text{epi}(f), (x_2, f(x_2)) \in \text{epi}(f)$$

$(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2, \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2)) \in \text{epi}(f)$ , 意味着

$$f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) \leq \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2) \quad \square$$

定理 3.1.3  $f$  是 convex 的, 则所有的水平集

$$\mathcal{L}_f(\beta) = \{x \in \text{dom } f \mid f(x) \leq \beta\}, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$$

是 convex 的或空集

证明: 若  $x_1 \in \mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$ ,  $x_2 \in \mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$ , 则对  $\forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有

$$f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) \leq \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2) \\ \leq \alpha\beta + (1-\alpha)\beta = \beta$$



定义 3.1.2  $f$  是凸集  $\mathcal{Q}$  上的闭凸 func, 若

$$\text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}}(f) = \{(x, t) \in \mathcal{Q} \times \mathbb{R} : t \geq f(x)\}$$

是闭凸集. 若  $\mathcal{Q} = \text{dom} f$ , 则  $f$  是闭凸 func

Lemma 3.1.2 令  $f$  在  $\mathcal{Q}$  上闭凸, 则对  $\forall$  闭凸集  $\mathcal{Q}_1 \subseteq \mathcal{Q}$ ,

$f$  在  $\mathcal{Q}_1$  上闭凸

证明:  $\{(x, t) : x \in \mathcal{Q}_1\}$  是闭集, 故由定理 2.2.8 (1)

即证



定理 3.1.4 设  $f$  是闭凸的

1) 对  $\forall$  序列  $\{x_k\} \subset \text{dom } f$  收敛到  $\bar{x} \in \text{dom } f$ , 有

$$\liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(x_k) \geq f(\bar{x}) \quad (3.1.6)$$

证明: 注意到  $\{(x_k, f(x_k))\} \subseteq \text{epi}(f)$ , 而  $\text{epi}(f)$  闭.

若存在子序列收敛到  $(\bar{x}, \bar{f}) \in \text{epi}(f)$ , 则  $\bar{x} \in \text{dom } f$  且

$\bar{f} \geq f(\bar{x})$ , 即 (3.1.6) 成立

若  $\{f(x_k)\}$  不存在收敛子序列, 则需要考虑以下两种情况:

①  $\liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(x_k) = -\infty$ , 不妨设  $\lim_{n \rightarrow +\infty} f(x_{k_n}) = -\infty$

由于  $\bar{x} \in \text{dom } f$ , 则序列  $\{(x_{k_n}, f(\bar{x}) - 1)\} \subset \text{epi}(f)$

对充分大的  $n$  均成立

这是因为  $(x_{k_n}, f(\bar{x}) - 1) \in \text{epi}(f) \Leftrightarrow f(x_{k_n}) \leq f(\bar{x}) - 1$

而  $\lim_{n \rightarrow +\infty} f(x_{k_n}) = -\infty$ , 故对充分大的  $n$  成立

但  $\{(x_{k_n}, f(\bar{x}) - 1)\} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow +\infty} (\bar{x}, f(\bar{x}) - 1) \notin \text{epi}(f)$

这与  $\text{epi}(f)$  的闭性矛盾, 故这种情况不成立

②  $\lim_{k \rightarrow +\infty} f(x_k) = +\infty$ , (3.1.6) 自然成立



2) 对  $\forall$  序列  $\{x_k\} \subset \text{dom } f$ ,  $x_k \rightarrow \bar{x} \notin \text{dom } f$ , 则

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(x_k) = +\infty$$

证明: 设  $\{f(x_k)\}$  包含一个有界的子序列, 不妨设为  $\{f(x_{k_n})\}_{n=1}^{+\infty}$

那么  $\exists$  充分大的  $\tau$ , s.t.  $(x_{k_n}, \tau) \in \text{epi}(f)$ , 但  $(x_{k_n}, \tau) \rightarrow (\bar{x}, \tau) \notin \text{epi}(f)$  (由  $\bar{x} \notin \text{dom } f$ ), 与  $\text{epi}(f)$  的闭性矛盾

下证不存在  $\{x_k\}$  的子列  $\{x_{k_j}\}_{j=1}^{+\infty}$ , s.t.  $f(x_{k_j}) \rightarrow -\infty$ .

用反证法, 设  $\exists \{x_{k_j}\}$ , s.t.  $f(x_{k_j}) \rightarrow -\infty$ . 对充分大的  $j$ , s.t.  $\forall j' > j$

$\{(x_{k_j}, 0)\}_{j=j'}^{+\infty} \subseteq \text{epi}(f)$ , 但  $(x_{k_j}, 0) \rightarrow (\bar{x}, 0) \notin \text{epi}(f)$ , 与  $\text{epi}(f)$  的闭性矛盾

综上:  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(x_k) = +\infty$



3)  $f$  的所有水平集或是闭凸的, 或是空的

证明: 由定义  $(\mathcal{L}_f(\beta), \beta) = \text{epi}(f) \cap \{(x, t) \mid t = \beta\}$

由  $\text{epi}(f)$  和  $\{(x, t) \mid t = \beta\}$  均是凸集, 故  $(\mathcal{L}_f(\beta), \beta)$  是凸集或空集

故  $\mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$  是凸集或空集



4) 令  $f$  是  $\mathcal{Q}$  上的闭凸 func, 约束水平集均有界. 则

$\min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f(x)$  是可解的

证明: 考虑序列  $\{x_k\} \subset \mathcal{Q}$ , s.t.  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(x_k) = f_* \triangleq \inf_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f(x)$

故  $\exists k',$  s.t.  $\forall k \geq k', f(x_k) \leq f_* + 1$ , 由于  $f(f_* + 1)$  是有界的,

故  $\{x_k\}_{k=k'}^{+\infty}$  是有界的, 因此不妨设  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} x_k = x^*$

设  $f_* = -\infty$ , 考虑点列  $y_k = (1 - \alpha_k)x_0 + \alpha_k x_k \in \mathcal{Q}, k \geq 0$

其中  $\{\alpha_k\} \downarrow 0$ , s.t.  $f(y_k) \leq f(x_0) + \alpha_k(f(x_k) - f(x_0)) \rightarrow -\infty$

注: 这样的  $\{\alpha_k\}$  是  $\exists$  的. 不妨取  $\alpha_k = \frac{1}{\sqrt{|f(x_k) - f(x_0)|}} \rightarrow 0$

则此时  $y_k \rightarrow x_0 \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 故由 1) 知道:

$$\liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(y_k) \geq f(x_0) \quad \dots \quad (*)$$

而  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(y_k) = -\infty$ , 故与  $(*)$  矛盾

故  $f_* > -\infty$ , 因此不妨设  $\{(x_k, f(x_k))\}$  收敛到  $(x^*, f_*) \in \text{epi}_\mathcal{Q}(f)$ ,

故  $f(x^*) \leq f_* = \inf_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f(x)$ , 且  $x^* \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 故  $\min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f(x)$  可解  $\square$

5) 令  $f$  是  $\mathcal{X}$  上的闭凸 func, 若  $X^* = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in \mathcal{X}} f(x)$  是非空有界的

则  $f$  在  $\mathcal{X}$  上任意水平集是有界集或空集

证明: 设  $\exists \beta > f^* = \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} f(x)$ , s.t.  $\mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$  是无界的

固定点  $x^* \in X^*$ , 取  $R > \max_{y \in X^*} \|y - x^*\|$

考虑序列  $\{x_k\} \subseteq \mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$ , s.t.  $\rho_k \triangleq \|x_k - x^*\| \rightarrow \infty$ , 不失一般地,

设  $\rho_k \geq R$  对  $\forall k \geq 0$  均成立, 定义  $y_k = x^* + \frac{1}{\rho_k} R(x_k - x^*)$

故  $y_k \in \mathcal{X}$  且  $\|y_k - x^*\| = R$ , 但

$$f(y_k) \leq f^* + \frac{1}{\rho_k} R(f(x_k) - f^*) \rightarrow f^*, \quad k \rightarrow \infty$$

由  $\|y_k - x^*\| = R$ , 故  $\{y_k\}_{k \geq 0}$  有界, 且  $\mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$  是闭的, 故不妨

设  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} y_k = \bar{y} \in \mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$

这是因为  $f(y_k) \rightarrow f^*$ , 故  $\exists \bar{k}$ , s.t.  $\forall k > \bar{k}$ , 有  $f(y_k) \leq \beta$ , 故

$\{y_k\}_{k=\bar{k}}^\infty \subseteq \mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$ , 又由  $\mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$  的闭性知  $\bar{y} \in \mathcal{L}_f(\beta)$

由 1) 知  $\liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(y_k) \geq f(\bar{y})$ , 故  $\bar{y} \in X^*$ , 与  $\|y_k - x^*\| > R$

$\parallel$   
 $f^*$

矛盾

□

### Example 3.1.1

1) 线性func是闭凸的

2)  $f(x) = |x|$  是闭凸的, 由

$$\text{epi}(f) = \{(x, t) \mid t \geq x, t \geq -x\}$$

是两个凸集之交

3)  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上的连续凸func均是闭凸func

证明: 设  $\{x_k, t_k\}$  是  $\text{epi}(f)$  中的 Cauchy 列, 且  $x_k \rightarrow \bar{x}, t_k \rightarrow \bar{t}$

则  $f(x_k) \leq t_k$ , 两边取极限, 由  $f$  的连续性知:  $f(\bar{x}) \leq \bar{t}$

4)  $f(x) = \frac{1}{x}, x > 0$  是闭凸func, 但  $\text{dom} f = \text{int} \mathbb{R}_+$  是开集

5)  $f(x) = \|x\|, \|\cdot\|$  是任一范数是闭凸func:

$$\begin{aligned} f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) &= \|\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2\| \\ &\leq \alpha \|x_1\| + (1-\alpha) \|x_2\| \end{aligned}$$

连续 + 凸  $\Rightarrow$  闭

$$b) \quad f(x, y) = \begin{cases} 0, & x^2 + y^2 < 1 \\ \phi(x, y), & x^2 + y^2 = 1 \end{cases}$$

其中  $\phi(x, y) \geq 0, \forall (x, y) \in D = \{(x, y) | x^2 + y^2 = 1\}$

$f$  是凸 func :

$$f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2, \alpha y_1 + (1-\alpha)y_2) \leq \alpha f(x_1, y_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2, y_2) \quad (*)$$

case 1: 若  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2) \notin D$ , 则  $(*) \Leftrightarrow 0 \leq 0 \quad \checkmark$

case 2: 若  $(x_1, y_1) \in D, (x_2, y_2) \notin D$ ,  $(*) \Leftrightarrow 0 \leq \alpha \phi(x_1, y_1) \quad \checkmark$

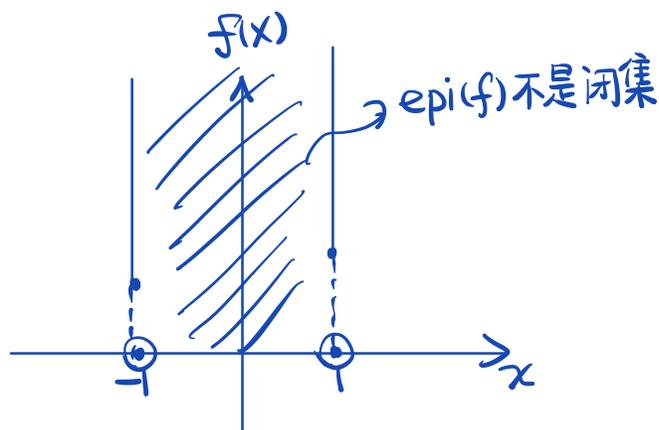
case 3: 若  $(x_1, y_1) \notin D, (x_2, y_2) \in D$ ,  $(*) \Leftrightarrow 0 \leq (1-\alpha)\phi(x_2, y_2) \quad \checkmark$

case 4: 若  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2) \in D$ ,  $(*) \Leftrightarrow 0 \leq \alpha \phi(x_1, y_1) + (1-\alpha)\phi(x_2, y_2) \quad \checkmark$

设  $\phi(x, y)$  不恒为 0, 不妨设  $\phi(1, 0) = t > 0$

则  $\{(1 - \frac{1}{n}, 0)\}_{n=1}^{+\infty} \subseteq \text{epi}(f)$ , 但  $(1, 0) \notin \text{epi}(f)$ , 故  $f$  不闭

- 维 case



### § 3.1.2 Operations with convex functions

Thm 3.1.5  $f_1, f_2$  分别是凸集  $\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2$  上的闭凸 func,  $\beta \geq 0$   
则下面所有的 func 是  $\mathcal{Q}$  上的闭凸 func

1.  $f(x) = \beta f_1(x), \mathcal{Q} = \mathcal{Q}_1$

2.  $f(x) = f_1(x) + f_2(x), \mathcal{Q} = \mathcal{Q}_1 \cap \mathcal{Q}_2$

3.  $f(x) = \max \{f_1(x), f_2(x)\}, \mathcal{Q} = \mathcal{Q}_1 \cap \mathcal{Q}_2$

证明:

1) 凸性:  $f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) \leq \beta (\alpha f_1(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f_1(x_2))$   
 $= \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2)$

闭性: 由  $f_1$  的闭性:  $\forall$  Cauchy 列  $\{(x_k, t_k)\} \subseteq \text{epi}_{\mathbb{Q}}(f_1)$ ,

且  $x_k \rightarrow \bar{x}, t_k \rightarrow \bar{\epsilon}$ , 即  $f_1(x_k) \leq t_k \Leftrightarrow f_1(x_k) \leq \frac{t_k}{\beta}$

由  $f_1$  闭  $\Rightarrow (\bar{x}, \frac{\bar{\epsilon}}{\beta}) \in \text{epi}_{\mathbb{Q}}(f_1) \Leftrightarrow f_1(\bar{x}) \leq \frac{\bar{\epsilon}}{\beta} \Leftrightarrow f(\bar{x}) \leq \bar{\epsilon}$

$\Leftrightarrow (\bar{x}, \bar{\epsilon}) \in \text{epi}_{\mathbb{Q}}(f)$ , 故  $f$  闭

2) 对  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in \mathcal{Q} = \mathcal{Q}_1 \cap \mathcal{Q}_2, \alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有

$$f_1(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) + f_2(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2)$$

$$\leq \alpha f_1(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f_1(x_2) + \alpha f_2(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f_2(x_2)$$

$$= \alpha (f_1(x_1) + f_2(x_1)) + (1-\alpha)(f_1(x_2) + f_2(x_2))$$

故  $f$  在  $\mathcal{Q}$  上凸, 下证在  $\mathcal{Q}$  上是闭的, 考虑 Cauchy 列  $\{(x_k, t_k)\} \subset \text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}}(f)$ :

$$\text{即 } t_k \geq f_1(x_k) + f_2(x_k), x_k \in \mathcal{Q}, \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} x_k = \bar{x}, \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} t_k = \bar{\tau}$$

下证  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{Q}$

先证  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{Q}_1$ , 若不然由  $f_1$  的闭凸性知  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_1(x_k) \rightarrow +\infty$

与  $t_k \geq f_1(x_k) + f_2(x_k)$  矛盾, 同理  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{Q}_2$

故由  $f_1, f_2$  分别是  $\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2$  上的闭凸 func, 故

$$\liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_1(x_k) \geq f_1(\bar{x}); \quad \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_2(x_k) \geq f_2(\bar{x})$$

$$\text{故 } \bar{\tau} = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} t_k \geq \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_1(x_k) + \liminf_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_2(x_k)$$

$$\geq f_1(\bar{x}) + f_2(\bar{x}) = f(\bar{x})$$

故  $(\bar{x}, \bar{\tau}) \in \text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}}(f)$ , 即证  $f$  闭

3) 证:  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in \mathcal{Q}, \forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$

$$f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) = \max \{ f_1(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2), f_2(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) \}$$

$$\leq \max \{ \alpha f_1(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f_1(x_2), \alpha f_2(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f_2(x_2) \}$$

$$\leq \alpha \max \{ f_1(x_1) + f_1(x_2) \} + (1-\alpha) \max \{ f_2(x_1) + f_2(x_2) \}$$

$$= \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2)$$

闭性:  $\text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}}(f) = \{(x, t) \mid t \geq f_1(x), t \geq f_2(x), x \in \mathcal{Q}_1 \cap \mathcal{Q}_2\}$

$$\equiv \text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(f_1) \cap \text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(f_2)$$

是闭的



Thm 3.1.6 令  $\phi$  是  $S \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  上的闭凸 func, 考虑线性算子  $A(x) = Ax + b$

$\mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ , 则函数  $f(x) = \phi(A(x))$  是  $\mathcal{Q}$  上的闭凸 func,

$$\mathcal{Q} = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid A(x) \in S\}$$

证明:  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 定义  $y_1 = A(x_1), y_2 = A(x_2)$ , 则对  $\forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$  有

$$f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) = \phi(A(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2))$$

$$= \phi(\alpha y_1 + (1-\alpha)y_2)$$

$$\leq \alpha \phi(y_1) + (1-\alpha)\phi(y_2)$$

$$= \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f(x_2)$$

下证闭性: 取任意 Cauchy 列  $\{(x_k, t_k)\} \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 且  $x_k \rightarrow \bar{x}, t_k \rightarrow \bar{\varepsilon}$

则  $f(x_k) \leq t_k$ , 即  $\phi(A(x_k)) \leq t_k \Rightarrow (A(x_k), t_k) \in \text{epi}(\phi)$

由  $\phi$  的闭凸性,  $(A(\bar{x}), \bar{\varepsilon}) \in \text{epi}(\phi)$ , 故  $\phi(A(\bar{x})) \leq \bar{\varepsilon}$

$\Rightarrow f(\bar{x}) \leq \bar{\varepsilon} \Rightarrow (\bar{x}, \bar{\varepsilon}) \in \text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}}(f) \Rightarrow f$  闭



Thm 3.1.7 令  $\mathcal{Q}$  是凸集,  $\phi$  在  $\text{dom} \phi \supseteq \mathcal{Q}$  上凸, 则

$$f(x) = \inf_y \{ \phi(x, y) : (x, y) \in \mathcal{Q} \}$$

在  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}} = \{ x : \exists y, \text{s.t. } (x, y) \in \mathcal{Q} \}$  上凸

证明: 取  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in \hat{\mathcal{Q}}$ , 考虑序列  $\{y_{1,k}\}, \{y_{2,k}\}$ , s.t.

$$\{ (x_1, y_{1,k}) \} \subset \mathcal{Q}, \{ (x_2, y_{2,k}) \} \subset \mathcal{Q}, \text{ 且}$$

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \phi(x_1, y_{1,k}) = f(x_1), \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \phi(x_2, y_{2,k}) = f(x_2)$$

由  $\phi$  关于  $(x, y)$  联合凸, 故对  $\forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$  有

$$\begin{aligned} f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) &\leq \phi(\alpha y_{1,k} + (1-\alpha)y_{2,k}, \alpha y_{1,k} + (1-\alpha)y_{2,k}) \\ &\leq \alpha \phi(x_1, y_{1,k}) + (1-\alpha) \phi(x_2, y_{2,k}) \end{aligned}$$

对不等号右边取极限即证 □

Thm 3.1.8 令  $\Delta$  是任意集合,  $f(x) = \sup_y \{ \phi(x, y) \mid y \in \Delta \}$

设对  $\forall y \in \Delta$ ,  $\phi(\cdot, y)$  在某个集合  $\mathcal{Q}$  上是闭凸的, 则  $f$  在  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}}$  上闭凸

$$\hat{\mathcal{Q}} = \{ x \in \mathcal{Q} \mid \sup_{y \in \Delta} \phi(x, y) < +\infty \}$$

证明: 若  $x \in \hat{\mathcal{Q}}$ , 则  $f(x) < +\infty$ , 故  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}} \subseteq \text{dom} f$ , 显然

$$(x, t) \in \text{epi}_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}} f \Leftrightarrow \text{对 } \forall y \in \Delta, \text{ 有 } x \in \mathcal{Q}, t \geq \phi(x, y)$$

$$\text{则 } \text{epi}_{\otimes}(f) = \bigcap_{y \in \Delta} \text{epi}_{\otimes}(\phi(\cdot, y))$$

由  $\text{epi}_{\otimes}(\phi(\cdot, y))$  是闭凸集, 故  $\text{epi}_{\otimes}(f)$  是闭凸集

而  $\text{epi}_{\otimes}(\phi(\cdot, y)) \equiv \text{epi}_{\otimes}(\phi(\cdot, v))$ , 即证



Thm 3.1.9 令  $\psi(\cdot)$  凸,  $\varphi$  是单变量非减凸func于集合

$$\text{Im}\psi = \{\tau = \psi(x), x \in \text{dom}\psi\}$$

则  $f(x) = \varphi(\psi(x)), x \in \text{dom}\psi$  是凸func

证明: 对  $\forall x, y \in \text{dom}f, \alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有

$$f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) = \varphi(\psi(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y))$$

$$\leq \varphi(\alpha\psi(x) + (1-\alpha)\psi(y))$$

$$\leq \alpha\varphi(\psi(x)) + (1-\alpha)\varphi(\psi(y))$$

$$= \alpha f(x) + (1-\alpha)f(y)$$



## Example 3.1.2

1.  $f(x) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} \{x^{(i)}\}$  是闭凸func (Thm 3.1.5 3.)

$$\phi_*(s) = \sup_{x \in \text{dom} \phi} [\langle s, x \rangle - \phi(x)], \text{ 其中 } \phi \text{ 是 } \mathbb{R}^n \text{ 上任一func}$$

是闭凸func, 因为对  $\forall x \in \text{dom} \phi$ ,  $\langle s, x \rangle - \phi(x)$  是关于  $s$  的  
线性func, 故由 Thm 3.1.8 知  $\phi_*(s)$  的闭凸性

注:  $\phi_*$  称为  $\phi$  的 Fenchel 对偶

2. 令  $\lambda = (\lambda^{(1)}, \dots, \lambda^{(m)})$ , 令  $\Delta$  是  $\mathbb{R}_+^m$  的任一集合, 考虑

$$f(x) = \sup_{\lambda \in \Delta} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda^{(i)} f_i(x) \right\}$$

其中所有  $f_i$  是闭凸的, 由 定理 3.1.5 知  $\sum_{i=1}^m \lambda^{(i)} f_i(x)$

是闭凸的, 由 3.1.8 知  $f(x)$  是闭凸的



3.  $\mathcal{Q}$  是任意集合, 考虑

$$\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(x) = \sup_{g \in \mathcal{Q}} \langle g, x \rangle$$

称为  $\mathcal{Q}$  上的支撑 func, 由 3.1.8  $\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(\cdot)$  是闭凸的,

且是正齐次的 (degree=1), 即

$$\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(\tau x) = \sup_{g \in \mathcal{Q}} \langle g, \tau x \rangle = \tau \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(x) \quad \begin{array}{l} x \in \text{dom } \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}} \\ \tau \geq 0 \end{array}$$

若  $\mathcal{Q}$  是有界的, 则  $\text{dom } \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}} = \mathbb{R}^n$

Lemma 3.1.3 对两个集合  $\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2$ , 定义  $\mathcal{Q} = \text{Conv}\{\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2\}$

$$\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(x) = \max\{\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(x), \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(x)\}$$

证明: 由  $\mathcal{Q}_1 \subseteq \mathcal{Q}, \mathcal{Q}_2 \subseteq \mathcal{Q}$ , 故显然,

$$\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(x) \geq \max\{\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(x), \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(x)\}$$

另一方面

$$\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(x) = \sup_{\alpha, g_1, g_2} \{ \langle \alpha g_1 + (1-\alpha)g_2, x \rangle : g_1 \in \mathcal{Q}_1, g_2 \in \mathcal{Q}_2, \alpha \in [0, 1] \}$$

$$\leq \sup_{\alpha \in [0,1]} \{ \alpha \zeta_{\Theta_1}(x) + (1-\alpha) \zeta_{\Theta_2}(x) \}$$

$$= \max \{ \zeta_{\Theta_1}(x), \zeta_{\Theta_2}(x) \} \quad \square$$

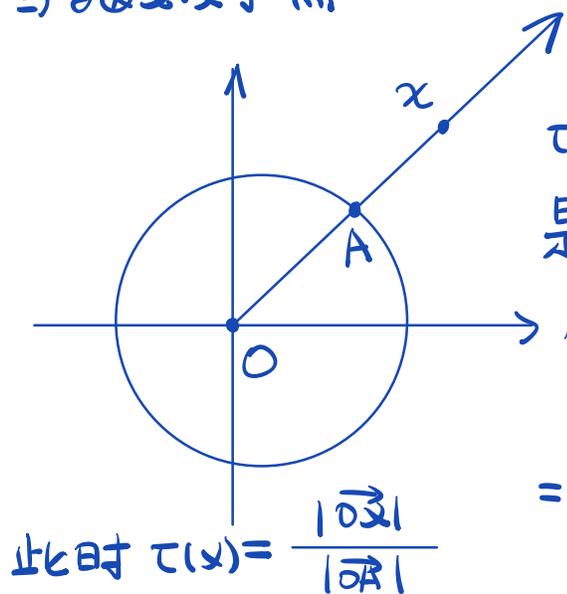
4. 另一个重要的凸齐次 func 是关于凸集的 Minkowski func:

令  $\Theta$  是有界闭凸集,  $0 \in \text{int} \Theta$ , 定义

$$\psi_{\Theta}(x) = \min_{\tau \geq 0} \{ \tau : x \in \tau \Theta \}$$

优化问题解的存在性是显然的, 过原点与  $x$  作射线  $l$ ,  $l$

与  $\partial \Theta$  必交于一点



记唯一解为  $\tau(x)$ , 则

$$\tau(x) \neq 0 \text{ 时, } \frac{x}{\tau(x)} \in \partial \Theta, \psi_{\Theta}(x)$$

是正齐次的, 由:  $\forall \lambda > 0, \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$

$$\psi_{\Theta}(\lambda x) = \min_{\tau \geq 0} \{ \tau : \lambda x \in \tau \Theta \}$$

$$= \lambda \min_{\tau \geq 0} \left\{ \frac{\tau}{\lambda} : x \in \frac{\tau}{\lambda} \Theta \right\}$$

$$= \lambda \min_{\tau' \geq 0} \{ \tau' : x \in \tau' \Theta \}$$

$$= \lambda \psi_{\Theta}(x)$$

且  $\psi_{\otimes}(x)$  是凸 func,  $\text{dom} \psi_{\otimes} = \mathbb{R}^n$ :

对  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$ ,  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有

$$\frac{\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2}{\alpha \tau(x_1) + (1-\alpha)\tau(x_2)} = \frac{\alpha \tau(x_1) \frac{x_1}{\tau(x_1)} + (1-\alpha)\tau(x_2) \frac{x_2}{\tau(x_2)}}{\alpha \tau(x_1) + (1-\alpha)\tau(x_2)}$$

$\in \otimes$

故  $\psi_{\otimes}(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) \leq \alpha \tau(x_1) + (1-\alpha)\tau(x_2)$

对  $x_1=0$  或  $x_2=0$  时, 由正齐性立即知凸性

$\square$

5. 令  $\otimes$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上的集合, 考虑  $\psi(g, \gamma) = \sup_{y \in \otimes} \phi(y, g, \gamma)$ ,

$$\phi(y, g, \gamma) = \langle g, y \rangle - \frac{\gamma}{2} \|y\|^2$$

对固定的  $y$ ,  $\phi(y, g, \gamma)$  关于  $(g, \gamma)$  是闭凸的, 因为

$$\begin{aligned} \text{令 } x = \begin{pmatrix} g \\ \gamma \end{pmatrix}, \text{ 则 } \phi(x, y) &= (g^T, \gamma) \begin{pmatrix} y \\ -\frac{1}{2} \|y\|^2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= x^T \begin{pmatrix} y \\ -\frac{1}{2} \|y\|^2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

是线性 func, 故是闭凸的

因此由 Thm 3.1.8,  $\psi(g, r)$  是闭凸 func

当  $\mathcal{Q}$  是有界的, 则  $\text{dom} \psi = \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ , 下面讨论  $\mathcal{Q} = \mathbb{R}^n$

若  $r < 0$ , 则  $y \rightarrow +\infty$  时,  $\phi(y, g, r) \rightarrow +\infty$ , 该情况一定

不在  $\text{dom} \psi$  中

若  $r = 0, g \neq 0$  时, 取  $y_k = \alpha_k g$ , 其中  $\alpha_k \rightarrow +\infty$ , 则  $\phi(y_k, g, 0) \rightarrow +\infty$

也不在  $\text{dom} \psi$  中

若  $r = 0, g = 0$  时,  $\psi(0, 0) = 0$

若  $r > 0$  时,  $y^*(g, r) = \frac{1}{r} g$ , 此时  $\psi(g, r) = \frac{\|g\|^2}{2r}$

故 
$$\psi(g, r) = \begin{cases} 0, & g=0, r=0 \\ \frac{\|g\|^2}{2r}, & r>0 \end{cases}$$

$\text{dom} \psi = (\mathbb{R}^n \times \{r > 0\}) \cup (0, 0)$ , 该集合是凸集:

$\forall x_1, x_2 \in \text{dom} \psi \setminus (0, 0), \alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2 \in \text{dom} \psi$

$x_1 = (0, 0), x_2 \in \text{dom} \psi \setminus (0, 0), \alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2 = (1-\alpha)x_2 \in \text{dom} \psi$

$x_2 = (0,0)$  时, 同理可证

此时  $\psi$  是凸集  $\text{dom } \psi$  下的闭凸 func, 但在原点不连续:

$$\psi(\sqrt{r}g, r) \equiv \frac{1}{2} \|g\|^2, r \neq 0$$

考虑闭凸集  $\mathcal{Q} = \{(g, r) : r \geq \|g\|^2\}$ , 则  $\psi$  是  $\mathcal{Q}$  上的有界闭凸 func, 但在原点处不连续

为了说明下面的例子, 先提出引理:

Lemma:  $f: K \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  是 convex function,  $K \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  是开集.

则  $f$  是连续 func:

证明: 用数学归纳法,  $n=0$  时成立是显然的

设  $n-1$  时成立, 下证  $n$  时成立:

对  $\forall x_0 \in K, \exists r > 0, \text{ s.t. } \mathcal{Q} = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \|x - x_0\|_\infty \leq r\} \subseteq K$

定义  $H_{i,e} = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid x^{(i)} = x_0^{(i)} + er\}, e = \{\pm 1\}$

那么  $f|_{K \cap H_{i,e}}$  是连续 func,  $\forall i=1, \dots, n, e = \pm 1$

(相当于开集  $K \cap H_{i,e}$  上  $\mathbb{R}^{n-1}$  维的凸 func)

由  $\otimes_n H_{i,e}$  是紧集, 故  $f|_{\otimes_n H_{i,e}}$  是有界的, 且

$\bigcup_{\substack{i=1, \dots, n \\ e=\pm 1}} \otimes_n H_{i,e} = \partial \otimes$ , 故  $f|_{\partial \otimes}$  是有界的, 不妨设  $|f(x)| < M$ ,

$\forall x \in \partial \otimes$ , 考虑  $\forall x \in \otimes \setminus \{x_0\}$ , 令

$$g(t) = x_0 + (x - x_0)t$$

令  $t_1 = \frac{r}{\|x - x_0\|_\infty} > 1$ , 则  $t = \pm t_1$  时,  $g(t) \in \partial \otimes$

声明:  $h = f \circ g$  是  $[-t_1, t_1]$  上的凸 func

对  $\forall \tilde{\xi}_1, \tilde{\xi}_2 \in [-t_1, t_1], \forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$

$$h(\alpha \tilde{\xi}_1 + (1-\alpha) \tilde{\xi}_2) = f(x_0 + (x - x_0)(\alpha \tilde{\xi}_1 + (1-\alpha) \tilde{\xi}_2))$$

$$= f(\underbrace{\alpha(x_0 + (x - x_0)\tilde{\xi}_1)}_{\in \otimes} + (1-\alpha)\underbrace{(x_0 + (x - x_0)\tilde{\xi}_2)}_{\in \otimes})$$

$$\leq \alpha f \circ g(\tilde{\xi}_1) + (1-\alpha) f \circ g(\tilde{\xi}_2)$$

$$= \alpha h(\tilde{\xi}_1) + (1-\alpha) h(\tilde{\xi}_2)$$

$$\text{故 } \frac{h(0) - h(-t_1)}{0 - (-t_1)} \leq \frac{h(1) - h(0)}{1 - 0} \leq \frac{h(t_1) - h(0)}{t_1 - 0}$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{h(0) - h(-t_1)}{t_1} \leq h(1) - h(0) \leq \frac{h(t_1) - h(0)}{t_1}$$

其中  $h(0) = f(x_0)$ ,  $h(1) = f(x)$ ,  $|h(t_1)| < M$ ,  $|h(-t_1)| < M$

$$0 < \frac{1}{t_1} = \frac{\|x - x_0\|_\infty}{r} \leq \frac{\|x - x_0\|_2}{r}$$

$$\text{故 } |f(x) - f(x_0)| \leq \frac{M + |f(x_0)|}{r} \|x - x_0\|_2$$

故对  $\forall \varepsilon > 0$ , 取  $\|x - x_0\| < \delta = \min\left\{r, \frac{r\varepsilon}{M + |f(x_0)|}\right\}$ ,

有  $|f(x_0) - f(x)| < \varepsilon$



6. 令  $f$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上的凸 func, 故  $f$  连续, 定义

$$\hat{f}(\tau, x) = \tau f\left(\frac{x}{\tau}\right)$$

$\hat{f}$  在  $\mathbb{R}^n \times \{\tau > 0\}$  上是 well-defined, 补充定义:  $\hat{f}(0, 0) = 0$

$\hat{f}$  是凸 func: 考虑  $z_1 = (\tau_1, x_1)$ ,  $z_2 = (\tau_2, x_2)$ ,  $\tau_1, \tau_2 > 0$

则对  $\forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$  时:

$$\begin{aligned}
\widehat{f}(\alpha z_1 + (1-\alpha)z_2) &= (\alpha \tau_1 + (1-\alpha)\tau_2) f\left(\frac{\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2}{\alpha \tau_1 + (1-\alpha)\tau_2}\right) \\
&= (\alpha \tau_1 + (1-\alpha)\tau_2) f\left(\frac{\alpha \tau_1 \frac{x_1}{\tau_1} + (1-\alpha)\tau_2 \frac{x_2}{\tau_2}}{\alpha \tau_1 + (1-\alpha)\tau_2}\right) \\
&\leq \alpha \tau_1 f\left(\frac{x_1}{\tau_1}\right) + (1-\alpha)\tau_2 f\left(\frac{x_2}{\tau_2}\right) \\
&= \alpha \widehat{f}(z_1) + (1-\alpha)\widehat{f}(z_2)
\end{aligned}$$

当  $z_1=0, z_2 \neq 0$  时, 用齐次性可证凸性

当  $z_2=0$  时, 同理可得凸性

为了说明闭性, 设  $\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} t f\left(\frac{x}{t}\right) = +\infty, \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$

则任取 Cauchy 列  $\{\tau_k, x_k, t_k\} \subseteq \text{epi}(\widehat{f}), \{\tau_k, x_k, t_k\}$

$\rightarrow \{\bar{\tau}, \bar{x}, \bar{\epsilon}\}, \text{ s.t. } \widehat{f}(\tau_k, x_k) = \tau_k f\left(\frac{x_k}{\tau_k}\right) \leq t_k$

则  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ , 否则  $\{t_k\}$  发散

由  $f$  的连续性, 且  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ , 两边取极限:

$$\bar{\tau} f\left(\frac{\bar{x}}{\bar{\tau}}\right) \leq \bar{\epsilon} \Leftrightarrow (\bar{\tau}, \bar{x}, \bar{\epsilon}) \in \text{epi}(\widehat{f})$$

即证  $\widehat{f}$  是闭的

注:取  $f = \frac{1}{2} \|x\|^2$ , 则  $f$  就是例 5 的  $\psi$

注:条件  $\lim_{\tau \rightarrow 0} \tau f(\frac{x}{\tau}) = +\infty$  是必要的, 否则不妨设

$\exists \hat{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$ , s.t.  $\lim_{\tau \rightarrow 0} \tau f(\frac{\hat{x}}{\tau}) = M$ , 则考虑序列  $\{(\frac{1}{n}, \hat{x})\}_{n=1}^{+\infty}$ ,

不妨设  $\hat{f}(\frac{1}{n}, \hat{x}) \leq M$ , 则  $\{(\frac{1}{n}, \hat{x}, M)\}_{n=1}^{+\infty} \subseteq \text{epi}(\hat{f})$ ,

但  $(0, \hat{x}, M) \notin \text{epi}(\hat{f})$ , 因为  $(0, \hat{x}) \notin \text{dom} \hat{f}$

Lemma 3.1.4  $\forall$  单变量闭凸 func 在它的定义域连续

证明: 令  $f$  闭凸,  $\bar{x} \in \text{dom} f \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ , 由 Thm 3.1.4  $f$  在  $\bar{x}$

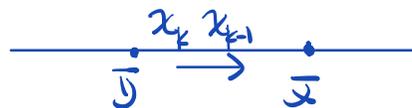
是下半连续的, 下证  $f$  在  $\bar{x}$  上半连续:

对  $\forall x_k \rightarrow \bar{x}$ , 在去除  $\{x_k\}$  有限个点下, 有 3 种情况

- ①  $\forall k \in \mathbb{N}, x_k \leq \bar{x}$
- ②  $\forall k \in \mathbb{N}, x_k \geq \bar{x}$
- ③  $\{x_k\}$  取子列  $\{x_{k_i}\}_{i=1}^{\infty}, \{x_{k_j}\}_{j=1}^{\infty}$ ,  $\{k_i\} \cup \{k_j\} = \mathbb{N}$ .  
 $x_{k_i} \geq \bar{x} \forall i, x_{k_j} \leq \bar{x}$

对 case ①: 取  $\bar{y} < \bar{x}$ , 可以不失一般性地设:

$$x_k = (1-\alpha_k)\bar{x} + \alpha_k\bar{y}$$



其中  $\alpha_k \rightarrow 0$ ,  $\alpha_k \in [0, 1]$ , 故由  $f$  的凸性

$$f(x_k) \leq (1-\alpha_k)f(\bar{x}) + \alpha_k f(\bar{y})$$

$\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(x_k) \leq f(\bar{x})$ , 从而  $f$  上半连续

对 case ②: 只需取  $\bar{y} > \bar{x}$  即可

对 case ③: 对子列  $\{x_{k_i}\}$  取  $\bar{y}_1 > \bar{x}$ ; 对子列  $\{x_{k_j}\}$  取  $\bar{y}_2 < \bar{x}$ ,

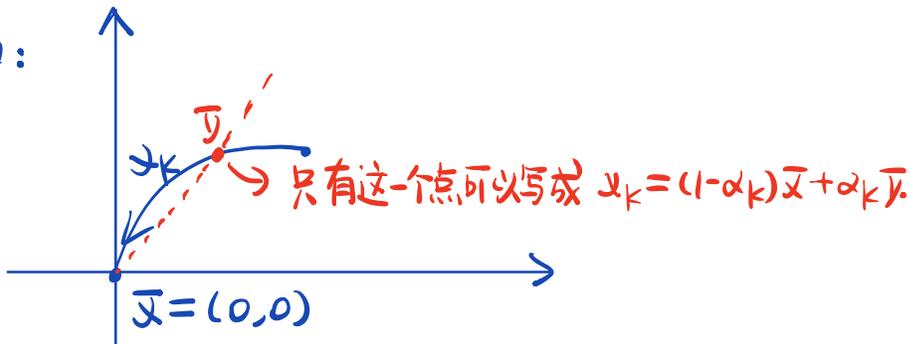
其余证明与 ① 完全一致

综上, 任意序列  $\{x_k\} \rightarrow \bar{x}$ , 有  $\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(x_k) \leq f(\bar{x})$ ,

即证,  $f$  是连续的



注: 在高维情形  $\{x_k\} \rightarrow \bar{x}$  推不出来  $x_k = (1-\alpha_k)\bar{x} + \alpha_k\bar{y}$  的形式, 如:





Thm 3.1.8 令  $\Delta$  是任意集合,  $f(x) = \sup_y \{\phi(x, y) \mid y \in \Delta\}$

设对  $\forall y \in \Delta$ ,  $\phi(\cdot, y)$  在某个集合  $\mathcal{Q}$  上是闭凸的, 则  $f$  在  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}}$  上闭凸

$$\hat{\mathcal{Q}} = \{x \in \mathcal{Q} \mid \sup_{y \in \Delta} \phi(x, y) < +\infty\}$$

注:  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}}$  一定是凸集: 对  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in \hat{\mathcal{Q}}$ , 则  $x_1, x_2 \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 且

$$\begin{cases} \sup_{y \in \Delta} \phi(x_1, y) < +\infty \\ \sup_{y \in \Delta} \phi(x_2, y) < +\infty \end{cases}$$

由  $\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2 \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 则

$$\phi(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2, y) \leq \alpha \phi(x_1, y) + (1-\alpha)\phi(x_2, y)$$

$$\Rightarrow \sup_{y \in \Delta} \phi(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2, y)$$

$$\leq \sup_{y \in \Delta} \alpha \phi(x_1, y) + (1-\alpha)\phi(x_2, y)$$

$$\leq \alpha \sup_{y \in \Delta} \phi(x_1, y) + (1-\alpha) \sup_{y \in \Delta} \phi(x_2, y) < +\infty$$

注 2°:  $\text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}}(f) \equiv \text{epi}_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}}(f)$

$\text{epi}_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}}(f) \subseteq \text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}}(f)$  是显然的, 下证  $\text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}}(f) \subseteq \text{epi}_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}}(f)$

$\forall (x, t) \in \text{epi}_{\mathcal{Q}}(f)$ , 则  $f(x) \leq t$  且  $x \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 设  $x \notin \hat{\mathcal{Q}}$ , 则

$f(x) = +\infty$ , 与  $f(x) \leq t$  矛盾, 故  $x \in \hat{\mathcal{Q}}$ , 故  $(x, t) \in \text{epi}_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}}(f)$

所以  $\text{epi}_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}}(f)$  是闭凸集, 即证  $f$  在  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}}$  上闭凸

定理 3.1.10 令  $f_1, f_2$  是  $\mathcal{X}$  上的闭凸 func, 约束下水平集是有界的, 则  $\exists \lambda^* \in [0, 1]$ , s.t.

$$\begin{aligned} \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} (f(x) \triangleq \max\{f_1(x), f_2(x)\}) \\ = \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \{ \lambda^* f_1(x) + (1-\lambda^*) f_2(x) \} \end{aligned}$$

证明: 定义  $\phi(\lambda) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \{ \lambda f_1(x) + (1-\lambda) f_2(x) \}, \lambda \in [0, 1]$

由  $f_1, f_2$  是闭凸 func, 由 Thm 3.1.5 知  $\lambda f_1(x) + (1-\lambda) f_2(x) \triangleq \tilde{f}$  是闭凸 func, 设  $\tilde{f}$  的约束下水平集  $\hat{\mathcal{X}}$  非空, 则  $\hat{\mathcal{X}}$  是闭凸集, 又由  $f_1, f_2$  的约束下水平集是有界的, 则下证  $\tilde{f}(x)$  的下水平集有界, 不妨设

$$\hat{\mathcal{X}}_\lambda = \{ x \mid \tilde{f}(x) = \lambda f_1(x) + (1-\lambda) f_2(x) \leq \beta \} \quad \forall \beta \text{ s.t. } \hat{\mathcal{X}} \neq \emptyset$$

用反证法, 设  $\exists \tilde{\lambda}$ , s.t.  $\hat{\mathcal{X}}_{\tilde{\lambda}}$  无界, 那么  $\tilde{\lambda} \in (0, 1)$ , 则

$$\hat{\mathcal{Q}}_\alpha = \left\{ x \mid f_1(x) \leq \frac{1}{\alpha} (\beta - (1-\alpha) f_2(x)) \right\}$$

$$\subseteq \left\{ x \mid f_1(x) \leq \frac{1}{\alpha} (\beta - (1-\alpha) f_2^*) \right\} \triangleq \mathcal{L}$$

其中  $f_2^* = \min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f_2(x)$ , 由引理知  $f_2^*$  是 well-defined

由  $f_1(x)$  的约束水平集有界, 故  $\mathcal{L}$  有界, 矛盾

故  $\mathcal{Q}$  的约束下水平集有界, 故  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}}$  是紧的

$$\text{故 } \min_{x \in \hat{\mathcal{Q}}} \tilde{f}(x) \Leftrightarrow \min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \hat{f}(x)$$

由 3.1.4,  $\phi(\lambda)$  是 well-defined.

$$\text{由 } -\phi(\lambda) = \max_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \{-\lambda f_1(x) - (1-\lambda)f_2(x)\}$$

由 Thm 3.1.8,  $-\phi$  是闭凸 func, 故由 lemma 3.1.4  $-\phi$  是

$[0,1]$  上的连续 func, 故  $\phi^* = \max_{\lambda \in [0,1]} \phi(\lambda)$  是 well-defined

$$\text{由 } \phi^* = \phi(\lambda^*) = \max_{\lambda \in [0,1]} \phi(\lambda)$$

$$= \max_{\lambda \in [0,1]} \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \{\lambda f_1(x) + (1-\lambda)f_2(x)\}$$

$$\text{(Thm 1.3.1)} \leq \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \max_{\lambda \in [0,1]} \{\lambda f_1(x) + (1-\lambda)f_2(x)\}$$

$$= \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \max\{f_1(x), f_2(x)\}$$

$$= \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} f(x) = f^*$$

要证 Thm 3.1.10, 只需证  $\phi^* = f^*$ , 故下证  $f^* \leq \phi^*$

对  $\forall \lambda \in [0,1]$ , 固定  $\lambda$ , 定义:

$$x(\lambda) \in \underset{x \in \mathcal{X}}{\text{Argmin}} \{\lambda f_1(x) + (1-\lambda)f_2(x)\}$$

$$g(\lambda) = f_1(x(\lambda)) - f_2(x(\lambda))$$

对  $\forall \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in [0,1]$ , 有:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(\lambda_1) &= \min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} \{ \lambda_1 f_1(x) + (1-\lambda_1) f_2(x) \} \\ &\leq \lambda_1 f_1(x(\lambda_2)) + (1-\lambda_1) f_2(x(\lambda_2)) \\ &= \phi(\lambda_2) + g(\lambda_2)(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2) \quad \dots \textcircled{1} \end{aligned}$$

同理:  $\phi(\lambda_2) \leq \phi(\lambda_1) + g(\lambda_1)(\lambda_2 - \lambda_1) \quad \dots \textcircled{2}$

$\textcircled{1} + \textcircled{2} \Rightarrow (g(\lambda_2) - g(\lambda_1))(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2) \geq 0, \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in [0, 1]$

故  $g(\lambda)$  是非增的于  $[0, 1]$ , 定义  $f_i^* = \min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} f_i(x), i=1, 2$

若  $\lambda^* = 1$ , 将  $\lambda_1 = 1, \lambda_2 = \lambda \in [0, 1)$  代入  $\textcircled{1}$  式

$$\phi(1) \leq \phi(\lambda) + g(\lambda)(1 - \lambda)$$

$$\Rightarrow g(\lambda)(1 - \lambda) \geq \phi(1) - \phi(\lambda) = \phi^* - \phi(\lambda) \geq 0$$

$$\Rightarrow g(\lambda) \geq 0$$

故由  $\phi$  的连续性:

$$\lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} \{ f_2(x(\lambda)) - g(\lambda) \cdot \lambda \}$$

极限  $\exists$

$$\phi^* = \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} \phi(\lambda)$$

$$= \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} \min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} \{ \lambda f_1(x) + (1-\lambda) f_2(x) \}$$

$$= \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} \{ \lambda f_1(x(\lambda)) + (1-\lambda) f_2(x(\lambda)) \} = \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} \max \{ f_1, f_2 \}$$

极限的存在性?

↑ 单调收敛定理

同理  $f_1(x(\lambda))$  极限  $\exists$ , 故

$$\max \{ \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} f_1, \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} f_2 \}$$

$$= \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} \max \{ f_1, f_2 \}$$

$$= \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} f(x(\lambda)) \exists!$$

$$\geq \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} \{ \lambda f_1(x(\lambda)) + (1-\lambda) f_2^* \}$$

why?  $\lambda f_1(x(\lambda)) \geq \lambda f_1(x(\lambda))$

$$\Leftrightarrow \lambda f_1(x(\lambda)) \geq \lambda \max \{ f_1(x(\lambda)), f_2(x(\lambda)) \}$$

· 若  $f_1(x(\lambda)) \geq f_2(x(\lambda))$  时, 成立

· 若  $f_1(x(\lambda)) \leq f_2(x(\lambda))$  时,  $\Leftrightarrow \lambda g(\lambda) \geq 0 \quad \lambda \in [0, 1] \forall$

$$= \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 1} f_1(x(\lambda)) \geq f^* \quad (\text{极限的保号性})$$

若  $\lambda^* = 0$ , 将  $\lambda_1 = 0, \lambda_2 = \lambda \in (0, 1]$  代  $\lambda$  ①

$$\phi(0) \leq \phi(\lambda) + g(\lambda)(0-\lambda) \Rightarrow g(\lambda) \leq 0$$

故由  $\phi$  的连续性:

$$\phi^* = \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 0} \phi(\lambda)$$

$$= \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 0} \min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} \{ \lambda f_1(x) + (1-\lambda) f_2(x) \}$$

$$= \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 0} \{ \lambda f_1(x(\lambda)) + (1-\lambda) f_2(x(\lambda)) \}$$

$$\geq \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 0} \{ \lambda f_1^* + (1-\lambda) f(x(\lambda)) \}$$

$$= \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow 0} f(x(\lambda)) \geq f^*$$

下面考虑  $\lambda^* \in (0, 1)$  时

• 将  $\lambda_1 = \lambda^*, \lambda_2 = \lambda \in [0, \lambda^*)$  代入  $\lambda \circledast$  时

$$\phi(\lambda^*) \leq \phi(\lambda) + g(\lambda)(\lambda^* - \lambda)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow g(\lambda) \geq 0, \forall \lambda \in [0, \lambda^*)$$

• 将  $\lambda_1 = \lambda^*, \lambda_2 = \lambda \in (\lambda^*, 1]$  代入  $\lambda \circledast$  时

$$g(\lambda) \leq 0, \forall \lambda \in (\lambda^*, 1]$$

**case 1**  $\exists$  序列  $\{\lambda_k\}_{k \geq 0} \subset [0, 1], \text{ s.t.}$

$$\lambda_k \rightarrow \lambda^*, g(\lambda_k) \rightarrow 0 \quad k \rightarrow \infty$$

由 lemma 3.1.4

$$\begin{aligned} \phi^* &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \{ \lambda_k f_1(x) + (1 - \lambda_k) f_2(x) \} \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \{ \lambda_k f_1(x(\lambda_k)) + (1 - \lambda_k) f_2(x(\lambda_k)) \} \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \{ f_2(x(\lambda_k)) + \lambda_k g(\lambda_k) \} \end{aligned}$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_2(x(\lambda_k))$$

同理:

$$\phi^* = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \phi(\lambda_k)$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \{ \lambda_k f_1(x) + (1-\lambda_k) f_2(x) \}$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \{ \lambda_k f_1(x(\lambda_k)) + (1-\lambda_k) f_2(x(\lambda_k)) \}$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \{ f_1(x(\lambda_k)) - (1-\lambda_k) g(\lambda_k) \}$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_1(x(\lambda_k))$$

$$\max\{a, b\} = \frac{a+b+|b-a|}{2}$$

由  $\max\{\cdot, \cdot\}$  是连续 func, 故

$$\phi^* = \max \left\{ \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_1(x(\lambda_k)), \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_2(x(\lambda_k)) \right\}$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \max \{ f_1(x(\lambda_k)), f_2(x(\lambda_k)) \}$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f(x(\lambda_k)) \geq f^*$$

**Case 2** 设不存在序列  $\{\lambda_k\}$  满足 (3.1.14), 考虑:

$$\{\alpha_k\}_{k \geq 0} : \alpha_k \uparrow \lambda^*, \quad \{\beta_k\}_{k \geq 0} : \beta_k \downarrow \lambda^*$$

由(3.1.14)不满足,且 $g$ 的单调性:  $\exists a, b > 0, s.t.$

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} g(\alpha_k) = a, \quad \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} g(\beta_k) = -b$$

(由单调收敛定理,  $g(\alpha_k), g(\beta_k)$  极限存在)

令  $\gamma = \frac{b}{a+b}$ , 则由 lemma 3.1.4:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi^* &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \{ \gamma \phi(\alpha_k) + (1-\gamma) \phi(\beta_k) \} \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \{ \gamma [f_2(x(\alpha_k)) + \alpha_k g(\alpha_k)] + (1-\gamma) [f_2(x(\beta_k)) + \beta_k g(\beta_k)] \} \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \{ \gamma f_2(x(\alpha_k)) + (1-\gamma) f_2(x(\beta_k)) \} \\ &\geq \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_2(\gamma x(\alpha_k) + (1-\gamma)x(\beta_k)) \end{aligned}$$

同理:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi^* &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \{ \gamma [f_1(x(\alpha_k)) - (1-\alpha_k)g(\alpha_k)] + \\ &\quad (1-\gamma) [f_1(x(\beta_k)) - (1-\beta_k)g(\beta_k)] \} \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \{ \gamma f_1(x(\alpha_k)) + (1-\gamma) f_1(x(\beta_k)) \} \end{aligned}$$

$$\geq \limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} f_1(\gamma x(\alpha_k) + (1-\gamma)x(\beta_k))$$

由序列  $\{f_i(\gamma x(\alpha_k) + (1-\gamma)x(\beta_k))\}_{k=0}^{+\infty} \subseteq [f_i^*, \phi^*] \quad i=1,2$

故可以取  $\{\alpha_{k_j}\}_{j=0}^{+\infty} \quad \{\beta_{k_j}\}_{j=0}^{+\infty}, \text{ s.t.}$

$$\{f_i(\gamma x(\alpha_{k_j}) + (1-\gamma)x(\beta_{k_j}))\}_{j=0}^{+\infty} \text{ 收敛, } i=1,2$$

$$\text{故 } \phi^* \geq \max \left\{ \lim_{j \rightarrow +\infty} f_1(\gamma x(\alpha_{k_j}) + (1-\gamma)x(\beta_{k_j})), \right. \\ \left. \lim_{j \rightarrow +\infty} f_2(\gamma x(\alpha_{k_j}) + (1-\gamma)x(\beta_{k_j})) \right\}$$

$$= \lim_{j \rightarrow +\infty} f(\gamma x(\alpha_{k_j}) + (1-\gamma)x(\beta_{k_j})) \geq f^*$$



推论 3.1.3 令  $f_i, i=1, \dots, m$  是  $\mathbb{Q}$  上的闭凸 func,

约束水平集均有界, 则  $\exists \lambda^* \in \Delta_m, \text{ s.t.}$

$$\min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} (F(x) \triangleq \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} f_i(x)) = \min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i^{(*)} f_i(x) \right\}$$

证明: 令  $F_k(x) = \max_{k \leq i \leq m} f_i(x)$

$$\text{则 } F(x) = \max \{ f_1(x), F_2(x) \}$$

$$F_k(x) = \max \{ f_k(x), F_{k+1}(x) \}, k=2, \dots, m-1$$

由 Thm 3.1.10,  $\exists \lambda_*^{(1)} \in [0, 1]$ , s.t.

$$F^* \triangleq \min_{x \in \mathcal{D}} F(x) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{D}} \{ \psi_1(x) = \lambda_*^{(1)} f_1(x) + (1 - \lambda_*^{(1)}) F_2(x) \}$$

$$= \min_{x \in \mathcal{D}} \max \{ \lambda_*^{(1)} f_1(x) + (1 - \lambda_*^{(1)}) f_2(x), \lambda_*^{(1)} f_1(x) + (1 - \lambda_*^{(1)}) F_3(x) \}$$

又利用 Thm 3.1.10,  $\exists \frac{1}{3}^* \in [0, 1]$ , s.t.  $F^* = \min_{x \in \mathcal{D}} \psi_2(x)$

$$\psi_2(x) = \frac{1}{3}^* (\lambda_*^{(1)} f_1(x) + (1 - \lambda_*^{(1)}) f_2(x)) + (1 - \frac{1}{3}^*) (\lambda_*^{(1)} f_1(x) + (1 - \lambda_*^{(1)}) F_3(x))$$

$$= \lambda_*^{(1)} f_1(x) + \frac{1}{3}^* (1 - \lambda_*^{(1)}) f_2(x) + (1 - \frac{1}{3}^*) (1 - \lambda_*^{(1)}) F_3(x)$$

令  $\frac{1}{3}^* (1 - \lambda_*^{(1)}) = \lambda_*^{(2)}$ , 则

$$\psi_2(x) = \lambda_*^{(1)} f_1(x) + \lambda_*^{(2)} f_2(x) + (1 - \lambda_*^{(1)} - \lambda_*^{(2)}) F_3(x)$$

依此类推 .....



### § 3.1.3 Continuity and Differentiability

Thm 3.1.11 令  $f$  凸, 且  $x_0 \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$ , 则  $f$  是在  $x_0$  处

局部有界且局部 Lipschitz 的

证明: 先证  $f$  是 locally bounded 的, 由  $x_0 \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$ ,

则  $\exists \varepsilon > 0$ , s.t.  $x_0 \pm \varepsilon e_i \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$ ,  $i=1, 2, \dots, n$

定义:  $\Delta = \text{conv}\{x_0 \pm \varepsilon e_i, i=1, \dots, n\} \stackrel{(3.1.8)}{=} B_1(x_0, \varepsilon)$

由  $\text{dom} f$  的凸性,  $\Delta \subseteq \text{dom} f$ , 故由 推论 3.1.2

$$\max_{x \in \Delta} f(x) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} f(x_0 \pm \varepsilon e_i) \stackrel{\Delta}{=} M$$

即  $x_0$  处是 locally bounded 的, 下证局部 Lipschitz:

考虑  $\forall y \in B_1(x_0, \varepsilon) \setminus \{x_0\}$ , 令

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \|y - x_0\|_{(1)}, \quad z = x_0 + \frac{1}{\alpha} (y - x_0)$$

故  $\|z - x_0\|_{(1)} = \frac{1}{\alpha} \|y - x_0\|_{(1)} = \varepsilon$ ,  $\alpha \leq 1$  且

$$y = \alpha z + (1-\alpha)x_0$$

故由  $f$  的凸性

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) &\leq \alpha f(z) + (1-\alpha)f(x_0) \\ &\leq f(x_0) + \alpha (M - f(x_0)) \\ &= f(x_0) + \frac{M - f(x_0)}{\varepsilon} \|y - x_0\|_{(1)} \end{aligned}$$

另一方面: 令  $u = x_0 + \frac{1}{\alpha}(x_0 - y)$ , 则  $\|u - x_0\|_{(1)} = \varepsilon$

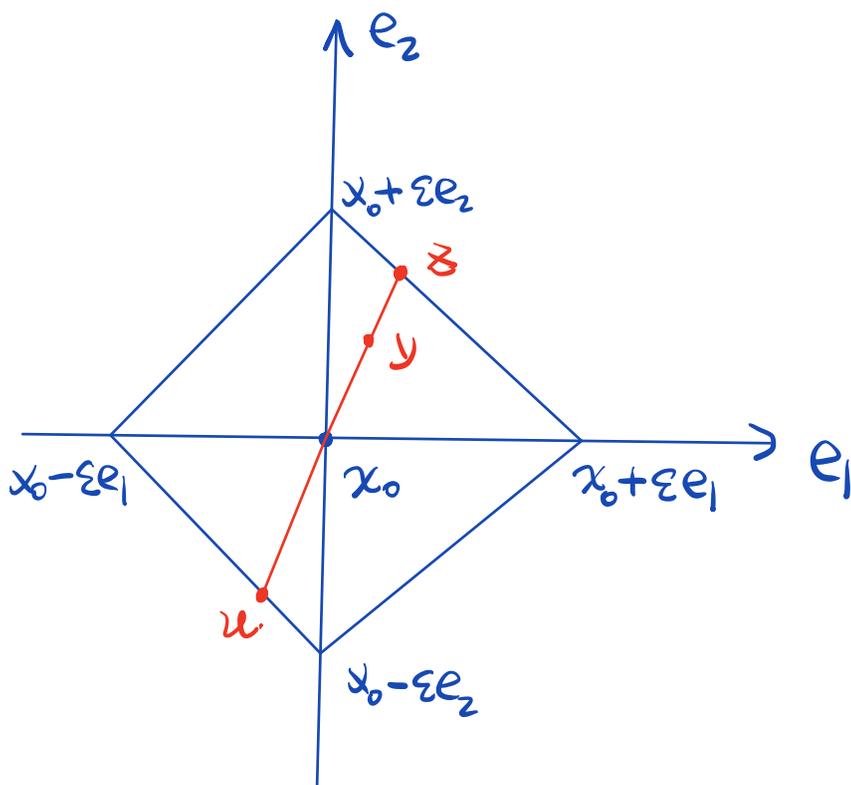
$$y = x_0 + \alpha(x_0 - u)$$

由定理 3.1.1

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) &\geq f(x_0) + \alpha(f(x_0) - f(u)) \\ &\geq f(x_0) - \alpha(M - f(x_0)) \\ &= f(x_0) - \frac{M - f(x_0)}{\varepsilon} \|y - x_0\|_{(1)} \end{aligned}$$

综上  $|f(y) - f(x_0)| \leq \frac{M - f(x_0)}{\varepsilon} \|y - x_0\|_{(1)}$





Def 3.13 令  $x \in \text{dom } f$ , 称  $f$  在  $x_0$  处关于方向  $p \neq 0$  可微.

若下面极限存在:

$$f'(x; p) = \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(x + \alpha p) - f(x)]$$

Thm 3.1.12 凸 func  $f$  对任意定义域中的内点关于任意方向导数存在

证明: 令  $x \in \text{int}(\text{dom } f)$ , 考虑

$$\phi(\alpha) = \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(x + \alpha p) - f(x)], \alpha > 0$$

取  $\varepsilon$  足够小, s.t.  $x + \varepsilon p \in \text{dom } f$ ,  $\forall \beta \in (0, 1], \alpha \in (0, \varepsilon]$

$$\begin{aligned} f(x + \alpha \beta p) &= f((1-\beta)x + \beta(x + \alpha p)) \\ &\leq (1-\beta)f(x) + \beta f(x + \alpha p) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } \phi(\alpha \beta) &= \frac{1}{\alpha \beta} [f(x + \alpha \beta p) - f(x)] \\ &\leq \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(x + \alpha p) - f(x)] = \phi(\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

故  $\alpha \downarrow 0$  时,  $\phi(\alpha) \downarrow$ , 取  $\gamma > 0$  足够小, s.t.  $x - \gamma p \in \text{dom } f$ ,

则  $x + \alpha p = x + \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} (x - (x - \gamma p))$ , 故由 (3.1.5)

$$f(x + \alpha p) \geq f(x) + \frac{\alpha}{\gamma} (f(x) - f(x - \gamma p))$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(\alpha) \geq \frac{1}{\gamma} (f(x) - f(x - \gamma p)) \quad \forall \alpha > 0$$

由单调收敛 Thm, 极限  $\exists$



Lemma 3.1.5 令  $f$  是 convex 的且  $x \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$ ,

则  $f'(x; \cdot)$  是 convex 的且正齐次的 (degree=1), 对  $\forall y \in \text{dom} f$ , 有  $f(y) \geq f(x) + f'(x; y-x)$

证明: 首先证明方向导数是齐次的:

对  $\forall p \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$  时,  $\tau > 0$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x; \tau p) &= \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(x + \tau \alpha p) - f(x)] \\ &= \tau \lim_{\beta \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\beta} [f(x + \beta p) - f(x)] \\ &= \tau f'(x; p) \end{aligned}$$

当  $p=0$  时, 补充定义:

$$f'(x; \tau p) = \tau f'(x; p) = 0$$

故  $f'(x; \cdot)$  是正齐次的, degree=1, 下证凸性:

对  $\forall p_1, p_2 \in \mathbb{R}^n, \beta \in [0, 1]$ , 有:

$$f'(x; \beta p_1 + (1-\beta) p_2) = \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(x + \alpha(\beta p_1 + (1-\beta) p_2)) - f(x)]$$

$$\leq \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} \{ \beta [f(x + \alpha p_1) - f(x)] + (1 - \beta) [f(x + \alpha p_2) - f(x)] \}$$

$$= \beta f'(x; p_1) + (1 - \beta) f'(x; p_2)$$

故  $f'(x; p)$  是  $p$  的 convex func. 令  $\alpha \in (0, 1]$ ,  $y \in \text{dom } f$ ,

$y_\alpha = x + \alpha(y - x)$ , 故由 定理 3.1.1

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) &= f(y_\alpha + \frac{1}{\alpha}(1 - \alpha)(y_\alpha - x)) \\ &\geq f(y_\alpha) + \frac{1}{\alpha}(1 - \alpha)[f(y_\alpha) - f(x)] \end{aligned}$$

对  $\alpha \downarrow 0$  取极限:

$$f(y) \geq f(x) + f'(x; y - x)$$



### § 3.1.4 分离定理

Def 3.1.4 令  $\mathcal{Q}$  是凸集, 超平面

$$\mathcal{H}(g, r) = \{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \langle g, x \rangle = r \}, g \neq 0$$

称  $\mathcal{H}(g, r)$  是  $\mathcal{Q}$  的 supporting 若对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$ ,  $\langle g, x \rangle \leq r$

称  $H(g, \gamma) \neq \emptyset$  分离  $\mathcal{X}_0$  和  $\mathcal{X}$  若对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{X}$ ,

$$\langle g, x \rangle \leq \gamma \leq \langle g, x_0 \rangle \quad (3.119)$$

若 (3.1.19) 的一个不等号是严格的, 则称是强分离的  $\square$

同理可以定义凸集之间的分离性, 两个凸集  $\mathcal{X}_1, \mathcal{X}_2$  是可分的, 若  $\exists g \in \mathbb{R}^n, g \neq 0, \gamma \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , s.t.

$$\langle g, x \rangle \leq \gamma \leq \langle g, y \rangle, \forall x \in \mathcal{X}_1, \forall y \in \mathcal{X}_2$$

分离是严格的, 若

$$\sup_{x \in \mathcal{X}_1} \langle g, x \rangle < \gamma < \inf_{y \in \mathcal{X}_2} \langle g, y \rangle$$

定理 3.1.13 令  $\mathcal{X}_1, \mathcal{X}_2$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  中的闭凸集, s.t.  $\mathcal{X}_1 \cap \mathcal{X}_2 = \emptyset$ , 设  $\mathcal{X}_1, \mathcal{X}_2$  中有一个集合是有界的, 则  $\mathcal{X}_1, \mathcal{X}_2$  是强分离的

证明: 不妨设  $\mathcal{X}_1$  是有界的, 考虑极小化问题:

$$\rho^* = \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}_1} P_{\mathcal{X}_2}(x)$$

$\rho_{\Theta_2}(x) = \frac{1}{2} \|x - \pi_{\Theta_2}(x)\|^2$ , 而  $\pi_{\Theta_2}(x) = \operatorname{argmin}_{x' \in \Theta_2} \|x - x'\|$

故由 Thm 2.2.11 知,  $\pi_{\Theta_2}(x_0)$  是存在唯一的, 故  $\rho_{\Theta_2}(x)$

是良定义的, 由 Lemma 2.2.9 知,  $\rho_{\Theta_2}(x)$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上的  $\mathcal{F}$  func,

由  $\Theta_1$  的紧性知:  $\rho^*$  是良定义的

对  $\forall x^* \in X^*$ , 有:

$$\nabla \rho_{\Theta_2}(x^*) \stackrel{(2.2.4)}{=} g^*, \quad \langle g^*, x^* \rangle \stackrel{(2.2.4)}{=} \gamma^*$$

故对  $\forall x_1 \in \Theta_1$ , 有:

$$\begin{aligned} \langle g^*, x_1 \rangle - \gamma^* &= \langle g^*, x_1 - x^* \rangle \\ &= \langle \nabla \rho_{\Theta_2}(x^*), x_1 - x^* \rangle \stackrel{(2.2.39)}{\geq} 0 \end{aligned}$$

对  $\forall x_2 \in \Theta_2$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned} \langle g^*, x_2 \rangle - \gamma^* &= \langle g^*, x_2 - x^* \rangle \\ &= \langle x^* - \pi_{\Theta_2}(x^*), x_2 - x^* \rangle \quad (2.2.52) \\ &= \langle \pi_{\Theta_2}(x^*) - x^*, (x^* - \pi_{\Theta_2}(x^*)) - (x_2 - \pi_{\Theta_2}(x^*)) \rangle \end{aligned}$$

$$= -\|\pi_{\Theta_2}(x^*) - x^*\|^2 - \langle \pi_{\Theta_2}(x^*) - x^*, x_2 - \pi_{\Theta_2}(x^*) \rangle$$

$$(2.2.47) \leq -\|\pi_{\Theta_2}(x^*) - x^*\|^2 = -2\rho^*$$

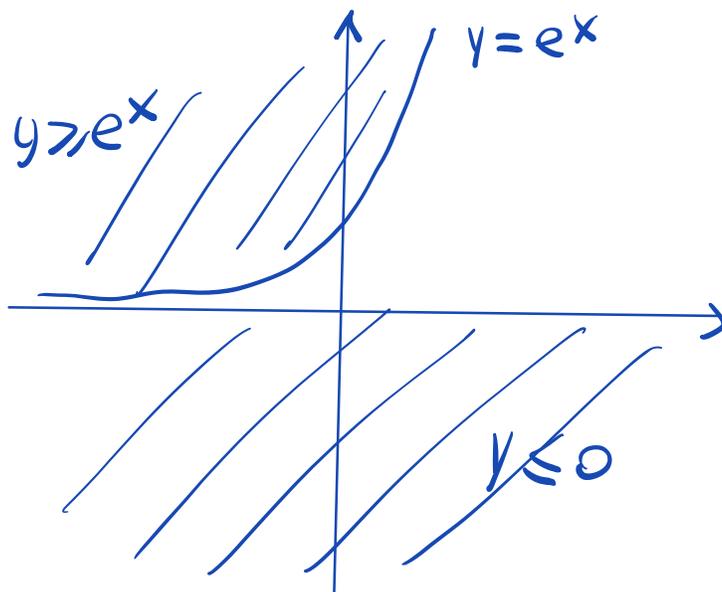
$$\text{故 } \langle g^*, x_2 \rangle \leq r^* - 2\rho^* < r^* \leq \langle g^*, x_1 \rangle \quad \begin{array}{l} \forall x_1 \in \Theta_1 \\ \forall x_2 \in \Theta_2 \end{array}$$

由  $\Theta_1 \cap \Theta_2 = \emptyset$ , 故  $\rho^* > 0$

$$\text{故 } \sup_{x_2 \in \Theta_2} \langle g^*, x_2 \rangle < r^* - \rho^* < \inf_{x_1 \in \Theta_1} \langle g^*, x_1 \rangle$$



注： $\Theta_1, \Theta_2$  有一个有界是必要的



推论 3.1.4 令  $\Theta$  是闭凸集,  $x \notin \Theta$ , 则  $x$  与  $\Theta$  强分离

推论 3.1.5 令  $\Theta_1, \Theta_2$  是两个闭凸集

1. 若  $\xi_{\Theta_1}(g) \leq \xi_{\Theta_2}(g)$  对  $\forall g \in \text{dom } \xi_{\Theta_2}$  成立, 则  $\Theta_1 \supseteq \Theta_2$

2. 令  $\text{dom } \xi_{\Theta_1} = \text{dom } \xi_{\Theta_2}$ , 且对  $\forall g \in \text{dom } \xi_{\Theta_1}$ , 有:

$\xi_{\Theta_1}(g) = \xi_{\Theta_2}(g)$ , 有  $\Theta_1 \equiv \Theta_2$

证明  $\xi_{\Theta}(g) = \sup \{ \langle x, g \rangle \mid x \in \Theta \}$

1. 设  $\exists x_0 \in \Theta_1$ , s.t.  $x_0 \notin \Theta_2$ . 由 推论 3.1.4,  $\exists g$ , s.t.

$$\langle g, x_0 \rangle > \gamma \geq \langle g, x \rangle$$

对  $\forall x \in \Theta_2$  成立, 故  $g \in \text{dom } \xi_{\Theta_2}$ , 且

$$\xi_{\Theta_1}(g) > \xi_{\Theta_2}(g) \quad \text{矛盾}$$

2. 用两次 1 即证

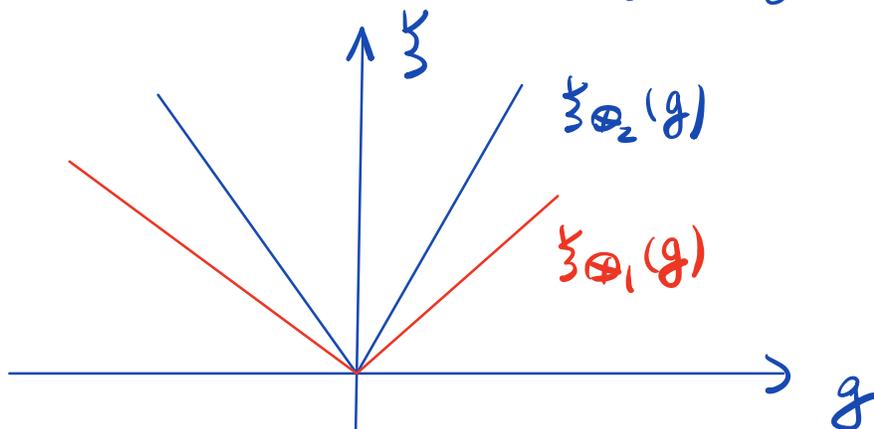


一维下: 设  $\Theta_1 = [a_1, b_1]$ ,  $\Theta_2 = [a_2, b_2]$

① 设  $a_1, a_2 < 0, b_1, b_2 > 0$

$$\text{例} \quad \zeta_{\oplus_1}(g) = \sup_{x \in [a_1, b_1]} xg = \begin{cases} b_1g & g \geq 0 \\ a_1g & g < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\zeta_{\oplus_2}(g) = \sup_{x \in [a_2, b_2]} xg = \begin{cases} b_2g & g \geq 0 \\ a_2g & g < 0 \end{cases}$$



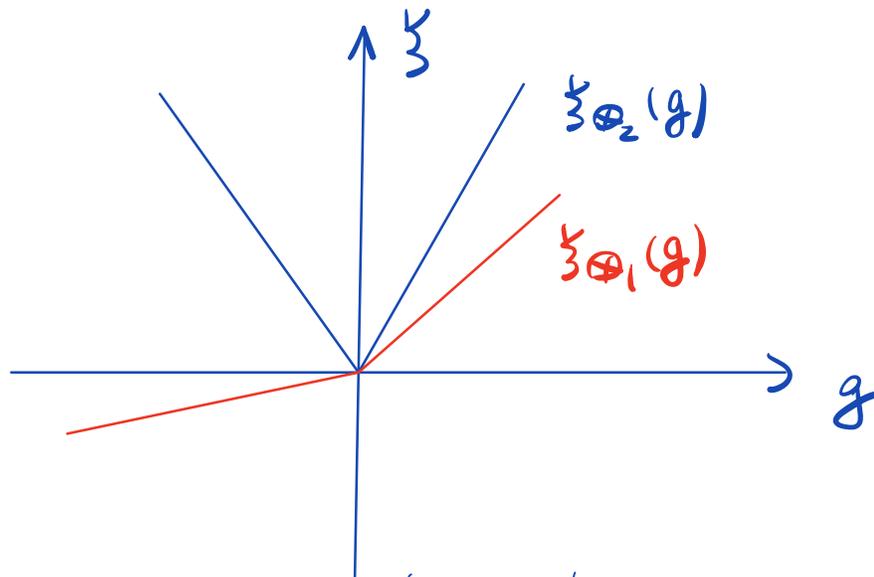
$$\zeta_{\oplus_2}(g) \geq \zeta_{\oplus_1}(g) \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} b_2g \geq b_1g, & g \geq 0 \\ a_2g \geq a_1g, & g < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} b_2 \geq b_1 \\ a_2 \leq a_1 \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \oplus_2 \supseteq \oplus_1$$

②

设  $a_2 < 0, a_1, b_1, b_2 > 0$ , 则

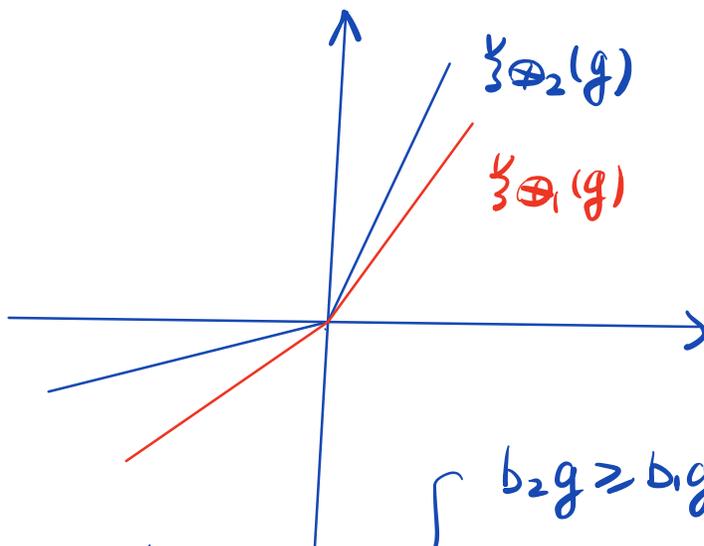
$$\zeta_{\oplus_1}(g) = \begin{cases} b_1g, & g \geq 0 \\ a_1g, & g \leq 0 \end{cases}$$



$$\xi_{\oplus_2}(g) \geq \xi_{\oplus_1}(g) \Leftrightarrow b_2 g \geq b_1 g, g > 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow b_2 \geq b_1 \Leftrightarrow \oplus_2 \geq \oplus_1$$

③ 设  $a_1, b_1, a_2, b_2 > 0$



$$\xi_{\oplus_2}(g) \geq \xi_{\oplus_1}(g) \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} b_2 g \geq b_1 g & g \geq 0 \\ a_2 g \geq a_1 g & g < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} b_2 \geq b_1 \\ a_2 \leq a_1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \oplus_2 \geq \oplus_1$$

定理 3.1.14 令  $\mathcal{Q}$  是闭凸集, 若  $x_0 \in \partial \mathcal{Q}$ , 则  $\exists \mathcal{Q}$

的支撑超平面  $\mathcal{H}(g, \gamma)$ , 且  $x_0 \in \mathcal{H}(g, \gamma)$

证明: 考虑序列  $\{y_k\}$ , s.t.  $y_k \notin \mathcal{Q}$ , 且  $y_k \rightarrow x_0$ , 令

$$g_k = \frac{y_k - \pi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y_k)}{\|y_k - \pi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y_k)\|}, \quad \gamma_k = \langle g_k, \pi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y_k) \rangle$$

由 lemma 2.2.7, 对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 有:

$$\langle \pi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y_k) - y_k, x - \pi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y_k) \rangle \geq 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \langle g_k, x \rangle \leq \gamma_k \leq \langle g_k, y_k \rangle \quad \dots \quad (*)$$

由  $\|g_k\| = 1$ , 由 Lemma 2.2.8, 序列  $\{\gamma_k\}$  是有界的:

$$|\gamma_k| = |\langle g_k, \pi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y_k) - x_0 \rangle + \langle g_k, x_0 \rangle|$$

$$\leq \|\pi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y_k) - x_0\| + \|x_0\|$$

$$\leq \|y_k - x_0\| + \|x_0\|$$

故 WLOG, 设  $\exists g^* = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} g_k, \gamma^* = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \gamma_k$

对  $\otimes$  取极限: 对  $\forall x \in \otimes$

$$\langle g^*, x \rangle \leq \gamma^* \leq \langle g^*, x \rangle$$

故取  $H(g^*, \gamma^*) = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \langle g^*, x \rangle = \gamma^*\}$  即证



### § 3.1.5 Subgradient

Def 3.1.5 向量  $g$  称为  $f$  在  $x_0 \in \text{dom} f$  的次梯度, 若

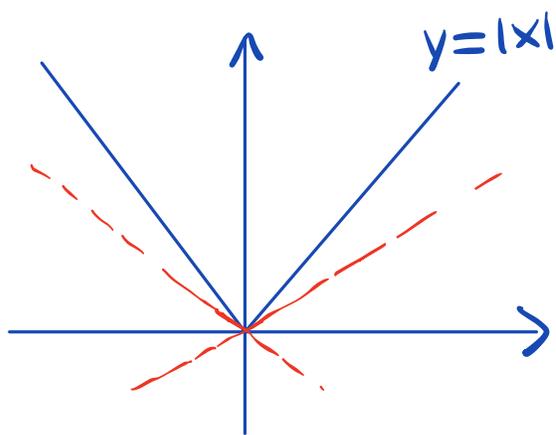
$$\text{对 } \forall y \in \text{dom} f, \text{ 有 } f(y) \geq f(x_0) + \langle g, y - x_0 \rangle \quad (3.1.23)$$

所有  $f$  在  $x_0$  的次梯度构成集合记为  $\partial f(x_0)$  称为  $f$  在  $x_0$  处的次微分

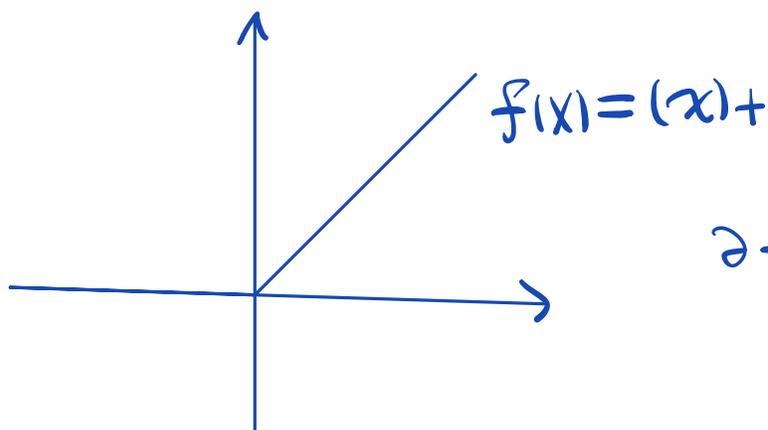
若 (3.1.23) 只对  $y \in \otimes$  成立, 则用记号  $g \in \partial_{\otimes} f(x_0)$

表示约束次微分, 若  $\otimes \subseteq \text{dom} f$ , 则  $\partial f(x_0) \subseteq \partial_{\otimes} f(x_0)$

$\partial f(x_0)$  对于非凸 func 也可能非空



$$\partial f(0) = [-1, 1]$$



$$\partial f(0) = [0, 1]$$

$$\partial_{\Theta} f(x_0) = \bigcap_{y \in \Theta} \partial_{\{y\}} f(x_0)$$

$$= \bigcap_{y \in \Theta} \{g \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid f(y) \geq f(x_0) + \langle g, y - x_0 \rangle\}$$

$$= \bigcap_{y \in \Theta} \mathcal{I}_{\phi}(f(y))$$

其中  $\phi(g) = \langle g, y - x_0 \rangle + f(x_0)$ ,  $g \in \mathbb{R}^n$  是闭凸 func

$\Rightarrow \mathcal{I}_{\phi}(x)$  是闭凸集或空集, 又由  $\phi(g)$  是线性 func.

故  $\mathcal{I}_{\phi}(x)$  对  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}$  是闭凸集

故  $\partial_{\otimes} f(x_0)$  是闭凸集 (空集也算进闭凸集)

lemma 3.1.6 令  $\otimes$  是闭凸集, 设对  $\forall x \in \otimes \subseteq \text{dom} f$ ,

$\partial_{\otimes} f(x) \neq \emptyset$ , 则  $f$  是  $\otimes$  上的闭凸集

证明: 对  $\forall x \in \otimes$ , 定义

$$\hat{f}(x) = \sup_{y \in \otimes} \{ f(y) + \langle g(y), x - y \rangle \} \geq f(x)$$

其中  $g(y)$  是  $\partial_{\otimes} f(y)$  中任意次梯度

由 Thm 3.1.8,  $\hat{f}$  是  $\otimes$  上闭凸 func, 且由次梯度定义:

$$f(x) \stackrel{(3.1.23)}{\geq} \hat{f}(x) \quad \forall x \in \otimes$$

故  $\hat{\otimes} = \otimes$ ,  $\hat{f}$  是  $\otimes$  上的闭凸 func

故  $f(x) = \hat{f}(x)$  是闭凸 func

□

Thm 3.1.15 令  $f$  是凸 func, 若  $x_0 \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$ ,

则  $\partial f(x_0)$  是非空有界的

证明: 由  $(x_0, f(x_0)) \in \partial \text{epi}(f)$ , 则

$$(x_0, f(x_0)) \in \overline{\partial \text{epi}(f)}$$

注:  $\partial A \subseteq \partial \bar{A}$  并不一定正确, 如  $\boxed{\partial A \triangleq \bar{A} \setminus A^\circ}$

$$A = [0, 1] \setminus \{\frac{1}{2}\}, \text{ 则 } \partial A = \{0, 1, \frac{1}{2}\}$$

$$\bar{A} = [0, 1], \text{ 则 } \partial \bar{A} = \{0, 1\}$$

则  $\frac{1}{2} \in \partial A$ , 但  $\frac{1}{2} \notin \partial \bar{A}$ , 但对凸集,  $\partial A \subseteq \partial \bar{A}$

证明:  $\partial A \subseteq \partial \bar{A} \Leftrightarrow \bar{A} \setminus \text{int}(A) \subseteq \bar{A} \setminus \text{int}(\bar{A})$

$$\Leftrightarrow \text{int}(\bar{A}) \subseteq \text{int}(A)$$

要证  $\text{int}(\bar{A}) \subseteq \text{int}(A)$ , 只需证  $\text{int}(\bar{A}) \subseteq A$

因为对  $\forall a \in \text{int}(\bar{A})$ , 则  $\exists$  开球  $S(a, r) \subseteq \text{int}(\bar{A})$ ,

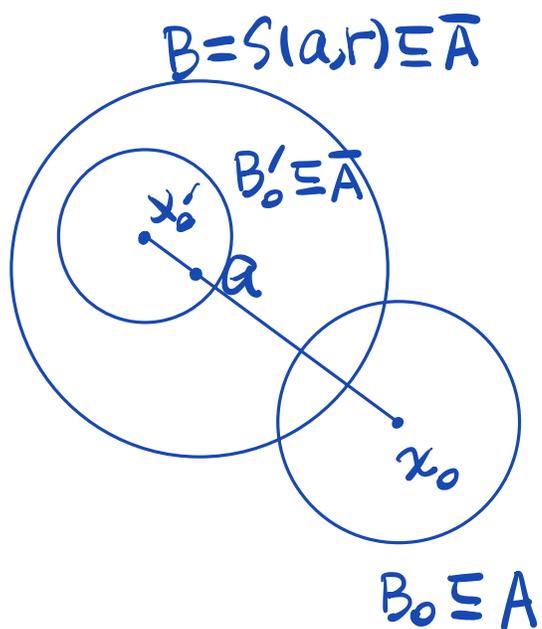
故  $S(a, r) \subseteq A$ , 故  $a \in \text{int}(A)$ , 即证  $\text{int}(\bar{A}) \subseteq \text{int}(A)$

下证  $\text{int}(\bar{A}) \subseteq A$ , 对  $\forall a \in \text{int}(\bar{A})$ , 则  $\exists$  开球  $B = S(a, r) \subseteq \text{int}(\bar{A})$ ,

取  $x_0 \in \text{int}(A)$ , 取开球  $B_0 = S(x_0, r_2) \subseteq A$

$$tx_0 + (1-t)x'_0, t \in (0, 1)$$

↑



取  $x'$ , s.t.  $a \in [x_0, x')$ ,  
且映射  $h(x) = a + k(x - x_0)$  满足

$$\begin{cases} h(x_0) = x' \\ h: B_0 \rightarrow B' \subseteq B \end{cases}$$

由  $B_0$  开, 故可以取  $x' \in B_0$ , s.t.

$x' \in A$ , 否则对  $\forall y \in B_0$ , 有  $y \notin A$ , 但  $y \in \bar{A}$ , 故

$$B_0 \subseteq \bar{A} \setminus A \subseteq \bar{A} \setminus \text{int}(A) = \partial A$$

与  $\partial A$  的定义矛盾, 故  $\exists x' \in B_0$ , s.t.  $x' \in A$

设  $x' = h(x)$ ,  $x \in B_0 \subseteq A$ , 则  $a \in [x, x')$ , 由  $x \in A, x' \in A$ .

故由  $A$  的凸性,  $a \in A$

故对  $\overline{\text{epi}(f)}$  用定理 3.1.14,  $\exists$  超平面在  $(x_0, f(x_0))$  处支撑

$$\overline{\text{epi}(f)} : -\alpha \tau + \langle d, x \rangle \leq -\alpha f(x_0) + \langle d, x_0 \rangle$$

对  $\forall (x, \tau) \in \overline{\text{epi}(f)}$ ,  $\exists$  归一化系数, s.t.

$$\|d\|^2 + \alpha^2 = 1$$

由  $(x_0, \tau) \in \text{epi}(f)$  对  $\forall \tau \geq f(x_0)$  成立, 故  $\alpha \geq 0$

由定理 3.1.11, 凸 func 是局部 Lipschitz 的, 即

$\exists \varepsilon > 0, M > 0$ , s.t.  $B_2(x_0, \varepsilon) \subseteq \text{dom} f$ , 且

$$f(x) - f(x_0) \leq M \|x - x_0\|$$

对  $\forall x \in B_2(x_0, \varepsilon)$  成立, 故对  $\forall x \in B_2(x_0, \varepsilon)$

$$\langle d, x - x_0 \rangle \leq \alpha (f(x) - f(x_0)) \leq \alpha M \|x - x_0\|$$

取  $x = x_0 + \varepsilon d$ , 有  $\|d\|^2 \leq M \alpha \|d\|$ , 则

$$\begin{cases} \|d\| = 0 \text{ 时, } \alpha = 1 \\ \|d\| > 0 \text{ 时 } \sqrt{1 - \alpha^2} \leq M \alpha \Rightarrow \alpha \geq [1 + M^2]^{-\frac{1}{2}} \end{cases}$$

故  $\alpha > 0$ , 取  $g = \frac{d}{\alpha}$ , 则

$$f(x) \stackrel{(3.1.25)}{\geq} f(x_0) + \langle g, x - x_0 \rangle \text{ 对 } \forall x \in \text{dom} f$$

故  $\partial f(x_0)$  是非空的, 若  $g \in \partial f(x_0), g \neq 0$ , 取  $x = x_0 + \frac{\varepsilon g}{\|g\|}$

$$\Rightarrow \varepsilon \|g\| = \langle g, x - x_0 \rangle \leq f(x) - f(x_0) \leq M \|x - x_0\| = M \varepsilon$$

$\Rightarrow \|g\| \leq M$ , 故  $\partial f(x_0)$  是有界的



例 3.1.4  $x_0 \notin \text{int}(\text{dom } f)$  时上面定理不成立.

$f(x) = -\sqrt{x}$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}_+$ , 在 0 处次微分不存在

定理 3.1.16 对 func  $f$ , 定义 Fenchel dual

$$f_*(s) = \sup_{y \in \text{dom } f} [\langle s, y \rangle - f(y)]$$

和  $f_*$  的 Fenchel Dual

$$f_{**}(x) = \sup_{s \in \text{dom } f_*} [\langle s, x \rangle - f_*(s)]$$

则  $f(x) \geq f_{**}(x)$  对  $\forall x \in \text{dom } f$  成立, 若  $\partial f(x) \neq \emptyset$

对  $x \in \text{dom } f$  成立, 则  $\partial f(x) \subseteq \text{dom } f_*$ , 且  $f(x) = f_{**}(x)$

证明: 对  $\forall x \in \text{dom } f$ , 有

$$f_{**}(x) = \sup_{s \in \text{dom } f_*} [\langle s, x \rangle - f_*(s)]$$

$$= \sup_{s \in \text{dom} f_*} \inf_{y \in \text{dom} f} [\langle s, x \rangle - \langle s, y \rangle + f(y)]$$

$$\leq \inf_{y \in \text{dom} f} \sup_{s \in \text{dom} f_*} [\langle s, x-y \rangle + f(y)]$$

$$\leq f(x)$$

对  $\forall g \in \partial f(x)$ , 且对  $\forall y \in \text{dom} f$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle g, y \rangle - f(y) &\leq \langle g, y \rangle - f(x) - \langle g, y-x \rangle \\ &= \langle g, x \rangle - f(x) \end{aligned}$$

故  $g \in \text{dom} f_*$ , 故

$$f_{**}(x) = \sup_{s \in \text{dom} f_*} \inf_{y \in \text{dom} f} [\langle s, x \rangle - \langle s, y \rangle + f(y)]$$

$$\geq \inf_{y \in \text{dom} f} [\langle g, x \rangle - \langle g, y \rangle + f(y)]$$

$$\geq f(x)$$



Thm 3.1.7 设  $f$  是 convex 的,  $x_0 \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$ , 则

$$\partial_2 f'(x_0; 0) = \partial f(x_0)$$

对  $\forall p \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$f'(x_0; p) = \max \{ \langle g, p \rangle \mid g \in \partial f(x_0) \}$$

证明: 注意到:

$$f'(x_0; p) = \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(x_0 + \alpha p) - f(x_0)] \geq \langle g, p \rangle$$

其中  $g \in \partial f(x_0)$  是任意次梯度, 故

$$f'(x_0; p) \geq f'(x_0; 0) + \langle g, p \rangle$$

即  $\partial f(x_0) \subseteq \partial_2 f'(x_0; 0)$ , 另一方面  $f'(x_0; p)$  关于  $p$

是 convex 的, 且由 lemma 3.1.5, 对  $\forall y \in \text{dom} f$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) &\geq f(x_0) + f'(x_0; y - x_0) \\ &\geq f(x_0) + \langle g, y - x_0 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

其中  $g \in \partial_2 f'(x_0; 0)$ , 由  $f'(x_0; p)$  的凸性,  $\partial_2 f'(x_0; 0)$  非空,

故  $\partial_2 f'(x_0; 0) \subseteq \partial f(x_0)$ , 综上

$$\partial_2 f'(x_0; 0) = \partial f(x_0)$$

$\forall g \in \partial_2 f'(x_0; p)$ , 则由 (3.1.18), 对  $\forall v \in \mathbb{R}^n, \tau > 0$

$$\tau f'(x_0; v) = f'(x_0; \tau v) \geq f'(x_0; p) + \langle g, \tau v - p \rangle$$

$$\text{令 } \tau \rightarrow \infty: f'(x_0; v) \geq \langle g, v \rangle \quad \textcircled{1}$$

$$\text{令 } \tau \rightarrow 0: f'(x_0; p) - \langle g, p \rangle \leq 0 \quad \textcircled{2}$$

由 ① 知,  $g \in \partial_2 f'(x_0; 0)$ , 故  $\partial_2 f'(x_0; p) \subseteq \partial_2 f'(x_0; 0)$

$$\max_{g \in \partial_2 f'(x_0; 0)} \langle g, p \rangle \geq \max_{g \in \partial_2 f'(x_0; p)} \langle g, p \rangle$$

$$\geq \min_{g \in \partial_2 f'(x_0; p)} \langle g, p \rangle \stackrel{\textcircled{2}}{\geq} f'(x_0; p) \stackrel{\text{次梯度定义}}{\geq} \max_{g \in \partial_2 f'(x_0; 0)} \langle g, p \rangle$$

max, min 能取到, 由 Thm 3.1.15 知,  $\partial_2 f'(x_0; 0)$ ,

$\partial_2 f'(x_0; p)$  均是紧的



Thm 3.1.8 对  $\forall x_0 \in \text{dom} f$ ,  $\forall g \in \partial f(x_0)$  是下水平

集  $\mathcal{L}_f(f(x_0))$  的支持:

$$\langle g, x_0 - x \rangle \geq 0, \forall x \in \mathcal{L}_f(f(x_0)) = \{x \in \text{dom} f : f(x) \leq f(x_0)\}$$

证明: 若  $f(x) \leq f(x_0)$ ,  $g \in \partial f(x_0)$ , 则

$$f(x_0) + \langle g, x - x_0 \rangle \leq f(x) \leq f(x_0) \quad \square$$

推论 3.1.6 令  $Q \subseteq \text{dom} f$  是闭凸集,  $x_0 \in Q$ , 且

$$x^* \in \underset{x \in Q}{\text{Argmin}} f(x)$$

则对  $\forall g \in \partial f(x_0)$ , 有  $\langle g, x_0 - x^* \rangle \geq 0$  □

Def 3.1.6 令  $X \subseteq \text{dom} f$  是闭凸集, 集合

$$\widehat{\partial} f(X) = \bigcap_{x \in X} \partial f(x)$$

叫做集合的上图面

Thm 3.1.19 令集合  $X$  是闭凸集, 且  $\widehat{\partial f}(X) \neq \emptyset$ , 则

$$f((1-\alpha)x_0 + \alpha x_1) = (1-\alpha)f(x_0) + \alpha f(x_1), \quad \forall x_0, x_1 \in X \\ \alpha \in [0, 1]$$

且对  $\forall g \in \widehat{\partial f}(X)$ ,  $\forall x_0, x_1 \in X$ , 有:

$$f(x_1) = f(x_0) + \langle g, x_1 - x_0 \rangle$$

证明: 令  $g \in \widehat{\partial f}(X) \subseteq \partial f(x_0) \cap \partial f(x_1)$ , 则

$$f(x_0) + \langle g, x_1 - x_0 \rangle \leq f(x_1) \leq f(x_0) + \langle g, x_1 - x_0 \rangle$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x_1) = f(x_0) + \langle g, x_1 - x_0 \rangle$$

$$\forall x_\alpha = (1-\alpha)x_0 + \alpha x_1 \quad \alpha \in [0, 1]$$

$$(1-\alpha)f(x_0) + \alpha f(x_1) \geq f(x_\alpha) \geq f(x_0) + \langle g, x_\alpha - x_0 \rangle$$

$$= f(x_0) + \alpha \langle g, x_1 - x_0 \rangle = (1-\alpha)f(x_0) + \alpha f(x_1)$$



Thm 3.1.20 令  $X^* = \underset{x \in \text{dom} f}{\text{Argmin}} f(x)$ , 则闭凸集

$X_*$  是  $X^*$  的子集  $\Leftrightarrow 0 \in \widehat{\partial} f(X_*)$

证明: 若  $0 \in \widehat{\partial} f(X_*)$ , 则对  $\forall x^* \in X_*$ , 有

对  $\forall x \in \text{dom} f$ , 有  $f(x) \geq f(x^*) + \langle 0, x - x^* \rangle = f(x^*)$

故  $x^* \in X^*$

另一方面, 若  $f(x) \geq f(x^*)$  对  $\forall x \in \text{dom} f$ ,  $\forall x^* \in X_*$

成立, 则  $0 \in \bigcap_{x^* \in X_*} \partial f(x^*) = \widehat{\partial} f(X_*)$



## § 3.1.6 Computing Subgradient

lemma 3.1.7  $f$  是凸的, 设在  $x \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$  是可微的, 则  $\partial f(x) = \{\nabla f(x)\}$

证明: 对  $\forall p \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x; p) &= \langle \nabla f(x), p \rangle \\ &= \max \{ \langle g, p \rangle \mid g \in \partial f(x) \} \\ &= \zeta_{\partial f(x)}(p) \end{aligned}$$

故由推论 3.1.5 (ii)  $\partial f(x) = \{\nabla f(x)\}$  □

注: 推论 3.1.5 (ii) 的条件  $\text{dom} \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_1} = \text{dom} \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_2}$  是成立的,

由 Thm 3.1.5,  $\partial f(x)$  是有界的, 故  $\text{dom} \zeta_{\partial f(x)} = \text{dom} \zeta_{\{\nabla f(x)\}} = \mathbb{R}^n$

lemma 3.1.8 令  $\psi(\cdot)$  是凸的,  $\psi$  是单变量凸 func,

在集合  $\text{Im} \psi = \{\tau = \psi(x), x \in \text{dom} f\}$  是非减的, 则  $f(\cdot) =$

$\varphi(\psi(\cdot))$  是凸的. 且对  $\forall x \in \text{int}(\text{dom}\psi)$ , 有

$$\partial f(x) = \text{Conv} \{ \lambda \partial \psi(x), \lambda \in \partial \varphi(\psi(x)) \}$$

证明: 由 Thm 3.1.9,  $f$  是凸的, 固定  $\forall x \in \text{int}(\text{dom}\psi)$ ,  $\forall p \in \mathbb{R}$

$$f'(x; p) = \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(x + \alpha p) - f(x)]$$

$$= \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [\varphi(\psi(x + \alpha p)) - \varphi(\psi(x))]$$

$$= \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [\varphi[\alpha \cdot \frac{1}{\alpha} [\psi(x + \alpha p) - \psi(x)] + \psi(x)] - \varphi(\psi(x))]$$

$$= \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [\varphi(\psi(x) + \alpha \psi'(x; p) + o(\alpha)) - \varphi(\psi(x))]$$

$$= \varphi'(\psi(x); \psi'(x; p))$$

$$= \max_{\lambda} \{ \lambda \psi'(x; p) : \lambda \in \partial \varphi(\psi(x)) \}$$

$$= \max_{\lambda} \{ \lambda \max_{\tilde{g}} \{ \langle \tilde{g}, p \rangle : \tilde{g} \in \partial \psi(x) \} : \lambda \in \partial \varphi(\psi(x)) \}$$

$$= \max_{\lambda, g} \{ \langle g, p \rangle : g \in \lambda \partial \psi(x), \lambda \in \partial \varphi(\psi(x)) \}$$

$$= \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(p)$$

$$\text{其中 } \mathcal{Q} = \{ \lambda \partial \psi(x) : \lambda \in \partial \psi(x) \}$$

下证  $\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(p) \equiv \zeta_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}}(p)$ , 其中  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}} = \text{Conv } \mathcal{Q}$

①  $\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(p) \leq \zeta_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}}(p)$  是显然的

② 下证  $\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(p) \geq \zeta_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}}(p)$ , 先证  $\mathcal{R} \triangleq$

$$\text{Conv}(\mathcal{Q}) = \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i q_i \mid n \in \mathbb{N}, \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i = 1, \lambda_i \geq 0, q_i \in \mathcal{Q} \right\}$$

" $\supseteq$ " 考虑  $\forall$  凸集  $C \ni \mathcal{Q}$ , 则由定义,  $C \ni \mathcal{R}$ , 由  $C$  的任意性知,  $\text{Conv}(\mathcal{Q}) \ni \mathcal{R}$

" $\subseteq$ " 只需证  $\mathcal{R}$  是凸集, 对  $\forall p_1, p_2 \in \mathcal{R}$ , 不失一般地,

设  $p_1 = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i q_i$ ,  $p_2 = \sum_{i=1}^n \mu_i q_i$ , 则  $\forall \alpha \in [0, 1]$

$$\alpha p_1 + (1-\alpha) p_2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (\alpha \lambda_i + (1-\alpha) \mu_i) q_i \in \mathcal{R}$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (\alpha \lambda_i + (1-\alpha) \mu_i) = 1$$

故对  $\forall g \in \hat{\mathcal{Q}}, g = \sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i q_i$ , 则

$$\langle g, p \rangle = \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i q_i, p \right\rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n \xi_i \langle q_i, p \rangle \leq \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} \langle q_i, p \rangle$$

$\mathcal{Q}$   
 $\downarrow$   
 $\uparrow$

最后只需证明:  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}} = \text{Conv}(\mathcal{Q})$  是闭集

① 先证  $\mathcal{Q}$  是紧的,  $\mathcal{Q}$  的有界性 ( $\text{dom } \psi = \mathbb{R}$ ?)

闭性:  $\{x_k\}_{k=1}^{\infty} \rightarrow \bar{x}$ , 则  $x_k = \lambda_k \xi_k$

$\lambda_k \in \partial \psi(\psi(x))$ ,  $\xi_k \in \partial \psi(x)$ , 则由  $\{\lambda_k\}, \{\xi_k\}$  的有界性.

$\exists$  子列  $\lambda_{k_n} \rightarrow \lambda^*$ ,  $\xi_{k_n} \rightarrow \xi^*$ , s.t.  $\bar{x} = \lambda^* \xi^*$ , 由  $\partial \psi(\psi(x))$  和  $\partial \psi(x)$

的闭性知,  $\mathcal{Q}$  是闭的

② 证  $\text{Conv}(\mathcal{Q})$  的闭性要用 Carathéodory's 定理

对  $\forall p \in \mathbb{R}^n, q \in \text{Conv}(\mathcal{Q})$ , 则  $\exists k \leq n+1$  个点  $p_1, \dots, p_k \in \mathcal{Q}$ ,

s.t.  $q \in \text{Conv}(p_1, \dots, p_k)$

用上面定理, 可以将  $\text{Conv } \mathcal{Q} = f(\mathcal{Q}^{n+1} \times \Sigma)$ , 其中

$$f: \underbrace{\mathbb{R}^n \times \dots \times \mathbb{R}^n}_{n+1 \text{ 个}} \times \Sigma \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n \text{ 定义为}$$

$$f((x_1, \dots, x_{n+1}, \mu)) = \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} \mu_k x_k$$

$\Sigma = \{ \mu \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \mu_i \geq 0, \sum_{i=1}^{n+1} \mu_i = 1 \}$  是  $n+1$  维单纯形,

由于  $f$  是连续的, 且  $\mathbb{Q}^{n+1}$ ,  $\Sigma$  是紧的, 故

$$\text{Conv } \mathbb{Q} = f(\mathbb{Q}^{n+1} \times \Sigma) \text{ 是紧的}$$

故推论 3.1.5:  $\partial f(x) = \text{Conv } \mathbb{Q} = \hat{\mathbb{Q}}$



Lemma 3.1.9  $f$  是凸的, 且

$$\bar{x} = (\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \in \text{int}(\text{dom } f) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^m$$

设  $f$  关于第一个分量可微, 对应的偏梯度是  $\nabla_1 f(\cdot, \cdot) \in \mathbb{R}^n$

在  $\bar{x}$  处关于任意方向连续, 则

$$\partial f(\bar{x}) = (\nabla_1 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}), \partial_2 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}))$$

证明: 固定  $\forall$  方向  $h = (h_x, h_y) \in \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^m$ , 则对  $\alpha > 0$  充分小,

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{\alpha} (f(\bar{x} + \alpha h_x, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y) - f(\bar{x}, \bar{y})) \\ &= \frac{1}{\alpha} (f(\bar{x} + \alpha h_x, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y) - f(\bar{x}, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y)) \\ & \quad + \frac{1}{\alpha} (f(\bar{x}, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y) - f(\bar{x}, \bar{y})) \end{aligned}$$

由  $f$  的凸性:

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha \langle \nabla_1 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y), h_x \rangle &\leq f(\bar{x} + \alpha h_x, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y) - f(\bar{x}, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y) \\ &\leq \alpha \langle \nabla_1 f(\bar{x} + \alpha h_x, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y), h_x \rangle \end{aligned}$$

令  $\alpha \rightarrow 0$ , 由  $\nabla_1 f(\cdot, \cdot)$  的连续性知:

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{\alpha} (f(\bar{x} + \alpha h_x, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y) - f(\bar{x}, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y)) \\ &= \langle \nabla_1 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}), h_x \rangle \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } f'(\bar{z}, h) = \langle \nabla_1 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}), h_x \rangle + f'(\bar{z}, (0, h_y))$$

令  $f_x(x, y) = f(x, y)$ , 则

$$f'(\bar{z}, (0, h_y)) = \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(\bar{x}, \bar{y} + \alpha h_y) - f(\bar{x}, \bar{y})]$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [f_{\bar{x}}(\bar{y} + \alpha h_y) - f_{\bar{x}}(\bar{y})] \\
&= f'_{\bar{x}}(\bar{y}; h_y) \\
&= \max_g \{ \langle g, h_y \rangle \mid g \in \partial f_{\bar{x}}(\bar{y}) \} \\
&= \max_g \{ \langle g, h_y \rangle \mid g \in \partial_2 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{故 } f'(\bar{z}; h) &= \max \{ \langle (\nabla_1 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}), g), (h_x, h_y) \rangle \mid g \in \partial_2 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \} \\
&= \max_{\tilde{g}} \{ \langle \tilde{g}, h \rangle \mid \tilde{g} \in \{ \nabla_1 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \} \times \partial_2 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \} \\
&= \max_{\tilde{g}} \{ \langle \tilde{g}, h \rangle \mid \tilde{g} \in \partial f(\bar{z}) \}
\end{aligned}$$

故由推论 3.1.5 (ii)

$$\partial f(\bar{z}) = (\nabla_1 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}), \partial_2 f(\bar{x}, \bar{y})) \quad \square$$

lemma 3.1.10 令  $f$  是凸的,  $x_0 \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$ , 设  $\exists g(x) \in \partial f(x)$ .

$g(x)$  在  $x_0$  处连续, 则  $f$  在  $x_0$  处可微, 且  $\nabla f(x_0) = g(x_0)$

证明: 对  $\forall$  方向  $h \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\alpha > 0$  充分小, 有

$$\begin{aligned} \langle g(x_0), h \rangle &\leq \frac{1}{2} [f(x_0 + \alpha h) - f(x_0)] \\ &\leq \langle g(x_0 + \alpha h), h \rangle \end{aligned}$$

故取  $\alpha \downarrow 0$ , 有  $f'(x_0; h) = \langle g(x_0), h \rangle$  对  $\forall h \in \mathbb{R}^n$

取  $h = e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n$  知,  $f(x)$  在  $x_0$  处有连续的偏导数,

故  $f(x)$  在  $x_0$  处可微, 由 lemma 3.1.7

$$g(x_0) = \nabla f(x_0)$$



lemma 3.1.11 设  $f$  在有界集  $S \subseteq \text{dom} f \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$  上是闭凸的,

考虑线性算子  $A(x) = Ax + b : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$

则  $\phi(x) = f(A(x))$  在  $\mathcal{Q} = \{x \mid A(x) \in S\}$  上是闭凸的,

且对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$ ,  $\partial f(A(x))$  非空, 则

$$\partial \phi(x) = A^T \partial f(A(x))$$

证明: Thm 3.1.6 证明了第一部分, 令  $y_0 = A(x_0)$ , 则

对  $\forall p \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi'(x_0, p) &= f'(x_0; A p) \\
&= \max \{ \langle g, A p \rangle \mid g \in \partial f(x_0) \} \\
&= \max \{ \langle \bar{g}, p \rangle \mid \bar{g} \in A^T \partial f(x_0) \}
\end{aligned}$$

故  $\partial \phi(x_0) = A^T \partial f(x_0)$  □

Thm 3.1.12 令  $f_1, f_2$  是闭凸的,  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2 \geq 0$ , 则

$f(x) = \alpha_1 f_1(x) + \alpha_2 f_2(x)$  也是闭凸的, 且

$$\partial f(x) = \alpha_1 \partial f_1(x) + \alpha_2 \partial f_2(x)$$

对  $\forall x \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f) = \text{int}(\text{dom} f_1) \cap \text{int}(\text{dom} f_2)$

证明:  $f(x)$  的闭凸性在 Thm 3.1.5

考虑  $x_0 \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$ , 由 Thm 3.1.15  $x_0$  处次微分有界

对  $\forall p \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有:

$$\begin{aligned}
f'(x_0; p) &= \alpha_1 f'_1(x_0; p) + \alpha_2 f'_2(x_0; p) \\
&= \max \{ \langle g_1, \alpha_1 p \rangle \mid g_1 \in \partial f_1(x_0) \} \\
&\quad + \max \{ \langle g_2, \alpha_2 p \rangle \mid g_2 \in \partial f_2(x_0) \}
\end{aligned}$$

$$= \max \{ \langle \alpha_1 g_1 + \alpha_2 g_2, p \rangle \mid g_1 \in \partial f_1(x_0), g_2 \in \partial f_2(x_0) \}$$

$$= \max \{ \langle g, p \rangle \mid g \in \alpha_1 \partial f_1(x_0) + \alpha_2 \partial f_2(x_0) \}$$

故  $\partial f(x) = \alpha_1 \partial f_1(x) + \alpha_2 \partial f_2(x)$  □

lemma 3.1.13 令  $f_i, i=1, \dots, m$  是闭凸的, 则  $f(x) =$

$\max_{1 \leq i \leq m} f_i(x)$  是闭凸的, 且对  $\forall x \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f) = \bigcap_{i=1}^m \text{int}(\text{dom} f_i)$ ,

$$\partial f(x) = \text{Conv} \{ \partial f_i(x) \mid i \in I(x) \}$$

$$I(x) = \{ i : f_i(x) = f(x) \}$$

证明:  $f$  的闭凸性在 Thm 3.1.15 已经证明

设  $I(x) = \{1, \dots, k\}$ , 下证  $f'(x; p) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x; p)$

对  $i \notin I(x)$ , 则由  $x \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$ ,  $f_i(x)$  在  $x$  处连续,

$\forall i=1, \dots, m$ , 故  $i \notin I(x)$  的  $f_i$  对  $f'(x; p)$  没有影响

$$\begin{aligned} \liminf_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(x+\alpha p) - f(x)] &\geq \liminf_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{f_i(x+\alpha p) - f_i(x)}{\alpha} \\ &= \liminf_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{f_i(x+\alpha p) - f_i(x)}{\alpha} = f'_i(x; p), \forall i \in I(x) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } f'(x; p) \geq \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x; p)$$

下证  $f'(x; p) \leq \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x; p)$ , 用反证法, 设

$$\liminf_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{f(x+\alpha p) - f(x)}{\alpha} > \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x; p)$$

则  $\exists \varepsilon > 0, \exists \{\alpha_n\} \downarrow 0$ , s.t.

$$\frac{f(x+\alpha_n p) - f(x)}{\alpha_n} \geq \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x; p) + \varepsilon$$

$$\text{设 } j_n \in \text{Argmax}_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x+\alpha_n p)$$

由  $j_n \in \{1, \dots, k\}$  是有限集, 故  $\exists \{\alpha_n\}$  的子列  $\{\alpha_{v_n}\}$ , s.t.

$$\text{对 } \forall n \in \mathbb{N}, j_{v_n} = j^*$$

$$\frac{f_{\partial^*}(x + \alpha v_n p) - f_{\partial^*}(x)}{\alpha v_n} \geq \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x; p) + \varepsilon$$

取  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , 有  $f'_{\partial^*}(x; p) \geq \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x; p) + \varepsilon$  矛盾!

故  $f'(x; p) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x; p)$

$$f'(x; p) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} f'_i(x; p)$$

$$= \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} \max \{ \langle g_i, p \rangle \mid g_i \in \partial f_i(x) \}$$

注意到

$$\max_{1 \leq i \leq k} a_i = \max \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i a_i \mid \{\lambda_i\} \in \Delta_k \right\}$$

$\Delta_k = \{ \lambda_i \geq 0, \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i = 1 \}$  是  $k$  阶单纯形

$$\text{则 } f'(x; p) = \max_{\{\lambda_i\} \in \Delta_k} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i \max \{ \langle g_i, p \rangle \mid g_i \in \partial f_i(x) \} \right\}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \max \left\{ \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i g_i, p \right\rangle \mid g_i \in \partial f_i(x), \{\lambda_i\} \in \Delta_k \right\} \\
&= \max \left\{ \langle g, p \rangle \mid g = \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i g_i, g_i \in \partial f_i(x), \{\lambda_i\} \in \Delta_k \right\} \\
&= \max \left\{ \langle g, p \rangle \mid g \in \text{Conv} \{ \partial f_i(x), i \in I(x) \} \right\}
\end{aligned}$$



Lemma 3.1.14 令  $\Delta$  是任意集合,  $f(x) = \sup \{ \phi(x, y) \mid y \in \Delta \}$ .

设对  $\forall y \in \Delta$ ,  $\phi(\cdot, y)$  是关于第一个变量在  $\mathcal{Q}$  上闭凸的,

则  $f$  是  $\hat{\mathcal{Q}}$  上的闭凸 func, 其中

$$\hat{\mathcal{Q}} = \left\{ x \in \mathcal{Q} \mid \sup_{y \in \Delta} \phi(x, y) < +\infty \right\}$$

且对  $\forall x \in \hat{\mathcal{Q}}$ , 有

$$\partial_{\hat{\mathcal{Q}}} f(x) \cong \text{Conv} \left\{ \partial_{\mathcal{Q}, x} \phi(x, y) \mid y \in I(x) \right\}$$

$$I(x) = \left\{ y \in \Delta \mid \phi(x, y) = f(x) \right\}$$

证明:  $f$  的闭凸性在 Thm 3.1.8 上证明过, '

对  $\forall x \in \hat{Q}, y_0 \in I(x_0), g_0 \in \partial_{\hat{Q}, x} \phi(x_0, y_0)$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &\geq \phi(x, y_0) \geq \phi(x_0, y_0) + \langle g_0, x - x_0 \rangle \\ &= f(x_0) + \langle g_0, x - x_0 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

跟据 Carathéodory's 定理即证



### Example 3.1.5

$$\textcircled{1} f(x) = (x)_+ = \max\{x, 0\} = \max_{g \in [0, 1]} gx$$

$$\text{故 } f(y) = \max\{y, 0\} \geq gy = f(0) + \langle g, y \rangle, \quad g \in [0, 1]$$

故  $[0, 1] \subset \partial f(0)$ , 且当  $g < 0$  时, 取  $y < 0$

$$\text{则 } f(y) < f(0) + \langle g, y \rangle$$

当  $g > 1$  时, 取  $y > 0$ , 则  $f(y) < f(0) + \langle g, y \rangle$ , 故

$$[0, 1] = \partial f(0)$$

□

② 对  $\forall i = 1, \dots, m$ ,  $|\langle a_i, x \rangle|$  是闭凸 func

case 1: 当  $\langle a_i, x \rangle > 0$  时, 在  $x$  处可微

$$\partial |\langle a_i, x \rangle| = \nabla_x \langle a_i, x \rangle = a_i$$

case 2: 当  $\langle a_i, x \rangle < 0$  时, 在  $x$  处可微

$$\partial |\langle a_i, x \rangle| = -\nabla_x \langle a_i, x \rangle = -a_i$$

Case 3:  $\exists \langle a_i, x \rangle = 0$  时,  $g \in \partial |\langle a_i, x \rangle| \Leftrightarrow$

对  $\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,

$$|\langle a_i, y \rangle| \geq \langle g, y - x \rangle \quad (*)$$

由  $\langle a_i, x \rangle = 0$ , 可以扩展成  $\mathbb{R}^n$ -组基  $\{a_i, x, e_3, \dots, e_n\}$

$$\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n, y = k_1 a_i + k_2 x + k_3 e_3 + \dots + k_n e_n$$

$$(*) \Leftrightarrow |k_1| \|a_i\|_2^2 \geq \langle g, k_1 a_i + \underbrace{(k_2 - 1)}_{\mathbb{R}^2} x + k_3 e_3 + \dots + k_n e_n \rangle \quad (1)$$

对  $\forall k_1, k_2, k_3, \dots, k_n$  恒成立, 故  $g = k a_i$ , 若不然

不失一般性地设  $g = k a_i + p e_3$ , 则 (1) 变为:

$$|k| \|a_i\|_2^2 \geq k \|a_i\|_2^2 + \underbrace{p k_3 \|e_3\|_2^2}_{\text{可以任意大}} \quad \text{对 } \forall k, k_3 \text{ 成立}$$

显然矛盾. 故  $g = k a_i$

$$(*) \Leftrightarrow |k| \|a_i\|_2^2 \geq k \|a_i\|_2^2 \quad \text{对 } \forall k \text{ 成立}$$

$$\text{故 } k \in [-1, 1], g \in [-a_i, a_i]$$

$$\text{故 } \partial |\langle a_i, x \rangle| = [-a_i, a_i]$$

由 lemma 3.1.12

$$\partial f(x) = \sum_{i \in I_+(x)} a_i - \sum_{i \in I_-(x)} a_i + \sum_{i \in I_0(x)} [-a_i, a_i]$$

□

③  $f(x) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} x^{(i)}$ , 定义  $I(x) = \{i : x^{(i)} = f(x)\}$

由 lemma 3.1.13

$$\partial f(x) = \text{Conv} \{ \partial f_i(x) \mid i \in I(x) \}$$

其中  $f_i(x) = x^{(i)}$  是可微的,  $f_i(x) = \langle e_i, x \rangle$

$$\partial f_i(x) = \nabla f_i(x) = e_i$$

$$\text{故 } \partial f(x) = \text{Conv} \{ e_i \mid i \in I(x) \}$$

④  $f(x) = \|x\|$ ,  $\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 当  $x=0$  时

$$\|y\| \geq \langle g, y \rangle$$

① 令  $y=g$  时  $\|g\| \geq \|g\|^2 \Rightarrow \|g\| \leq 1$  (必要性)

②  $\|g\| \leq 1$  时  $\langle g, y \rangle \leq \|g\| \|y\| \leq \|y\|$  (充分性)

$$\text{故 } \partial f(0) = B_2(0,1) = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \|x\| \leq 1\}$$

当  $x \neq 0$  时, 是可微的  $\partial f(x) = \left\{ \frac{x}{\|x\|} \right\}$

⑤ 由②

$x=0$  时

$$\partial f(0) = \sum_{i=1}^n [-e_i, e_i] = B_n(0,1)$$

$x \neq 0$  时

$$\partial f(x) = \sum_{i \in I_+(x)} e_i - \sum_{i \in I_-(x)} e_i + \sum_{i \in I_0(x)} [-e_i, e_i]$$

⑥ Minkowski function

$$\psi_Q(x) = \min_{\tau \geq 0} \{ \tau : x \in \tau Q \}$$

$Q$  是有界闭凸集,  $0 \in \text{int } Q$

polar 集  $P_Q = \{g \in \mathbb{R}^n : \langle g, x \rangle \leq 1, \forall x \in Q\}$

当  $x=0$  时,  $g \in \partial\psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(0) \Leftrightarrow \forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$

$$\psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y) \geq \langle g, y \rangle$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \langle g, \frac{y}{\psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y)} \rangle \leq 1 \quad \forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \langle g, z \rangle \leq 1 \quad \forall z \in \partial\mathcal{Q}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \langle g, x \rangle \leq 1 \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

$$\text{令 } A = \{g \in \mathbb{R}^n : \langle g, z \rangle \leq 1, \forall z \in \partial\mathcal{Q}\}$$

$$B = \{g \in \mathbb{R}^n : \langle g, x \rangle \leq 1, \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}\}$$

$A \supseteq B$  是显然的, 下证  $B \subseteq A$ , 若不然, 设  $\exists g_0 \in A$  但  $g_0 \notin B$

故  $\exists x_0 \in \text{int}\mathcal{Q}$ , s.t.  $\langle g_0, x_0 \rangle > 1$

$$\text{但 } \langle g_0, \frac{x_0}{\psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(x_0)} \rangle \leq 1 \Rightarrow \psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(x_0) > 1$$

与  $x_0 \in \text{int}\mathcal{Q}$  矛盾

故  $\partial\psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(0) = \mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}$

下证  $\psi_{\otimes}(x) = \operatorname{Argmax}_{g \in \mathcal{P}_{\otimes}} \langle g, x \rangle$

① 先证  $\psi_{\otimes}(x)$  的次可列可加性  $\psi_{\otimes}(x+y) \leq \psi_{\otimes}(x) + \psi_{\otimes}(y)$

设  $\psi_{\otimes}(x) = a_1, \psi_{\otimes}(y) = a_2 \Rightarrow a_1^{-1}x \in \otimes, a_2^{-1}y \in \otimes$

$$\frac{a_1}{a_1+a_2} a_1^{-1}x + \frac{a_2}{a_1+a_2} a_2^{-1}y \in \otimes$$

$$x \in a_1 \otimes \Rightarrow a_1^{-1}x \in \otimes$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{x+y}{a_1+a_2} \in \otimes \Rightarrow x+y \in (a_1+a_2) \otimes$$

$$\psi_{\otimes}(x+y) \leq a_1+a_2 = \psi_{\otimes}(x) + \psi_{\otimes}(y)$$

② 证明  $g$  是次梯度  $\Rightarrow g \in \mathcal{P}_{\otimes}$

$$\psi_{\otimes}(x) + \langle g, y-x \rangle \leq \psi_{\otimes}(y) = \psi_{\otimes}(y-x+x)$$

$$\leq \psi_{\otimes}(x) + \psi_{\otimes}(y-x)$$

$$\Rightarrow \langle g, y-x \rangle \leq \psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y-x) \quad \forall y$$

$$\Rightarrow \langle g, y \rangle \leq \psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y) \quad \forall y$$

$$\Rightarrow \langle g, \frac{y}{\psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y)} \rangle \leq 1 \Rightarrow \langle g, z \rangle \leq 1 \quad \forall z \in \partial \mathcal{Q}$$

$$\Rightarrow g \in \mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}} = \{g \in \mathbb{R}^n : \langle g, x \rangle \leq 1, \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}\}$$

③ 引理 (Schneider 1993)

记  $\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(x) = \sup_{\eta \in \mathcal{Q}} \langle \eta, x \rangle$  是  $\mathcal{Q}$  的 support function (P151)

$$\text{则 } \forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad \psi_{\mathcal{Q}}(y) = \zeta_{\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}}(y)$$

④ 由引理,

$$\zeta_{\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}}(y) \geq \zeta_{\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}}(x) + \langle g, y-x \rangle \quad \forall y$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \max_{\zeta \in \mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}} \langle y, \zeta \rangle - \langle g, y \rangle \geq \max_{\zeta \in \mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}} \langle x, \zeta \rangle - \langle g, x \rangle \quad (*)$$

case 1:  $g = \text{Argmax}_{g \in \mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{Q}}} \langle g, x \rangle$ , 则右边 = 0

$$(*) \Leftrightarrow \max_{\xi \in P_\theta} \langle y, \xi \rangle \geq \langle g, y \rangle \quad \text{由 } g \in P_\theta, \text{ 显然成立}$$

$$\text{故 } \operatorname{Argmax}_{g \in P_\theta} \langle g, x \rangle \in \partial \psi_\theta(x)$$

case 2  $g \neq \operatorname{Argmax}_{g \in P_\theta} \langle g, x \rangle$ , 且  $g \in \partial P_\theta$

则右边严格  $> 0$ , 左边:

$$\max_{\xi \in P_\theta} \langle \xi, y \rangle - \langle g, y \rangle$$

故  $\exists y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , s.t.  $\max_{\xi \in P_\theta} \langle \xi, y \rangle = \langle g, y \rangle$ , 即左边 = 0 矛盾

$$\text{故 } \partial P_\theta \setminus \{g^*\} \not\subset \partial \psi_\theta(x)$$

$$g^* = \operatorname{Argmax}_{g \in P_\theta} \langle g, x \rangle$$

case 3:  $g \notin \partial P_\theta$ , 设  $\tilde{g} = kg \in \partial P_\theta, k > 1$

$$(*) \Leftrightarrow \max_{\xi \in P_\theta} \langle y, \xi \rangle - \langle \tilde{g}/k, y \rangle \geq \max_{\xi \in P_\theta} \langle x, \xi \rangle - \langle \tilde{g}/k, x \rangle$$

取  $y = \frac{1}{k}x$ , 则

$$\max_{\zeta \in P_{\Theta}} \langle x/k, \zeta \rangle - \langle x/k, \hat{\zeta}/k \rangle \geq \max_{\zeta \in P_{\Theta}} \langle x, \zeta \rangle - \langle x, \hat{\zeta}/k \rangle$$

$$\triangleq A = \max_{\zeta \in P_{\Theta}} \langle x, \zeta \rangle - \langle x, \hat{\zeta}/k \rangle, \text{ 则上式 } (\Rightarrow)$$

$$A/k \geq A, A > 0$$

$(\Rightarrow) k \leq 1$  与  $k > 1$  矛盾, 故  $\forall g \in P_{\Theta}^{\circ}, g \notin \partial \psi_{\Theta}(x)$

综上:  $\partial \psi_{\Theta}(x) = \text{Argmax}_{g \in P_{\Theta}} \langle g, x \rangle$



Def 3.1.7  $f$  称为齐次的 ( $p > 0$ ), 若  $\text{dom} f$

是锥且  $f(\tau x) = \tau^p f(x) \quad \forall x \in \text{dom} f, \forall \tau \geq 0$

Thm 3.1.21 令  $f$  是凸的、次可微的, 若齐次度  $p \geq 1$ ,

则  $\langle g, x \rangle = p f(x), \forall x \in \text{dom} f, \forall g \in \partial f(x)$

证明: 令  $x \in \text{dom} f, g \in \partial f(x)$ , 则对  $\forall \tau \geq 0$ , 有

$$\tau^p f(x) = f(\tau x) \geq f(x) + (\tau - 1) \langle g, x \rangle$$

$$\text{当 } \tau > 1 \text{ 时, } \frac{\tau^p - 1}{\tau - 1} f(x) \geq \langle g, x \rangle$$

$$\text{取 } \tau \downarrow 1, \text{ 则 } p f(x) \geq \langle g, x \rangle$$

$$\text{当 } \tau < 1 \text{ 时, } \frac{1 - \tau^p}{1 - \tau} f(x) \leq \langle g, x \rangle, \text{ 故取 } \tau \uparrow 1, \text{ 有}$$

$$p f(x) \leq \langle g, x \rangle$$

$$\text{故 } p f(x) = \langle g, x \rangle$$

□

对 degree=1 的齐次 func:

$$\langle g, x \rangle = f(x), \forall x \in \text{dom} f, \forall g \in \partial f(x)$$

则设  $\text{dom} f = \mathbb{R}^n$ , 则对  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$f(x) = f'(0, x) = \max_g \{ \langle g, x \rangle : g \in \partial f(0) \}$$

对  $f(x) = \|x\|$ , 有

$$\|x\| = \max_g \{ \langle g, x \rangle : \|g\|_* \leq 1 \}$$

$$\text{故 } \partial \|x\| \Big|_{x=0} = \{ g \in \mathbb{R}^n : \|g\|_* \leq 1 \}$$

Lemma 3.1.5 设  $f$  是凸的, 齐次的 (degree=1),

$\text{dom} f = \mathbb{R}^n$ , 则对  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$\partial f(x) = \{ g \in \partial f(0) : \langle g, x \rangle = f(x) \}$$

证明:

$$\text{令 } G(x) = \{ g \in \partial f(0) : \langle g, x \rangle = f(x) \}$$

若  $g \in \partial f(x)$ , 则对  $\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有:

$$f(y) \geq f(x) + \langle g, y-x \rangle \stackrel{(3.1.40)}{=} \langle g, y \rangle$$

故  $g \in \partial f(0)$ , 由假设  $g \in \partial f(x) \Rightarrow \langle g, x \rangle = f(x)$ , 故  $g \in G(x)$

若  $g \in G(x)$ , 则对  $\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$f(y) \geq \langle g, y \rangle = f(x) + \langle g, y-x \rangle$$

故  $g \in \partial f(x)$



注: 用该引理可以立刻得到例 3.1.5 (6)

Thm 3.1.22 令  $\mathcal{Q}_1, \mathcal{Q}_2$  是有界闭凸集,  $\mathcal{Q} = \mathcal{Q}_1 \cap \mathcal{Q}_2$  有非空内部, 则

$$\xi_{\mathcal{Q}}(x) = \min_{y \in \mathbb{R}^n} \{ \xi_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(x+y) + \xi_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(-y) \}, x \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

证明: 首先证明优化问题是良定义的, 若  $g \in \mathcal{Q}_1 \cap \mathcal{Q}_2$ ,

则对  $\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$\phi_x(y) \doteq \xi_{\mathcal{Q}}(x+y) + \xi_{\mathcal{Q}}(-y) \geq \langle g, x+y \rangle + \langle g, -y \rangle = \langle g, x \rangle$$

故  $\phi_x(y)$  是下方有界的, 设  $\phi_x^* = \inf_{y \in \mathbb{R}^n} \phi_x(y)$ , 则  $\phi_x^* \geq \zeta_{\otimes}(x)$

考虑序列  $\{y_k\}$ , s.t.  $\phi_x(y_k) \rightarrow \phi_x^*$

注:  $\phi_x(y) = \zeta_{\otimes}(x+y) + \zeta_{\otimes}(-y)$  是连续的, 由  $\zeta_{\otimes}(y)$

是闭凸func, 故  $\zeta_{\otimes}(y)$  是连续的 (Thm 3.1.11), 故  $\zeta_{\otimes}(x+y)$

$\zeta_{\otimes}(-y)$  都是连续的

Case 1: 当  $\{y_k\}$  有界, 则显然  $\phi_x^*$  是可达的

Case 2: 当  $\{y_k\}$  无界, 有  $t_k = \|y_k\| \rightarrow \infty$ , 令  $\bar{y}_k = \frac{1}{t_k} y_k$

$$\text{则 } \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} [\zeta_{\otimes_1}(\frac{1}{t_k}x + \bar{y}_k) + \zeta_{\otimes_2}(-\bar{y}_k)]$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} [\frac{1}{t_k} \zeta_{\otimes_1}(x + y_k) + \frac{1}{t_k} \zeta_{\otimes_2}(-y_k)] \quad (\text{齐次性})$$

$$= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{t_k} \phi_x(y_k) = 0$$

由  $\{\bar{y}_k\}$  有界, 不妨设  $\bar{y}_k \rightarrow \bar{y}$ ,  $\|\bar{y}\| = 1$

$$\text{由 } \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} [\zeta_{\otimes_1}(\frac{1}{t_k}x + \bar{y}_k) + \zeta_{\otimes_2}(-\bar{y}_k)]$$

$$= \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(\bar{y}) + \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(-\bar{y}) = 0 \quad (\text{连续性})$$

$$\text{故 } \langle g_1, \bar{y} \rangle \leq \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(\bar{y}) = -\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_2}(-\bar{y}) \leq \langle g_2, \bar{y} \rangle$$

$$\forall g_1 \in \mathcal{Q}_1, \forall g_2 \in \mathcal{Q}_2$$

$$\text{故 } \langle g, \bar{y} \rangle = \text{const}, \text{ 对 } \forall g \in \mathcal{Q}_1 \cap \mathcal{Q}_2 = \mathcal{Q}$$

即  $\mathcal{Q}$  是  $\mathcal{H} = \{g : \langle g, \bar{y} \rangle = \text{const}\}$  的子集, 与  $\mathcal{Q}$  有非空内部矛盾. 故 case 2 不成立, 优化问题 well-defined

记  $y^*$  是 (3.1.44) 的最优值点, 由 Thm 3.1.20

$$0 \in \partial \phi_x(y^*) = \partial \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(x+y^*) + \partial \zeta_{-\mathcal{Q}_2}(y^*)$$

求  $\partial \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(0)$ : 对  $\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(y) \geq \langle g, y \rangle$

$$\text{则 } \partial \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}}(0) = \mathcal{Q}$$

故存在  $g$ , s.t.

$$g \in \mathcal{Q}_1, \langle g, x+y^* \rangle = \zeta_{\mathcal{Q}_1}(x+y^*)$$

$$-g \in -\mathcal{Q}_2, \langle -g, y^* \rangle = \zeta_{-\mathcal{Q}_2}(y^*)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{故 } \phi_x^* &= \zeta_{\Theta_1}(x+y^*) + \zeta_{\Theta_2}(-y^*) \\
&= \zeta_{\Theta_1}(x+y^*) + \zeta_{-\Theta_2}(y^*) \\
&= \langle g, x \rangle
\end{aligned}$$

由  $g \in \Theta$ , 故  $\phi_x^* \leq \zeta_{\Theta}(x)$ , 綜上  $\zeta_{\Theta}(x) = \phi_x^*$  □

Lemma 3.1.16 考虑  $\psi(g) = \max_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \langle \lambda, g \rangle$ , 其中  $\Lambda \subset \mathbb{R}_+^m$

是有界闭凸集,  $F(x) = (f_1(x), \dots, f_m(x))$ ,  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  有可微凸分支.

则  $f(x) = \psi(F(x))$  是凸的, 且

$$\partial f(x) = \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda^{(i)} \nabla f_i(x) : \lambda \in \text{Argmax}_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \langle \lambda, F(x) \rangle \right\}$$

证明:  $\psi(\cdot)$  是单调的: 设  $g_1 \leq g_2$  (按分量  $\leq$ ), 则

$$\psi(g_1) = \max_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \langle \lambda, g_1 \rangle = \langle \lambda^*, g_1 \rangle \leq \langle \lambda^*, g_2 \rangle \leq \max_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \langle \lambda, g_2 \rangle = \psi(g_2)$$

故对  $\forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有:

$$f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) \leq \psi(\alpha F(x) + (1-\alpha)F(y))$$

$$\leq \alpha f(x) + (1-\alpha)f(y)$$

定义  $F'(x) = (\nabla f_1(x), \dots, \nabla f_m(x)) \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$ , 且对  $\forall h \in \mathbb{R}^n$

$$f'(x; h) = \underbrace{\psi'(F(x); (F'(x))^T h)}_{\text{与 §3.1.6 节方法一致}}$$

$$= \max \{ \langle \lambda, (F'(x))^T h \rangle : \lambda \in \partial \psi(F(x)) \}$$

$$= \max \{ \langle \lambda, (F'(x))^T h \rangle : \lambda \in \partial \psi(0), \langle \lambda, F(x) \rangle = \psi(F(x)) \}$$



$$\forall y \in \mathbb{R}^n, \psi(y) \geq \psi(0) + \langle g, y \rangle = \langle g, y \rangle$$

故易证  $\partial \psi(0) = \Lambda$

$$= \max \{ \langle \lambda, (F'(x))^T h \rangle : \lambda \in \underset{\lambda \in \Lambda}{\text{Argmax}} \langle \lambda, F(x) \rangle \}$$

$$= \max \{ \langle F'(x) \lambda, h \rangle : \lambda \in \underset{\lambda \in \Lambda}{\text{Argmax}} \langle \lambda, F(x) \rangle \}$$

$$= \max \{ \langle g, h \rangle : g = F'(x) \lambda, \lambda \in \underset{\lambda \in \Lambda}{\text{Argmax}} \langle \lambda, F(x) \rangle \}$$

$$\text{而 } f'(x; h) = \max \{ \langle g, h \rangle : g \in \partial f(x) \}$$

故由推论3.1.5 (ii)

$$\partial f(x) = \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda^{(i)} \nabla f_i(x) : \lambda \in \operatorname{Argmax}_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \langle \lambda, F(x) \rangle \right\}$$



Lemma 3.1.7  $F$  是  $\mathbb{R}^m$  上可微凸的单调 func.  $f_i$  在

开的凸集  $\mathcal{Q}$  上凸, 则

$$\phi(x) = F(f_1(x), \dots, f_m(x))$$

在  $\mathcal{Q}$  上凸, 且

$$\partial \phi(x) = \sum_{i=1}^m \nabla_i F(f(x)) \cdot \partial f_i(x), \quad x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

其中  $f(x) = (f_1(x), \dots, f_m(x))^T \in \mathbb{R}^m$

证明: 对  $\forall x, y \in \mathcal{Q}, \alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) &\leq F(\alpha f(x) + (1-\alpha)f(y)) \\ &\leq \alpha \phi(x) + (1-\alpha)\phi(y) \end{aligned}$$

对  $\forall p \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
\phi'(x; p) &= \sum_{i=1}^m \nabla_i F(f(x)) f_i'(x; p) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^m \nabla_i F(f(x)) \xi_{\partial_i f_i(x)}(p) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^m \nabla_i F(f(x)) \partial_i f_i(x)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{故 } \partial \phi(x) = \sum_{i=1}^m \nabla_i F(f(x)) \partial_i f_i(x)$$



推论 3.1.7 对  $\forall f_i, i=1, \dots, m$ , 是凸的, 则

$$\phi(x) = \ln \left( \sum_{i=1}^m e^{f_i(x)} \right)$$

是凸 func

证明: lemma 3.1.7 的直接应用

## § 3.1.7 Optimality Conditions

$$\min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \left\{ \tilde{f}(x) = f(x) + \psi(x) \right\} \quad (3.1.48)$$

$\mathcal{Q}$  是闭凸集,  $f \in C^1(\mathcal{Q})$  是连续可微凸func,  $\psi$  是  $\mathcal{Q}$  上的闭凸func

Thm 3.1.23  $x^*$  是 (3.1.48) 的解  $\Leftrightarrow \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$

$$\langle \nabla f(x^*), x - x^* \rangle + \psi(x) \geq \psi(x^*) \quad (3.1.49)$$

证明:

$$\begin{aligned} (\Leftarrow) \quad \tilde{f}(x) &= f(x) + \psi(x) \\ &\geq f(x^*) + \langle \nabla f(x^*), x - x^* \rangle + \psi(x) \\ &\geq f(x^*) + \psi(x^*) \\ &= \tilde{f}(x^*) \end{aligned}$$

( $\Rightarrow$ ) 设  $\exists x \in \mathcal{Q}$ , s.t.

$$\langle \nabla f(x^*), x - x^* \rangle + \Psi(x) < \Psi(x^*)$$

由  $\lim_{\alpha \downarrow 0} \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)x^*) - f(x^*)] = \langle \nabla f(x^*), x - x^* \rangle$

故对充分小的  $\alpha$ , 有

$$\frac{1}{\alpha} [f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)x^*) - f(x^*)] < \Psi(x^*) - \Psi(x)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)x^*) < f(x^*) + \alpha [\Psi(x^*) - \Psi(x)]$$

$$= \tilde{f}(x^*) + \alpha [\Psi(x^*) - \Psi(x)] - \Psi(x^*)$$

$$\leq \tilde{f}(x^*) - \Psi(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)x^*)$$

故  $\tilde{f}(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)x^*) < \tilde{f}(x^*)$ , 矛盾



注:  $\Psi \in C^1(\mathcal{Q})$  时, (2.1.2)  $\Rightarrow$  (3.1.49) 是显然的

(3.1.49)  $\Rightarrow$  (2.1.2) 只需重复一遍 (2.1.2) 的证明

$$(3.1.49) \Leftrightarrow -\nabla f(x^*) \in \partial_{\mathcal{Q}} \Psi(x^*)$$

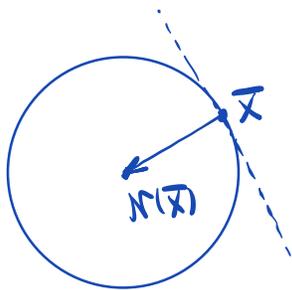
$$\min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f(x)$$

$\mathcal{Q} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  是闭凸集,  $f$  是闭凸func,  $\text{dom} f \supset \mathcal{Q}$

对  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 定义 normal cone: 对  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{Q}$

$$\mathcal{N}(\bar{x}) = \{g \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \langle g, x - \bar{x} \rangle \geq 0, \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}\}$$

是闭凸集, 由  $\mathcal{N}(\bar{x}) = \bigcap_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \{g: \langle g, x - \bar{x} \rangle \geq 0\}$   
 闭凸集



$$\mathcal{N}(\bar{x}) = \{0\} \Leftrightarrow \bar{x} \in \text{int} \mathcal{Q}$$

$$(\Leftarrow) \bar{x} \in \text{int} \mathcal{Q} \Leftrightarrow \exists \delta, \text{ s.t. } \mathcal{S}(\bar{x}, \delta) \subset \mathcal{Q}$$

$$\text{故 } \mathcal{N}(\bar{x}) = 0$$

$$(\Rightarrow) \text{ 设 } \mathcal{N}(\bar{x}) = \{0\} \text{ 且 } \bar{x} \in \partial \mathcal{Q}, \text{ 则}$$

由 Thm 3.1.14,  $\exists \mathcal{Q}$  的支持  $\mathcal{H}(g, \gamma)$ , 且  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{H}(g, \gamma)$

即  $\langle g, x \rangle \leq \gamma \leq \langle g, \bar{x} \rangle$ , 对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 且  $g \neq 0$

$$\Leftrightarrow \langle g, x - \bar{x} \rangle \leq 0, \text{ 对 } \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}, \text{ 且 } g \neq 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow -g \in \mathcal{N}(\bar{x}), \text{ 且 } g \neq 0, \text{ 与 } \mathcal{N}(\bar{x}) \text{ 矛盾}$$

tangent cone

$$\mathcal{T}(\bar{x}) = \{ p \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \langle g, p \rangle \geq 0, \forall g \in \mathcal{N}(\bar{x}) \}$$

Lemma 3.1.18 令  $\bar{x} \in \partial \mathcal{Q}$ , 则  $\mathcal{Q} - \bar{x} \subset \mathcal{T}(\bar{x})$ , 且

$$\mathcal{T}(\bar{x}) = \text{cl}(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{Q} - \bar{x}))$$

证明: 由定义:  $\langle g, x - \bar{x} \rangle \geq 0 \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}, g \in \mathcal{N}(\bar{x})$

故  $\mathcal{Q} - \bar{x} \subset \mathcal{T}(\bar{x})$ , 由  $\mathcal{T}(\bar{x})$  的闭性, 故

$$\bar{\mathcal{K}} = \text{cl}(\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{Q} - \bar{x})) \subseteq \mathcal{T}(\bar{x})$$

设  $\exists \bar{p} \in \mathcal{T}(\bar{x})$ , 但  $\bar{p} \notin \bar{\mathcal{K}}$ , 则由推论 3.1.4,  $\exists \bar{g}$  强分离  $\bar{p}$  和  $\bar{\mathcal{K}}$

i.e.  $\langle \bar{g}, \bar{p} \rangle < \gamma \leq \langle \bar{g}, \alpha(x - \bar{x}) \rangle, \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}, \alpha \geq 0$

$$\langle \bar{g}, x - \bar{x} \rangle \geq \frac{\gamma}{\alpha}, \alpha \rightarrow +\infty \Rightarrow \langle \bar{g}, x - \bar{x} \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

故  $\bar{g} \in \mathcal{N}(\bar{x})$ , 取  $\alpha = 0$ , 取  $\gamma \leq 0$ , 故  $\langle \bar{g}, \bar{p} \rangle < 0$ ,

故  $\bar{p} \notin \mathcal{T}(\bar{x})$ , 矛盾



考虑 P152 页例 5 :

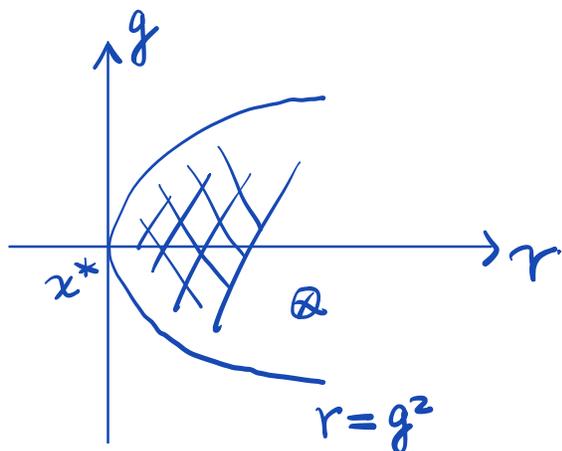
$$\psi(g, r) = \begin{cases} 0 & , g=0, r=0 \\ \frac{\|g\|^2}{2r} & , r>0 \end{cases}$$

$$\text{dom } \psi = (\mathbb{R} \times \{r > 0\}) \cup (0, 0)$$

显然  $\text{Argmin } \psi(g, r) = (0, 0)$

$$\mathcal{Q} = \{(g, r) : r \geq \|g\|^2\}$$

$$\text{故 } \mathcal{N}(x^*) = \{kx : k \in \mathbb{R}^+, x = (1, 0)\}$$



$$\mathcal{T}(x^*) = \{r \geq 0\} \times \mathbb{R}$$

$$\text{故 } p = (0, 1)^T \in \mathcal{T}(x^*)$$

但  $f(x^* + tp)$ ,  $t \neq 0$  没有定义, 故  $f'(x^*; p)$  显然不存在, 故

Lemma 3.1.19 加条件  $x^* \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$

令  $x^*$  是 (3.1.50) 的 optimal solution, 则

$$f'(x^*; p) \geq 0 \quad \forall p \in \mathcal{J}(x^*)$$

证明: 设  $\exists \bar{p} \in \mathcal{J}(x^*)$ , s.t.  $f'(x^*; \bar{p}) < 0$

由 lemma 3.1.8,  $\exists \{\alpha_k\} \subset \mathbb{R}_+$ ,  $\{x_k\} \subset \mathcal{Q}$ , s.t.

$$\bar{p} = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \alpha_k (x_k - x^*)$$

由于  $f'(x^*; \cdot)$  是连续的 (Lemma 3.1.5 在  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上是凸的)

$$\begin{aligned} 0 > f'(x^*; \bar{p}) &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \alpha_k f'(x^*; x_k - x^*) \\ &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \lim_{\beta \downarrow 0} \frac{\alpha_k}{\beta} [f(x^* + \beta(x_k - x^*)) - f(x^*)] \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

矛盾!

注：关于延拓的思路，还是 P152 页例 5

设  $x^* = (0, 0)$  邻域  $B(x^*, \delta)$  有延拓  $\tilde{\varphi}$ ，且  $\tilde{\varphi}$  是凸的

s.t.  $\tilde{\varphi}((0, \varepsilon_2))$  对  $\varepsilon_2 < \delta$  充分小时有定义

设  $x_1 = (0, \varepsilon_2)$ ， $x_2 = (\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2)$ ，其中  $\varepsilon_1 > 0$  任取

$$\text{则 } \tilde{\varphi}\left(\frac{1}{2}x_1 + \frac{1}{2}x_2\right) \leq \frac{1}{2}\tilde{\varphi}(x_1) + \frac{1}{2}\tilde{\varphi}(x_2)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \tilde{\varphi}\left(\left(\frac{1}{2}\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2\right)\right) \leq \frac{1}{2}\tilde{\varphi}(0, \varepsilon_2) + \frac{1}{2}\tilde{\varphi}(\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow 2\frac{\varepsilon_2^2}{\varepsilon_1} \leq \frac{1}{2}\tilde{\varphi}(0, \varepsilon_2) + \frac{1}{2}\frac{\varepsilon_2^2}{\varepsilon_1}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow 3\frac{\varepsilon_2^2}{\varepsilon_1} \leq \tilde{\varphi}(0, \varepsilon_2)$$

由  $\varepsilon_1 > 0$  的任意性， $\tilde{\varphi}(0, \varepsilon_2) = +\infty$ ，故矛盾



Thm 3.1.24  $x^* \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 则  $x^* \in X^* \Leftrightarrow$

$$\exists g^* \in \partial f(x^*), \text{ s.t. } \langle g^*, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

证明:

$$(\Leftarrow) f(x) \geq f(x^*) + \langle g^*, x - x^* \rangle \geq f(x^*) \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

( $\Rightarrow$ ) 设  $x^* \in X^*$  是 (3.1.50) 的最优解, 设不存在  $g \in \partial f(x^*)$ ,

$$\text{s.t. } \langle g, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0, \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

故  $\partial f(x^*) \cap N(x^*) = \emptyset$ , 考虑优化问题:

$$\min_{g_1, g_2} \left\{ \phi(g_1, g_2) = \frac{1}{2} \|g_1 - g_2\|^2 : g_1 \in \partial f(x^*), g_2 \in N(x^*) \right\}$$

由  $x^* \in \text{int}(\text{dom } f)$ , 故  $\partial f(x^*)$  是有界的, 且  $\phi(g_1, g_2)$

关于  $g_2$  是强制的, 故最优解存在, 记为  $(g_1^*, g_2^*)$

$$p^* = \phi(g_1^*, g_2^*)$$

由 Thm 2.2.9

$$\langle \nabla_{g_1} \phi(g_1^*, g_2^*), g_1 - g_1^* \rangle = \langle g_1^* - g_2^*, g_1 - g_1^* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall g_1 \in \partial f(x^*)$$

$$\langle \nabla_{g_2} \phi(g_1^*, g_2^*), g_2 - g_2^* \rangle = \langle g_2^* - g_1^*, g_2 - g_2^* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall g_2 \in \mathcal{N}(x^*)$$

显然,  $0 \in \mathcal{N}(x^*)$ ,  $\alpha g_2^* \in \mathcal{N}(x^*)$ ,  $\forall \alpha \in \mathbb{R}_+$ , 故取

$g_2 = 0$  与  $g_2 = \alpha g_2^*$ ,  $\alpha \rightarrow +\infty$ , 有

$$\langle g_2^* - g_1^*, g_2^* \rangle \leq 0 \leq \langle g_2^* - g_1^*, g_2^* \rangle$$

故令  $p^* = g_2^* - g_1^*$ , 有  $\langle p^*, g_2^* \rangle = 0$ , 故由 (3.1.58)

$$\langle g_2, p^* \rangle \geq 0, \quad \forall g_2 \in \mathcal{N}(x^*)$$

故  $p^* \in \mathcal{T}(x^*)$ ; 另一方面, 对  $\forall g_1 \in \partial f(x^*)$ , 有

$$\langle g_1, p^* \rangle \stackrel{(3.1.57)}{\leq} \langle g_1^*, p^* \rangle = \langle g_1^* - g_2^*, p^* \rangle = -2\rho^*$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{则 } f'(x^*, p^*) &= \max \{ \langle g, p^* \rangle \mid g \in \partial f(x^*) \} \\ &= \langle g_1^*, p^* \rangle = -2\rho^* < 0 \end{aligned}$$

由 Lemma 3.1.19, 推出矛盾, 故  $\exists g^* \in \partial f(x^*)$ , s.t.

$$\langle g^*, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{D}$$

注意到对  $\forall$  其它点  $x_1^* \in X^*$ , 有

$$f(x^*) = f(x_1^*) \geq f(x^*) + \langle g^*, x_1^* - x^* \rangle \geq f(x^*)$$

$$\text{故 } \langle g^*, x_1^* - x^* \rangle = 0 \Rightarrow g^* \in \partial f(x_1^*)$$

故  $g^* \in \widehat{\partial} f(x_*)$ , 又由

$$\begin{aligned} \langle g^*, x - x_1^* \rangle &= \langle g^*, (x - x^*) - (x_1^* - x^*) \rangle \\ &= \langle g^*, x - x^* \rangle - \langle g^*, x_1^* - x^* \rangle \\ &= \langle g^*, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0 \Rightarrow g^* \in \mathcal{N}(x_1^*) \end{aligned}$$



Thm 3.1.25 令  $\phi$  是闭凸func,  $\mathcal{Q}_1 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_2 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$

是两个闭凸集, s.t.  $\mathcal{Q}_1 \times \mathcal{Q}_2 \subseteq \text{int dom } \phi$ , 定义

$$f(x) = \inf_{y \in \mathcal{Q}_2} \phi(x, y)$$

则  $f$  在  $\mathcal{Q}_1$  上凸, 且若  $Y(x) = \underset{y \in \mathcal{Q}_2}{\text{Argmin}} \phi(x, y) \neq \emptyset$ , 则

$$\partial_{\mathcal{Q}_1} f(x) \supseteq \left\{ g_x \in \mathbb{R}^n : \exists g_y, \text{ s.t. } (g_x, g_y) \in \bigcap_{y \in Y(x)} \partial \phi(x, y), \right.$$

$$\left. \text{且 } \langle g_y, y - y_x \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall y \in \mathcal{Q}_2, \forall y_x \in Y(x) \right\} \quad (3.1.60)$$

证明:  $f$  的凸性是 Thm 3.1.7 的结论

先证 (3.1.60) 非空, 为此先证明

$$\left\{ g_x \in \mathbb{R}^n : \exists g_y, \text{ s.t. } (g_x, g_y) \in \partial \phi(x, y), \text{ 且} \right.$$

$$\left. \langle g_y, y - y_x \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall y \in \mathcal{Q}_2, \forall y_x \in Y(x) \right\} \neq \emptyset$$

为此证明:  $\partial_2 \phi(x, y_x) \subseteq \text{Proj}_{\mathbb{Q}_2} \partial \phi(x, y_x)$  对

$\forall x \in \mathbb{Q}_1$  成立: 对  $\forall g \in \partial_2 \phi(x, y_x)$

有  $\phi(x, y) \geq \phi(x, y_x) + \langle g, y - y_x \rangle \quad \forall y \in \mathbb{Q}_2$

想证明:  $\exists g_x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  .s.t.

$$\phi(\bar{x}, y) \geq \phi(x, y_x) + \left\langle \begin{pmatrix} g_x \\ g \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \bar{x} - x \\ y - y_x \end{pmatrix} \right\rangle$$

$$= \phi(x, y_x) + \langle g_x, \bar{x} - x \rangle + \langle g, y - y_x \rangle \quad \forall \bar{x} \in \mathbb{Q}_1 \\ \forall y \in \mathbb{Q}_2$$

只需证明:

$$\phi(\bar{x}, y) - \phi(x, y) \geq \langle g_x, \bar{x} - x \rangle \quad \forall \bar{x} \in \mathbb{Q}_1$$

故只需取  $g_x \in \partial_1 \phi(x, y)$ ,  $g_x$  与  $y$  无关了!

故  $\partial_2 \phi(x, y_x) \not\subseteq \text{Proj}_{\mathbb{Q}_2} \partial \phi(x, y_x)$

但  $\text{Proj}_{\mathbb{Q}_2} \partial \phi(x, y_x) \subseteq \partial_2 \phi(x, y_x)$  是显然的

非空性?

Corollary 3.1.8 若  $Y(x) \neq \emptyset$  对  $\forall x \in \text{dom} f$  成立,

则  $f$  是闭凸func于  $\mathbb{Q}$

证明: 由  $\partial_{\mathbb{Q}} f(x) \neq \emptyset$ , 故用 lemma 3.1.6 立刻证

□

$$\min_{x \in \mathbb{Q}} \{ f_0(x) \mid f_i(x) \leq 0, i=1, \dots, m \}$$

Thm 3.1.6 (KKT) 设  $f_i, i=0, \dots, m$  是可微

凸func,  $\text{int}(\text{dom} f_i) \supset \mathbb{Q}$ , 设存在  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{Q}$ , s.t.

$$f_i(\bar{x}) < 0, i=1, \dots, m \text{ (Slater条件)}$$

则  $x^*$  是 (3.1.61) 的最优解  $\Leftrightarrow \exists$  非负  $\lambda_i^*, i=1, \dots, m$ ,

$$\text{s.t. } \left\langle \nabla f_0(x^*) + \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i^* \nabla f_i(x^*), x - x^* \right\rangle \geq 0, \forall x \in \mathbb{Q}$$

$$\lambda_i^* f_i(x^*) = 0, \quad i=1, \dots, m$$

证明, (3.1.61) 的最优解  $\Leftrightarrow$

$$\operatorname{Argmin}_{x \in \Theta} \phi(x) = \max_x \{ f_0(x) - f^*, f_i(x), i=1, \dots, m \}$$

由 Thm 3.1.24,  $\Leftrightarrow \exists g^* \in \partial \phi(x^*), \text{ s.t.}$

$$\langle g^*, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in \Theta$$

由 lemma 3.1.13,  $g^* \in \partial f(x^*) \Leftrightarrow$

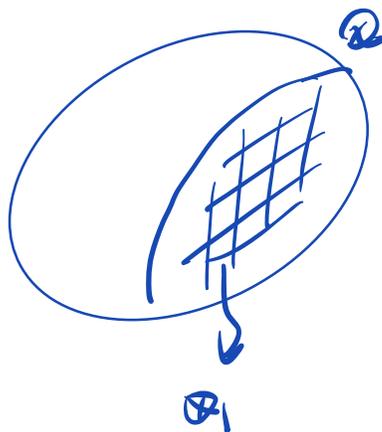
$\exists \bar{\lambda}_i, i=0, \dots, m, \text{ s.t.}$

$$\bar{\lambda}_0 \nabla f_0(x^*) + \sum_{i \in I^*} \bar{\lambda}_i \nabla f_i(x^*) = g^*$$

$$\bar{\lambda}_0 + \sum_{i \in I^*} \bar{\lambda}_i = 1$$

其中  $I^* = \{ i \in \{1, \dots, m\} : f_i(x^*) = 0 \}$

注:  $\min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \phi(x) = 0$ , 设  $\mathcal{X}_1 = \{x \in \mathcal{X} \mid f_i(x) \leq 0, i=1, \dots, m\}$



$\forall x \in \mathcal{X} \setminus \mathcal{X}_1, \exists \bar{c}, \text{s.t. } f_j(x) > 0$

故  $\phi(x) > 0$

当  $x \in \mathcal{X}$  时,  $f_i(x) \leq 0, \forall i=1, \dots, m$

且  $f_0(x) - f^* \geq 0$  (=可以取到)

故只需证  $\bar{\lambda}_0 > 0$ , 若不然,  $\bar{\lambda}_0 = 0$ , 则

$$\sum_{i \in I^*} \bar{\lambda}_i f_i(\bar{x}) \geq \sum_{i \in I^*} \bar{\lambda}_i [f_i(x^*) + \langle \nabla f_i(x^*), \bar{x} - x^* \rangle]$$

$$= \left\langle \sum_{i \in I^*} \bar{\lambda}_i \nabla f_i(x^*), \bar{x} - x^* \right\rangle$$

$$= \langle g^*, \bar{x} - x^* \rangle \geq 0$$

与 Slater 条件矛盾, 故  $\bar{\lambda}_0 > 0$ , 取  $\lambda_i^* = \bar{\lambda}_i / \bar{\lambda}_0, \forall i \in I^*$

$\lambda_i^* = 0, \forall i \notin I^*$ , 即证  $\square$

lemma 3.1.20  $\iff A \succ 0$

$$\max_x \{ \langle c, x \rangle : \langle Ax, x \rangle \leq 1 \} = \langle c, A^{-1}c \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

证明:

$$(KKT) \Rightarrow \begin{cases} -c + \lambda^* Ax^* = 0 \\ \lambda^* (\langle Ax^*, x^* \rangle - 1) = 0 \end{cases}$$

若  $c \neq 0$ , 则  $\lambda^* \neq 0$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{cases} \lambda^* Ax^* = c \\ \langle Ax^*, x^* \rangle = 1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow x^* = \frac{A^{-1}c}{\langle c, A^{-1}c \rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}}$$



LP情形:

$$\begin{aligned} & \min \langle c, x \rangle \\ & \text{s.t. } \langle a_i, x \rangle \leq 0, \quad i=1, \dots, m \end{aligned}$$

$$(KKT) \Rightarrow \begin{cases} c + \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i^* a_i = 0 \\ \lambda_i^* \langle a_i, x \rangle = 0 \end{cases} \quad \leftarrow \text{(互补松弛条件)}$$

$$\downarrow$$
$$[a_1, \dots, a_m] \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1^* \\ \vdots \\ \lambda_m^* \end{bmatrix} = -c.$$

考虑  $\min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \{ f(x) : Ax = b \}$  (3.1.68)

$\mathcal{Q}$  是闭凸集,  $A$  是行满秩的

Thm 3.1.27  $f$  在  $\mathcal{Q} \cap \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$  上是凸的, 且在  $\mathcal{Q}$  上

的水平集是有界的, 设  $\exists \bar{x}, \varepsilon > 0$ , s.t.

$$A\bar{x} = b, B(\bar{x}, \varepsilon) \subseteq \mathcal{Q} \text{ (Slater condition for equalities)}$$

则  $x^*$  是 (3.1.68) 的最优解  $\Leftrightarrow Ax^* = b$ , 且存在  $y^* \in \mathbb{R}^m$ ,

$$g^* \in \partial f(x^*), \text{ s.t. } \langle g^* - A^T y^*, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0, \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

$$\text{且 } \|A^T y^*\| \leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \left( \max_{x \in B(\bar{x}, \varepsilon)} f(x) - \min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f(x) \right)$$

证明:

( $\Leftarrow$ ) 对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 且  $Ax = b$ , 则

$$f(x) - f(x^*) \geq \langle g^*, x - x^* \rangle$$

$$\geq \langle y^*, A(x-x^*) \rangle = 0$$

( $\Rightarrow$ ) 考虑  $\phi(x) = f(x) + K \|b - Ax\|$ ,  $K > 0$  是常数

则  $\text{level}_\phi(\beta) \subseteq \text{level}_f(\beta)$ ,  $\forall \beta \in \mathbb{R}$ , 其中  $\text{level}_\phi, \text{level}_f$  表示  $\phi, f$  的在  $\mathcal{X}$  上的水平集;  $\phi$  的凸性是显然的, 由 Thm 3.1.11  $f(x)$  在  $\mathcal{X}$  上是连续的, 故  $\phi(x)$  是连续的, 由  $\mathcal{X}$  是闭的, 故  $\phi$  是  $\mathcal{X}$  上的闭凸 func, 由 lemma 3.1.4,  $\exists x_*$ , s.t.

$$x_* \in \underset{x \in \mathcal{X}}{\text{Argmin}} \phi(x)$$

故由 Thm 3.1.24,  $\exists g_\phi^* \in \partial \phi(x_*)$ , s.t.

$$\langle g_\phi^*, x - x_* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{X}$$

由 lemma 3.1.12, lemma 3.1.11, 知

$$g_\phi^* = g^* - KA^T \partial \|b - Ax_*\|, \quad g^* \in \partial f(x_*)$$

由 (3.1.42) 知  $\partial \|x\|_0 = \{ \bar{y} \in \mathbb{R}^m : \|\bar{y}\| \leq 1 \}$

故由 lemma 3.1.15,  $\exists \bar{y} \in \mathbb{R}^M, \|\bar{y}\| \leq 1, \text{ s.t.}$

$$g_\phi^* = g^* - K A^T \bar{y},$$

$$\langle \bar{y}, b - A x_* \rangle = \|b - A x_*\|$$

另一方面  $\forall \delta \in B(0, \varepsilon)$ , 有  $x_\delta = \bar{x} + \delta \in \mathcal{X}$ , 故

$$\begin{aligned} \langle g^*, x_\delta - x_* \rangle &\geq K \langle A^T \bar{y}, \bar{x} + \delta - x_* \rangle \\ &= K \langle \bar{y}, A \delta + b - A x_* \rangle \\ &= K \|b - A x_*\| + K \langle A^T \bar{y}, \delta \rangle \end{aligned}$$

由 Thm 3.1.11,  $M = \max_x \{ f(x) : x \in B(\bar{x}, \varepsilon) \} < +\infty$

$$\text{则 } \langle g^*, x_\delta - x_* \rangle \leq f(x_\delta) - f(x_*) \leq M - f_*$$

其中  $f_* = \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} f(x)$ , 则

$$M - f_* \geq K \|b - A x_*\| + \max_{\delta \in B(0, \varepsilon)} K \langle A^T \bar{y}, \delta \rangle$$

$$\geq \max_{\delta \in B(0, \varepsilon)} K \langle A^T \bar{y}, \delta \rangle$$

$$\geq K \varepsilon \|A^T \bar{y}\|$$

$$\geq K \varepsilon \mu \|\bar{y}\|$$

其中  $\mu = \lambda_{\min}^{\frac{1}{2}}(AA^T) > 0$ , 定义  $y^* = K\bar{y}$ , 则 (3.1.71) 成立.

另一方面, 取  $K > \frac{1}{\varepsilon \mu} (M - f_*)$ , 则  $\|\bar{y}\| < 1$ , 由 lemma 3.1.15,

$Ax_* = b$ , 故  $x_*$  是 (3.1.68) 的最优解

故当  $K$  足够大时,  $\forall$  (3.1.68) 的最优解  $x^*$  是  $\phi$  的全局极小.

故 (3.1.70) 成立



Thm 3.1.25 令  $\phi$  是闭凸 func,  $\mathcal{Q}_1 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\mathcal{Q}_2 \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$

是两个闭凸集, s.t.  $\mathcal{Q}_1 \times \mathcal{Q}_2 \subseteq \text{int dom } \phi$ , 定义

$$f(x) = \inf_{y \in \mathcal{Q}_2} \phi(x, y)$$

则  $f$  在  $\mathcal{Q}_1$  上凸, 且若  $Y(x) = \underset{y \in \mathcal{Q}_2}{\text{Argmin}} \phi(x, y) \neq \emptyset$ , 则

$$\partial_{\mathcal{Q}_1} f(x) \supseteq \left\{ g_x \in \mathbb{R}^n : \exists g_y, \text{ s.t. } (g_x, g_y) \in \bigcap_{y \in Y(x)} \partial \phi(x, y), \right.$$

$$\left. \text{且 } \langle g_y, y - y_x \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall y \in \mathcal{Q}_2, \forall y_x \in Y(x) \right\} \quad (3.1.60)$$

证明: 定义  $\mathcal{Q}_x = \{(x, y) \mid y \in \mathcal{Q}_2\}$  是闭凸集

$$\text{则 } f(x) = \inf_{y \in \mathcal{Q}_2} \phi(x, y)$$

$$= \inf_{(x, y) \in \mathcal{Q}_x} \phi(x, y)$$

故由 Thm 3.1.24,  $\exists g^* = \begin{pmatrix} g_x \\ g_y \end{pmatrix} \in \widehat{\partial} \phi(x, Y(x))$ , s.t.

$$\langle g^*, \begin{pmatrix} x - x \\ y - y_x \end{pmatrix} \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall y \in \mathcal{Q}_2, \forall y_x \in Y(x)$$

$\Leftrightarrow \langle g_y, y - y_x \rangle \geq 0$ , 故右边集合非空

考虑  $\forall (g_x, g_y)$  满足上面的条件, 令  $x_1 \in \mathcal{D}_1, \varepsilon > 0$

取  $y_1 \in \mathcal{D}_2$ , s.t.  $\phi(x_1, y_1) \leq f(x_1) + \varepsilon$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_1) + \varepsilon &\geq \phi(x_1, y_1) \\ &\geq \phi(x, y_x) + \langle g_x, x_1 - x \rangle + \langle g_y, y_1 - y_x \rangle \\ &\geq \phi(x, y_x) + \langle g_x, x_1 - x \rangle \\ &= f(x) + \langle g_x, x_1 - x \rangle \end{aligned}$$

取  $\varepsilon$  任意小, 则  $g_x \in \partial_{\mathcal{D}_1} f(x)$

□

Lemma 3.1.21  $\forall \bar{x}$  是 (3.1.61) 的可行点, 则

$$f_0(\bar{x}) - f_0(x^*) \geq \sum_{i=1}^m (-f_i(\bar{x})) \lambda_i^*$$

证明:  $f_0(\bar{x}) + \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i^* f_i(\bar{x})$

$$\geq f_0(x^*) + \langle \nabla f_0(x^*), \bar{x} - x^* \rangle + \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i^* [f_i(x^*) + \langle \nabla f_i(x^*), \bar{x} - x^* \rangle]$$

$$= f_0(x^*) + \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i^* f_i(x^*) + \langle \nabla f_0(x^*) + \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i^* \nabla f_i(x^*), \bar{x} - x^* \rangle$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{(KKT)} \\ & \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

# Exact Penalty function

令  $\bar{x} \in \mathcal{X}$  满足 Slater 条件, 设已知了  $f_0(\bar{x}) - f_0(x^*)$  的上界  $D$

如: 
$$D = \max_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \langle \nabla f_0(\bar{x}), \bar{x} - x \rangle$$

考虑  $\Lambda = \left\{ \lambda \in \mathbb{R}_+^m : \sum_{i=1}^m (-f_i(\bar{x})) \lambda_i \leq 0 \right\}$

由 lemma 3.1.21:  $\lambda^* \in \Lambda$ , 定义:

$$\psi(g) = \max_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \langle \lambda, g \rangle = D \left( \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \frac{g^{(i)}}{-f_i(\bar{x})} \right)_+, \quad g \in \mathbb{R}^m$$

证明:

$$\langle \lambda, g \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i g^{(i)} = \sum_{i=1}^m \left( \frac{g^{(i)}}{-f_i(\bar{x})} \right) \underbrace{(-f_i(\bar{x}) \lambda_i)}_{\forall i, \text{ 都非负}}$$

令  $\delta_i = \frac{g^{(i)}}{-f_i(\bar{x})}, i=1, \dots, m$ , 若

①  $\forall i=1, \dots, m, \delta_i \leq 0$ , 则  $\langle \lambda, g \rangle \leq 0 = D \left( \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \delta_i \right)_+$

②  $\exists i$ , s.t.  $\delta_i > 0$ , 则  $\langle \lambda, g \rangle \leq \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} (\delta_i) \left( \sum_{i=1}^m -f_i(\bar{x}) \lambda_i \right)$

$$\leq D \left( \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \left( \frac{g^{(i)}}{-f_i(\bar{x})} \right) \right)_+$$

$$\text{故 } \max_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \langle \lambda, g \rangle \leq D \left( \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \left( \frac{g^{(i)}}{-f_i(\bar{x})} \right) \right)_+$$

另一方面:

①  $\forall i=1, \dots, m, g^{(i)} \leq 0$ , 则取  $\tilde{\lambda} = 0 \in \Lambda$ , 有  $\langle \tilde{\lambda}, g \rangle = 0$

②  $\exists i, g^{(i)} > 0$ , 令

$$\tilde{\lambda}_i = \begin{cases} \frac{D}{-f_j(\bar{x})}, & j = \min \left( \operatorname{argmax}_{1 \leq i \leq m} \frac{g^{(i)}}{-f_i(\bar{x})} \right) \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

取  $\tilde{\lambda} = \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{\lambda}_1 \\ \vdots \\ \tilde{\lambda}_m \end{pmatrix} \in \Lambda$  是显然的

$$\langle \tilde{\lambda}, g \rangle = g^{(j)} \cdot \frac{D}{-f_j(\bar{x})}$$

$$= \frac{g^{(j)}}{-f_j(\bar{x})} \cdot D = \left( \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \frac{g^{(i)}}{-f_i(\bar{x})} \right)_+ D$$

$$\text{综上: } \psi(g) = \max_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \langle \lambda, g \rangle = D \left( \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \frac{g^{(i)}}{-f_i(\bar{x})} \right)_+$$



$$\min_{x \in \Theta} \left\{ \phi(x) = f_0(x) + \psi(f(x)) \right\}$$

其中  $f(x) = (f_1(x), \dots, f_m(x))$ ,  $x^*$  是 (3.1.61) 的最优点.

注意到  $\max \langle \lambda, f(x^*) \rangle = 0$ , 定义:

$$\Lambda_+ = \{ \lambda \in \Lambda : \langle \lambda, f(x^*) \rangle = 0 \} = \{ \lambda \in \Lambda : \lambda_i = 0, i \notin I(x^*) \}$$

其中  $I(x^*) = \{ i : f_i(x^*) = 0 \}$ , 由  $\lambda^* \in \Lambda_+$  (KKT条件)

故  $\sum_{i \in I(x^*)} \lambda_i^* \nabla f_i(x^*) \in \partial \psi(f(x^*))$  (lemma 3.1.16)

故  $g^* = \nabla f_0(x^*) + \sum_{i \in I(x^*)} \lambda_i^* \nabla f_i(x^*) \in \partial \phi(x^*)$

注:  $\sum_i \partial f_i \subseteq \partial \sum_i f_i$ ,  $f_i$  在  $x$  处 次可微

设  $g_k \in \partial f_k(x)$ , 则  $f_k(z) \geq f_k(x) + \langle g_k, z - x \rangle \quad \forall z$

$\Rightarrow \sum_k f_k(z) \geq \sum_k f_k(x) + \langle \sum_k g_k, z - x \rangle$ , 故  $\sum_k g_k \in \partial \sum_k f_k$

上面的证明只需  $f_k(x)$  在  $x$  处次可微, 若  $f_k$  有凸性, 则有:

### Thm 23.8 (Rockafellar)

令  $f_i, i=1, \dots, m$  是 proper convex function 于  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , 则令

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^m f_i, \text{ 有 } \partial f(x) \supseteq \partial f_1(x) + \dots + \partial f_m(x) \quad \forall x$$

进一步, 若  $\bigcap_{k=1}^m \text{ri}(\text{dom} f_i), i=1, \dots, m$  非空, 则

$$\partial f(x) = \partial f_1(x) + \dots + \partial f_m(x)$$

注: lemma 3.1.12 的确不要闭性, 但是要求  $x \in \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$

故由 Thm 3.1.26

$$\langle g^*, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

由 Thm 3.1.24,  $x^* \in \underset{x \in \mathcal{Q}}{\text{Argmin}} \phi(x)$

下证  $\phi(x)$  的最小值点也一定是 (3.1.61) 的最优解

令  $\hat{x}$  是 (3.1.61) 的任意最优解, 故  $\exists \hat{\lambda} \in \underset{\lambda \in \Lambda}{\text{Argmax}} \langle \lambda, f(\hat{x}) \rangle$ ,

$$\text{s.t. } \left\langle \nabla f_0(\hat{x}) + \sum_{i=1}^m \hat{\lambda}_i \nabla f_i(\hat{x}), x - \hat{x} \right\rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$$

不妨设  $\Psi(f(\hat{x})) > 0$

则  $\langle \hat{\lambda}, -f(\bar{x}) \rangle = 0$  (即  $\Lambda$  中的不等式约束是积极的)

注: 由  $\hat{\lambda} \in \underset{\lambda \in \Lambda}{\text{Argmax}} \langle \lambda, f(\hat{x}) \rangle$ , 由  $\Psi(f(\hat{x})) > 0$

则  $\langle \hat{\lambda}, f(\hat{x}) \rangle > 0$ , 用反证法, 设  $\langle \hat{\lambda}, -f(\bar{x}) \rangle < 0$

则  $\exists k > 1$ , s.t.  $k\hat{\lambda} \in \Lambda$ , 且

$$\langle k\hat{\lambda}, f(\hat{x}) \rangle > \langle \hat{\lambda}, f(\hat{x}) \rangle, \text{ 与 } \hat{\lambda} \in \underset{\lambda \in \Lambda}{\text{Argmax}} \langle \lambda, f(\hat{x}) \rangle$$

矛盾, 故

$$0 \geq f_0(\bar{x}) - f_0(\hat{x}) \geq \langle \nabla f_0(\hat{x}), \bar{x} - \hat{x} \rangle$$

$$\geq \sum_{i=1}^m \hat{\lambda}_i \langle \nabla f_i(\hat{x}), \hat{x} - \bar{x} \rangle$$

$$\geq \langle \hat{\lambda}, f(\hat{x}) - f(\bar{x}) \rangle$$

$$= \Psi(f(\hat{x})) + 0 \quad \underline{\text{矛盾!}}$$

故  $\Psi(f(\hat{x})) = 0$  (说明  $\hat{x}$  一定在 (3.1.6) 的可行域中)

且由  $\hat{x}$  是  $\phi(x) = f_0(x) + \underbrace{\psi(f(x))}_{\text{任一}}$  的最小值

且  $\psi(f(\hat{x})) = 0$ , 故  $\hat{x}$  是 (3.1.61) 的解



Thm 3.1.28 设  $f$  是凸的,  $\mathcal{Q} \subseteq \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$  是闭凸集,

设  $f$  在  $\mathcal{Q}$  上的水平集有界, 令  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  ( $n > m$ ) 是行满

秩, 考虑  $\phi(u) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \{ f(x) : Ax = u \}$

则  $\phi$  是凸的, 且对  $\forall u \in \mathbb{R}^m$ ,  $\{x \in \text{int}(\mathcal{Q}) : Ax = u\} \neq \emptyset$ , 有

$\{y^* : \exists x^* \in \mathcal{Q}, Ax^* = u, g^* \in \partial f(x^*), \text{ s.t.}$

$$\langle g^* - A^T y^*, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}\} \subseteq \partial \phi(u)$$

证明:

令  $\mathcal{Q}(u) = \{x \in \mathcal{Q} : Ax = u\}$ , 则  $\text{dom} \phi = \{u \in \mathbb{R}^m : \mathcal{Q}(u) \neq \emptyset\}$

对  $\forall u \in \text{dom} \phi$ ,  $\exists x(u) \in \underset{x \in \mathcal{Q}(u)}{\text{Argmin}} f(x)$

由  $\mathcal{Q} \subseteq \text{int}(\text{dom} f)$  是闭凸的, 故  $f$  在  $\mathcal{Q}$  上是连续的

且  $\mathcal{Q}(u)$  是闭凸的, 且  $\mathcal{Q}(u) \subseteq \mathcal{Q}$ , 故  $f$  在  $\mathcal{Q}(u)$  上连续,

且闭凸, 且由假设下水平集有界, 故  $\underset{x \in \mathcal{Q}(u)}{\text{Argmin}} f(x)$  可解

令  $u_1, u_2 \in \text{dom } \phi$ ,  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 则

$$x_\alpha \doteq \alpha x(u_1) + (1-\alpha)x(u_2) \in \underbrace{\text{dom } \phi}_{\text{dom } \phi}$$

故  $\text{dom } \phi$  是凸集, 且

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(\alpha u_1 + (1-\alpha)u_2) &\leq f(x_\alpha) \leq \alpha f(x(u_1)) + (1-\alpha)f(x(u_2)) \\ &= \alpha \phi(u_1) + (1-\alpha)\phi(u_2) \end{aligned}$$

由 Thm 3.1.27, (3.1.74) 左列非空, 取  $(x^*, y^*, g^*)$  对

某个  $u = u_1 \in \text{dom } \phi$ , 则对  $u_2 \in \text{dom } \phi$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(u_2) = f(x(u_2)) &\geq f(x^*) + \langle g^*, x(u_2) - x^* \rangle \\ &\geq f(x^*) + \langle A^T y^*, x(u_2) - x^* \rangle \\ &\stackrel{\text{Thm 3.1.27}}{=} \phi(u_1) + \langle y^*, u_2 - u_1 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

故  $y^* \in \partial \phi(u_1)$



## § 3.1.8 Minimax Theorems

$\Psi(\cdot, \cdot)$  定义在两个凸集的直积,  $P \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $S \subseteq \mathbb{R}^m$

设  $\Psi(\cdot, u)$  是闭凸的于  $P \subseteq \text{dom} \Psi(\cdot, u)$ ,  $\forall u \in S$

$\Psi(x, \cdot)$  是闭凸的于  $S \subseteq \text{dom} \Psi(x, \cdot)$ ,  $\forall x \in P$

核心目的是:

$$\inf_{x \in P} \sup_{u \in S} \Psi(x, u) = \sup_{u \in S} \inf_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u)$$

何时成立? 一般地, 只有左边  $\geq$  右边

由  $\Psi(x, u) \geq \boxed{\inf_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u)} \phi(u)$

$$\Rightarrow \boxed{\sup_{u \in S} \Psi(x, u)} \geq \sup_{u \in S} \inf_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u)$$

$$\Rightarrow \inf_{x \in P} \sup_{u \in S} \Psi(x, u) \geq \sup_{u \in S} \inf_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u)$$

Lemma 3.1.22 设对  $\forall u \in S$ ,  $\Phi(\cdot, u)$  的下水平集在  $P$

上有界, 且  $\phi$  在  $u^* \in S$  上达到最大, 则对  $\forall u \in S$ , 有

$$\min_{x \in P} \max \{ \Phi(x, u), \Phi(x, u^*) \} = \phi(u^*)$$

证明:

$$\begin{aligned} f_u(x) &= \max \{ \Phi(x, u), \Phi(x, u^*) \} \\ &\geq \max \{ \phi(u), \phi(u^*) \} = \phi(u^*) \end{aligned}$$

首先说明  $\min_{x \in P} f_u(x)$  可解

由 Thm 3.1.5,  $f_u(x)$  是闭凸func, 且对  $\forall \beta \in \mathbb{R}$

$$\left\{ \underset{P}{x} : f_u(x) \leq \beta \right\} \subseteq \left\{ \underset{P}{x} : \Phi(x, u) \leq \beta \right\} \text{ 有界}$$

故  $\min_{x \in P} f_u(x)$  可解

由 Thm 3.1.10,  $\exists \lambda^* \in [0, 1]$ , s.t.

$$\min_{x \in P} f_u(x) = \min_{x \in P} \{ \lambda^* \Phi(x, u) + (1 - \lambda^*) \Phi(x, u^*) \}$$

$$\leq \min_{x \in P} \Psi(x, \lambda^* u + (1-\lambda^*) u^*) \\ = \phi(\lambda^* u + (1-\lambda^*) u^*)$$

$$\text{故 } \phi(u^*) \leq \min_{x \in P} f_u(x) \leq \phi(\lambda^* u + (1-\lambda^*) u^*) \\ \leq \phi(u^*)$$

$$\text{故 } \min_{x \in P} f_u(x) = \phi(u^*)$$



Thm 3.1.29 设  $\Psi(\cdot, u)$  在  $P$  上可达唯一-最小,  $\phi$  在  $S$  上可达

最大值, 则

$$\min_{x \in P} f(x) = \max_{u \in S} \phi(u)$$

证明: 由  $x(u) = \operatorname{argmin}_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u)$  是唯一-定义的, 则

由 Thm 3.1.4 (5),  $\Psi(\cdot, u), u \in S$  的下水平集在  $P$  上有界,

故由 lemma 3.1.22: 对  $\forall u \in S$

$$\min_{x \in P} \max \{ \Psi(x, u), \Psi(x, u^*) \} = \phi(u^*)$$

由  $\phi(u^*) = \Psi(x(u^*), u^*)$ , 知  $x(u^*)$  是 (3.1.76) 唯一-最小值点: 这是由于  $x^*$  是 (3.1.76) 的最小值点.

$$\Rightarrow \Psi(x^*, u^*) \leq \phi(u^*) = \min_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u^*)$$

故  $x(u^*)$  是唯一-使  $\Psi(x(u^*), u^*) = \phi(u^*)$  的点.

$$\text{故 } \Psi(x(u^*), u) \leq \Psi(x(u^*), u^*) \leq \Psi(x, u^*), x \in P$$

$$\text{故 } \sup_{u \in S} \Psi(x(u^*), u) \leq \inf_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u^*)$$

$$f(x(u^*)) \leq \phi(u^*)$$

$$\Rightarrow \min_{x \in P} f(x) = f(x(u^*)) \leq \phi(u^*) = \max_{u \in S} \phi(u)$$

$$f(x(u^*)) = \sup_{u \in S} \Psi(x(u^*), u)$$

$$\leq \phi(u^*)$$

$$= \inf_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u^*)$$

$$\leq \inf_{x \in P} \sup_{u \in S} \Psi(x, u) = \inf_{x \in P} f(x)$$



Thm 3.1.10 设  $P, Q$  有界, 则

$$\min_{x \in P} f(x) = \max_{u \in S} \phi(u)$$

证明: 固定  $\varepsilon > 0$ ,  $\|\cdot\|$  是欧式 norm, 定义

$$\bar{\Psi}_\varepsilon(x, u) = \Psi(x, u) + \frac{1}{2} \varepsilon \|x\|^2, \quad x \in P, u \in S$$

则  $\bar{\Psi}_\varepsilon(\cdot, u)$  是强凸的 ( $\forall u \in S$ ), 故在  $P$  上存在唯一-最小值

由  $\{x \in P: \bar{\Psi}_\varepsilon(x, u) \leq \beta\} \subseteq \underbrace{\{x \in P: \Psi(x, u) \leq \beta\}}_{\text{是紧集, 设为 } B}$

故  $\inf_{x \in P} \bar{\Psi}_\varepsilon(x, u) \Leftrightarrow \inf_{x \in B} \bar{\Psi}_\varepsilon(x, u)$ , 且  $\bar{\Psi}_\varepsilon(\cdot, u)$  在  $B$  上

是闭凸的. 可以用 Thm 3.1.4 4) 说明  $\min_{x \in B} \bar{\Psi}_\varepsilon(x, u)$  的

well-define, 且唯一性见 (P210, 推论 3.2.3)

故  $\phi_\varepsilon(u) = \min_{x \in P} \Psi_\varepsilon(x, u)$  是 well-defined.

由 Thm 3.1.8  $\phi_\varepsilon(u) = -\max_{x \in P} (-\Psi_\varepsilon(x, u))$  是闭凸的

下面证明  $\max_{u \in S} \phi_\varepsilon(u)$  是可解的, 只需证  $\min_{u \in S} \underbrace{-\phi_\varepsilon(u)}_{\text{闭凸}}$

是 well-defined: 直接用 Thm 3.1.4 4) 即可

对  $\Psi_\varepsilon(x, u)$  用 Thm 3.1.29:

$\exists u_\varepsilon^* \in \text{Argmax}_{u \in S} \phi_\varepsilon(u)$ ,  $x_\varepsilon^* = \text{Argmin}_{x \in P} \Psi_\varepsilon(x, u_\varepsilon^*)$ , s.t.

$$\Psi_\varepsilon(x_\varepsilon^*, u) \leq \Psi_\varepsilon(x_\varepsilon^*, u_\varepsilon^*) \leq \Psi_\varepsilon(x, u_\varepsilon^*), x \in P, u \in S$$

$$\Rightarrow \Psi(x_\varepsilon^*, u) \leq \Psi(x_\varepsilon^*, u_\varepsilon^*)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x_\varepsilon^*) = \sup_{u \in S} \Psi(x_\varepsilon^*, u) \leq \Psi(x_\varepsilon^*, u_\varepsilon^*)$$

另一方面: 对  $\forall x \in P$ , 有

$$\Psi(x_\varepsilon^*, u_\varepsilon^*) \leq \Psi_\varepsilon(x_\varepsilon^*, u_\varepsilon^*) \leq \Psi(x, u_\varepsilon^*) + \frac{1}{2}\varepsilon D^2, D \geq \sup_{x \in P} \|x\|$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{故 } f(x_\varepsilon^*) &\leq \min_{x \in P} \Phi(x, u_\varepsilon^*) + \frac{1}{2} \varepsilon D^2 \\ &= \phi(u_\varepsilon^*) + \frac{1}{2} \varepsilon D^2 \end{aligned}$$

Thm 3.1.4

$$f(x) = \max_{u \in S} \Phi(x, u)$$

注:  $f(x) = \sup_{u \in S} \Phi(x, u)$  是闭凸的

$\phi(u) = \min_{x \in P} \Phi(x, u) = -\max_{x \in P} (-\Phi(x, u))$  是闭凸的

取  $\varepsilon \downarrow 0$ , 有

$$\liminf_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} f(x_\varepsilon^*) \leq \limsup_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \phi(u_\varepsilon^*)$$

由  $\{x_\varepsilon^*\}_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \subseteq B$  (是紧的), 故不妨设  $x_\varepsilon^* \rightarrow \bar{x} \in B \subseteq P$

而  $\{u_\varepsilon^*\}$  是  $\min_{u \in S} -\phi_\varepsilon(u)$  的某个解

$$\{u \in S : -\phi_\varepsilon(u) \leq \beta\} = \{u \in S : \max_{x \in P} (-\Phi_\varepsilon(x, u)) \leq \beta\}$$

$$\subseteq \{u \in S : -\Phi_\varepsilon(\tilde{x}, u) \leq \beta\}, \tilde{x} \in P$$

$$\subseteq \{u \in S : -\Phi_{\hat{\varepsilon}}(\tilde{x}, u) \leq \beta\}, \tilde{x} \in P, \hat{\varepsilon} = \sup \varepsilon$$

是一个紧集  $\triangle C$

$$\min_{u \in S} -\phi_\varepsilon(u) \Leftrightarrow \min_{u \in C} -\phi_\varepsilon(u)$$

故  $\{u_\varepsilon^* \mid \varepsilon \in S\}$ , 不妨设  $u_\varepsilon^* \rightarrow \bar{u} \in C \subseteq S$

$$\text{故 } f(x^*) \leq \liminf_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} f(x_\varepsilon^*) \leq \limsup_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \phi(u_\varepsilon^*) \leq \phi(\bar{u})$$

$$\text{故 } \min_{x \in P} f(x) \leq \max_{u \in S} \phi(u)$$



Thm 3.1.31 设  $f$  在  $x^* \in P$  处达到极小, 设对某个  $g_* \in \partial_p f(x^*)$ ,

满足一阶最优性条件:

$$\langle g_*, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0, x \in P$$

若  $g_*$  存在如下表示:

$$g_* = \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda^{(i)} g_i$$

对于确定的  $k \geq 1$ ,  $\lambda \in \Delta_k$ ,  $g_i \in \partial_{p,x} \Psi(x^*, u_i)$ , 其中

$$u_i \in I(x^*), i=1, \dots, k, I(x^*) = \{u \in S: \Psi(x^*, u) = f(x^*)\}$$

则 (3.1.78) 成立

证明: 令  $\bar{u} = \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda^{(i)} u_i$ , 则对  $\forall x \in P$ , 有:

$$f(x^*) \leq f(x^*) + \langle g_{x^*}, x - x^* \rangle$$

$$= f(x^*) + \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda^{(i)} \langle g_i, x - x^* \rangle$$

$$\leq f(x^*) + \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda^{(i)} [\Phi(x, u_i) - \Phi(x^*, u_i)]$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda^{(i)} \Phi(x, u_i) \quad (\text{由 } u_i \text{ 的定义})$$

$$\leq \Phi(x, \bar{u}) \quad (\text{由 Jensen 不等式})$$

$$\text{故 } f(x^*) \leq \inf_{x \in P} \Phi(x, \bar{u}) = \phi(\bar{u})$$

$$\text{故 } \min_{x \in P} f(x) \leq \max_{u \in S} \phi(u)$$

□

**Lemma 3.1.14** Let  $\Delta$  be an arbitrary set, and  $f(x) = \sup\{\phi(x, y) \mid y \in \Delta\}$ . Suppose that for any  $y \in \Delta$  the function  $\phi(\cdot, y)$  is closed and convex on some convex set  $Q$ . Then  $f$  is closed convex on the set

$$\hat{Q} = \left\{ x \in Q \mid \sup_{y \in \Delta} \phi(x, y) < +\infty \right\}.$$

$$f(x) = \sup_{u \in S} \Psi(x, u)$$

Moreover, for any  $x \in \hat{Q}$  we have  $\left\{ \partial_{Q,x} \Psi(x, u) \mid u \in I(x) \right\}$   
 $\partial_{\hat{Q}} f(x) \supseteq \text{Conv} \left\{ \partial_{Q,x} \phi(x, y) \mid y \in I(x) \right\},$

where  $I(x) = \{y \in \Delta \mid \phi(x, y) = f(x)\}.$

$$I(x) = \{u \in S : \Psi(x, u) = f(x)\}$$

### Lemma 3.1.14

$$\partial_{\hat{P}} f(x^*) \supseteq \text{Conv} \left\{ \partial_{P,x} \Psi(x^*, u) \mid u \in I(x^*) \right\}$$

$$I(x^*) = \{u \in S : \Psi(x^*, u) = f(x^*)\}$$

故 Thm 3.1.31 条件成立的充分条件是

$$\partial_{\hat{P}} f(x^*) = \text{Conv} \left\{ \partial_{P,x} \Psi(x^*, u) : u \in I(x^*) \right\}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \parallel \\ & \partial_P f(x^*) \quad \text{对 } \forall g \in \partial_P f(x^*) \\ & \quad \text{及 } \forall \beta \in \beta_A \text{ 有} \\ & \quad f(y) \geq f(x^*) + \langle g, y - x^* \rangle, \quad \forall y \in \hat{P} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow f(y) \geq f(x^*) + \langle g, y - x^* \rangle, \quad \forall y \in P$$

$$\Rightarrow g \in \partial_P f(x^*)$$

注1° <sup>有错</sup>

Thm 3.1.29 的条件可以把  $\Psi(x, u)$  在  $P$  上有唯一

最小点放松成  $\Psi(x, u)$  在  $P$  上的最小值集合有界

证明: 只需注意到对  $\forall x_* \in \underset{x \in P}{\operatorname{argmin}} \Psi(x, u^*)$ , 有

$\phi(u^*) = \Psi(x_*, u^*)$ , 不妨设  $\underline{x^*}$  是 (3.1.76) 的最小值点.

<sup>与  $u$  相关</sup>

$$\text{则 } \Psi(x^*, u^*) \leq \phi(u^*) = \min_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u^*)$$

故  $x^* \in \underset{x \in P}{\operatorname{argmin}} \Psi(x, u^*)$ , 故对  $\forall u \in S$ :

$$\Psi(x^*, u) \leq \Psi(x^*, u^*) \leq \Psi(x, u^*), \quad x \in P$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x^*) \leq \phi(u^*)$$

□

注2°  $\partial_p f(x^*) = \operatorname{Conv} \{ \partial_{p,x} \Psi(x^*, u) : u \in I(x^*) \}$  (\*)

成立的充分条件:

THEOREM 3. Let  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  be such that, for some  $\varepsilon_0 > 0$ ,

(i) the set  $T_{\varepsilon_0}(x)$  is compact,

(ii) for each  $z \in \operatorname{dom} f$  the function  $t \mapsto f_t(z)$  is usc on  $T_{\varepsilon_0}(x)$ .

Then

$$(20) \quad \partial f(x) = \operatorname{co} \left\{ \bigcup_{t \in T(x)} \partial(f_t + I_{\operatorname{dom} f})(x) \right\}$$

and, under condition (18),

$$(21) \quad \partial f(x) = \operatorname{co} \left\{ \bigcup_{t \in T(x)} \partial f_t(x) \right\} + N_{\operatorname{dom} f}(x).$$

$$(i) T_{\varepsilon_0}(x) = \{t \in T \mid f_t(x) \geq f(x) - \varepsilon_0\}$$

换成书中的记号:  $\exists \varepsilon_0 > 0, \text{ s.t.}$

$$T_{\varepsilon_0}(x) = \{u \in S \mid \Psi(x, u) \geq f(x) - \varepsilon_0\} \text{ 是紧的}$$

(ii)  $\Psi(x, u)$  对  $u \in T_{\varepsilon_0}(x)$  是上半连续的, 这是自然成立的, 由于  $\Psi(x, \cdot)$  在  $S$  上是闭凹的

$$(iii) N_{\text{dom}f}(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x \in \text{int}(\text{dom}f) \\ \emptyset, & x \notin \text{dom}f \end{cases}$$

故  $\otimes$  成立只需  $x^* \in \text{int}(\text{dom}f)$  + 验证条件 (i)

注 3°: Thm 3.1.29 的对称命题是: 令  $\Psi(x, \cdot)$  在  $S$  上极大值集合存在且有界,  $f$  在  $P$  上达到最小, 则 (3.1.78) 成立

而  $\Psi(x, \cdot)$  的极大值集有界  $\xrightarrow{\text{Thm 3.1.4 (5)}}$  条件 (i)  $\xrightarrow{\text{SIAM opt}}$  Thm 3.1.31 条件

$\Rightarrow$  (3.1.78)

## § 3.1.9 Basic Elements of Primal-dual Methods

考虑问题  $f^* = \min_{x \in P} f(x)$

$f$  是  $P$  上的闭凸 func, 设  $f$  有下面的 max-表示:

$$f(x) = \max_{u \in S} \Psi(x, u)$$

$\Psi$  满足 § 3.1.8 的所有假设, 则对偶问题是

$$\phi^* = \max_{u \in S} \phi(u), \quad \phi(u) = \min_{x \in P} \Psi(x, u)$$

原问题和对偶问题在数值上并非是对称的, 因为  $\phi(u)$  难以拿到, 但若假设 Oracle 能访问 (3.1.83) 的内部结构:

为了计算  $f(x)$ , 只需计算  $u(x) \in \operatorname{Argmax}_{u \in S} \Psi(x, u)$

令  $g(x) \in \partial_{P, x} \Psi(x, u(x))$

设 Oracle 的返回值是:  $f(x), g(x), u(x)$

设在  $\{y_k\}_{k=0}^N \subset P$  上积累了信息, 取系数:

$$\alpha_k > 0, k=0, \dots, N, \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k = 1$$

考虑目标func的线性model:

$$t_N(x) = \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k [f(y_k) + \langle g(y_k), x - y_k \rangle] \leq f(x), x \in P$$

在某些算法中  $f(x_N) \leq \min_{x \in P} t_N(x) + r_N$  (3.1.85)

其中  $\{x_N\}$  是最小化序列,  $N \rightarrow \infty$  时,  $r_N \rightarrow 0$

$$\text{取 } \hat{u}_N = \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k u(y_k) \in S$$

lemma 3.1.23 设  $x_N$  满足 (3.1.85), 则

$$0 \leq (f(x_N) - f^*) + (\phi^* - \phi(\hat{u}_N)) \leq f(x_N) - \phi(\hat{u}_N) \leq r_N$$

证明:  $g(y_k) \in \partial_{p,x} \bar{\Psi}(y_k, u(y_k))$ , 则

$$\min_{x \in P} t_N(x) = \min_{x \in P} \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k [\bar{\Psi}(y_k, u(y_k)) + \langle g(y_k), x - y_k \rangle]$$

$$\leq \min_{x \in P} \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k \Psi(x, u(y_k))$$

$$\leq \min_{x \in P} \Psi(x, \hat{u}_N)$$

$$= \phi(\hat{u}_N)$$

故  $f(x_N) \leq \min_{x \in P} t_N(x) + r_N \leq \phi(\hat{u}_N) + r_N$  □

注：对偶问题的 good solution  $\hat{u}_N = \sum_{k=1}^N \alpha_k u(y_k)$  不需要  
计算  $\phi(u)$ !

反过来，利用 Test points  $\{y_k\}_{k=0}^N$  生成原问题的 good solution

定义 
$$f_N(x) = \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k \langle g(y_k), y_k - x \rangle$$

$$\hat{f}_N = \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k f(y_k) \geq f(\sum \alpha_k y_k)$$

lemma 3.1.24 设  $\max_{x \in P} f_N(x) \leq r_N \rightarrow 0$ , 则

$$0 \leq (\hat{f}_N - f^*) + (\phi^* - \phi(\hat{u}_N)) \leq \hat{f}_N - \phi(\hat{u}_N) \leq r_N \rightarrow 0$$

证明:

$$\max_{x \in P} \delta_N(x) = \max_{x \in P} \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k (g(y_k), y_k - x)$$

$$\geq \max_{x \in P} \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k (\Phi(y_k, u(y_k)) - \Phi(x, u(y_k)))$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k f(y_k) - \min_{x \in P} \sum_{k=0}^N \alpha_k \Phi(x, u(y_k)).$$

$$\geq \hat{f}_N - \min_{x \in P} \Phi(x, \hat{u}_N)$$

$$= \hat{f}_N - \phi(\hat{u}_N)$$

□

## § 3.2.1 General Lower Complexity Bounds

$$\min_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} f(x)$$

$f$  是凸 func,  $x^*$  是最优解

|                      |                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Model                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>① Unconstrained minimization</li><li>② <math>f</math> 是凸的, 在有界集上 Lipschitz</li></ul> |
| Oracle               | First-order Black Box:<br>在任意点 $x$ , 可以算 $f(x)$ , $g(x) \in \partial f(x)$ .<br>$g(x)$ 是任意一个次梯度                            |
| Approximate Solution | Find $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ : $f(\bar{x}) - f^* \leq \epsilon$                                                         |
| Methods              | $x_k \in x_0 + \text{Lin} \{g(x_0), \dots, g(x_{k-1})\}$                                                                   |

固定  $\mu > 0, \gamma > 0$ , 考虑

$$f_k(x) = \gamma \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} x^{(i)} + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x\|^2, \quad k=1, \dots, n$$

则  $\partial f_k(x) = \mu x + \gamma \text{Conv}\{e_i \mid i \in I(x)\}$

$$I(x) = \left\{ j \mid 1 \leq j \leq k, x^{(j)} = \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} x^{(i)} \right\}$$

令  $x_k^*$  是  $f_k$  的全局最小 (存在性和唯一性根据  $f_k$  的强凸)

对  $\forall x, y \in B_2(x_k^*, \rho), \rho > 0, g_k(y) \in \partial f_k(y)$ , 则

$$f_k(y) - f_k(x) \leq \langle g_k(y), y - x \rangle$$

$$\leq \|g_k(y)\| \|y - x\|$$

$$= \left\| \mu y + \gamma \sum_{i \in I(y)} \alpha_i e_i \right\| \|y - x\|$$

$$\leq \left( \mu \|y\| + \gamma \sum_{i \in I(y)} \alpha_i \|e_i\| \right) \|y - x\|$$

$$\leq \left( \mu \|x_k^*\| + \mu \rho + \gamma \right) \|y - x\|$$

同理  $f_k(x) - f_k(y) \leq (\mu \|x_k^*\| + \mu\rho + \gamma) \|y - x\|$

故  $f_k$  在  $B_2(x_k^*, \rho)$  上 Lipschitz 连续,  $M = \mu \|x_k^*\| + \mu\rho + \gamma$

由 Thm 3.1.20,  $0 \in \partial f_k(x_k^*)$

$$\partial f_k(x_k^*) = \mu x_k^* + \gamma \text{Conv}\{e_i \mid i \in I(x_k^*)\}$$

①  $(x_k^*)^{(i)} = 0, i = k+1, \dots, n$ , 否则  $\forall g \in \partial f_k(x_k^*)$ .

$$g^{(i)} = \mu (x_k^*)^{(i)} \neq 0, \text{ 与 } 0 \in \partial f_k(x_k^*) \text{ 矛盾}$$

②  $(x_k^*)^{(1)} = \dots = (x_k^*)^{(k)}$ , 否则  $\exists \xi_1, \xi_2 \in \{1, \dots, k\}, \text{ s.t.}$

$$(x_k^*)^{(\xi_1)} < (x_k^*)^{(\xi_2)}, \text{ 那么对 } \forall g \in \partial f_k(x_k^*)$$

$$g^{(\xi_1)} = \mu (x_k^*)^{(\xi_1)}, \text{ 除非 } (x_k^*)^{(\xi_1)} = 0, \text{ 否则 } 0 \notin \partial f_k(x_k^*)$$

但若  $(x_k^*)^{(\xi_1)} = 0$ , 则  $(x_k^*)^{(\xi_2)} > 0$ , 此时  $x_k^*$  一定不是最小值

故  $(x_k^*)^{(1)} = \dots = (x_k^*)^{(k)} = \lambda$

$$\mu \lambda + \frac{\gamma}{k} = 0 \Rightarrow \lambda = -\frac{\gamma}{\mu k}$$

故

$$(x_k^*)^{(i)} = \begin{cases} -\frac{\gamma}{\mu k}, & 1 \leq i \leq k \\ 0, & k+1 \leq i \leq n \end{cases}$$

定义:  $R_k \doteq \|x_k^*\| = \frac{\gamma}{\mu \sqrt{k}}$

$$f_k^* = -\frac{\gamma^2}{\mu k} + \frac{\mu}{2} R_k^2 = -\frac{\gamma^2}{2\mu k}$$

$$M = \mu \|x_k^*\| + \mu p + \gamma = \mu p + \gamma \frac{\sqrt{k+1}}{\sqrt{k}}$$

给定 Oracle

|          |                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Input    | $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$                                                                                                                                                           |
| MainLoop | $f := -\infty, i^* = 0$<br>for $j := 1$ to $k$ do<br>if $x^{(j)} > f$ then $\{ f := x^{(j)}, i^* = j \}$<br>$f = \gamma f + \frac{\mu}{2} \ x\ ^2; g = \gamma e_{i^*} + \mu x$ |
| Output   | $f_k(x) = f, g_k(x) = g$                                                                                                                                                       |

$$\text{定义 } \mathbb{R}^{p,n} = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid x^{(i)} = 0, p+1 \leq i \leq n\}$$

则对  $\forall i, 1 \leq i \leq k$ , 有  $x_i \in \mathbb{R}^{i,n}$ , 故对  $1 \leq i \leq k-1$

$$f_k(x_i) \geq \gamma \max_{1 \leq j \leq k} x_i^{(j)} = 0$$

考虑问题类  $\mathcal{P}(x_0, R, M)$ , 在 (3.2.2) 下, 再假设:

- $x_0$  离  $x^*$  足够近:  $\|x_0 - x^*\| \leq R$
- $f$  在  $B_2(x^*, R)$  上是  $M$ -Lipschitz 连续的

Thm 3.2.1 对任意类  $\mathcal{P}(x_0, R, M)$ ,  $\forall k, 0 \leq k \leq n-1$ , 存在

$f \in \mathcal{P}(x_0, R, M)$ , s.t.

$$f(x_k) - f^* \geq \frac{MR}{2(2 + \sqrt{k+1})}$$

对任意-阶方法成立, i.e.,

$$x_k \in x_0 + \text{Lin}\{g(x_0), \dots, g(x_{k-1})\}$$

证明: WLOG, 设  $x_0 = 0$ , 取  $f(x) = f_{k+1}(x)$ ,

$$\gamma = \frac{\sqrt{k+1} M}{2 + \sqrt{k+1}}, \quad \mu = \frac{M}{(2 + \sqrt{k+1})R}$$

$$\text{则 } f^* = f_{k+1}^* = -\frac{\gamma^2}{2\mu(k+1)} = -\frac{MR}{2(2 + \sqrt{k+1})}$$

$$\|x_0 - x^*\| = R_{k+1} = \frac{\gamma}{\mu\sqrt{k+1}} = R$$

且  $f$  在  $B_2(x^*, R)$  上  $M$ -Lipschitz 连续, 故由  $x_k \in \mathbb{R}^{k,n}$

$$f(x_k) - f^* \geq -f^* = \frac{MR}{2(2 + \sqrt{k+1})}$$



## § 3.2.2 Estimating Quality of Approximate Solutions

$$\min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f(x)$$

$\mathcal{Q}$  是闭凸集,  $f$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上的凸 func

$$\text{对 } \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}, \langle g(x), x - x^* \rangle \geq 0$$

固定  $\bar{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 对  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $g(x) \neq 0$ , 定义

$$\nu_f(\bar{x}, x) = \frac{1}{\|g(x)\|} \langle g(x), x - \bar{x} \rangle$$

若  $g(x) = 0$ , 则定义  $\nu_f(\bar{x}, x) = 0$ , 故由 C-S 不等式

$$\nu_f(\bar{x}, x) \leq \|x - \bar{x}\|$$

$\nu_f(\bar{x}, x)$  有自然的几何解释, 设  $x$  满足  $g(x) \neq 0$ , 且

$\langle g(x), x - \bar{x} \rangle \geq 0$ , 则定义

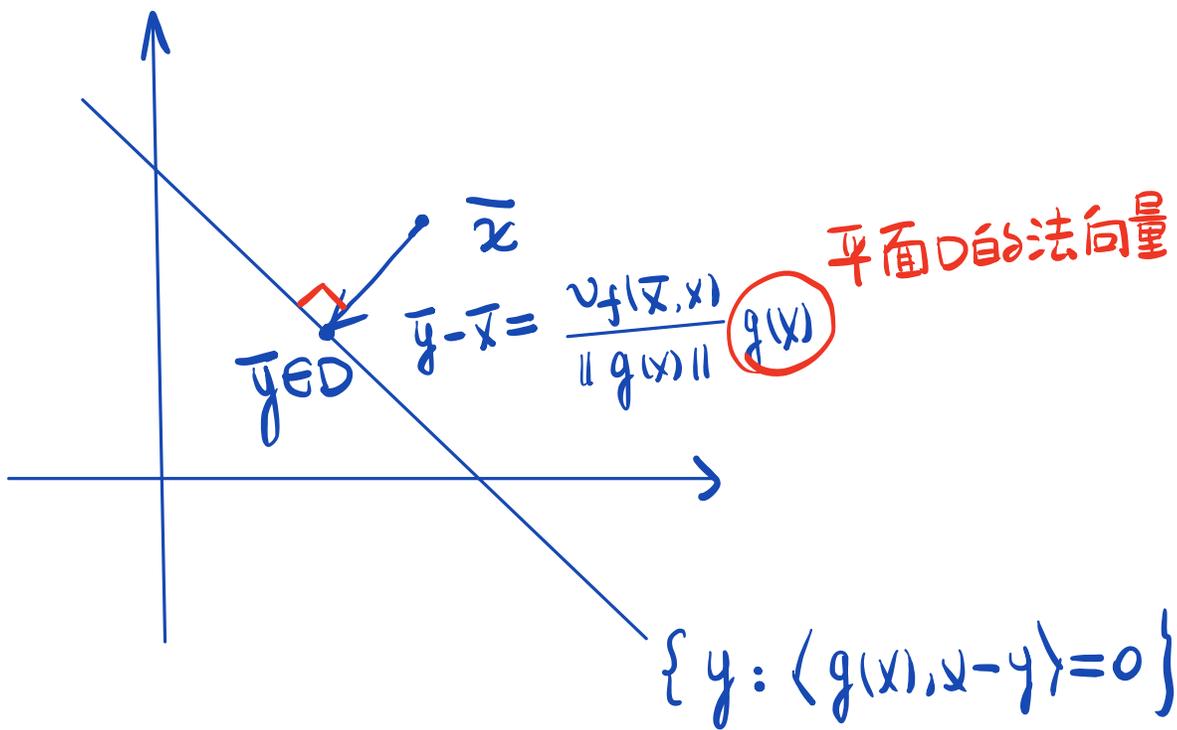
$$\bar{y} = \bar{x} + \nu_f(\bar{x}, x) \frac{g(x)}{\|g(x)\|}$$

$$\text{则 } \langle g(x), x - \bar{y} \rangle = \langle g(x), x - \bar{x} \rangle - \nu_f(\bar{x}, x) \|g(x)\| = 0$$

$$\text{令 } D = \{y : \langle g(x), x - y \rangle = 0\}, \text{ 则 } \bar{y} \in D$$

$$\text{且 } \|\bar{y} - \bar{x}\| = \nu_f(\bar{x}, x)$$

断言：此时  $\nu_f(\bar{x}, x)$  是  $\bar{x}$  到平面  $D$  的距离



$$\text{故 } (\bar{y} - \bar{x}) \perp D. \text{ 即 } \forall y \in D, \langle \bar{y} - \bar{x}, y - \bar{y} \rangle = 0$$

对  $t \geq 0$ , 定义

$$\omega_f(\bar{x}; t) = \max_x \{ f(x) - f(\bar{x}) : \|x - \bar{x}\| \leq t \}$$

若  $t < 0$ , 令  $\omega_f(\bar{x}; t) = 0$

- $\omega_f(\bar{x}; t) = 0$ , 对  $\forall t \leq 0$
- $\omega_f(\bar{x}; t)$  关于  $t \in \mathbb{R}$  是不减的
- $f(x) - f(\bar{x}) \leq \omega_f(\bar{x}; \|x - \bar{x}\|)$

Lemma 3.2.1 对  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , 有

$$f(x) - f(\bar{x}) \leq \omega_f(\bar{x}; \nu_f(\bar{x}; x)) \quad (3.2.11)$$

若  $f(\cdot)$  在  $B_2(\bar{x}, R)$  上是  $M$ -Lipschitz 的, 则

$$f(x) - f(\bar{x}) \leq M(\nu_f(\bar{x}; x))_+ \quad (3.2.12)$$

对  $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  满足  $\nu_f(\bar{x}; x) \leq R$  成立

证明: 若  $\langle g(x), x - \bar{x} \rangle < 0$ , 则

$$f(\bar{x}) \geq f(x) + \langle g(x), \bar{x} - x \rangle \geq f(x)$$

由  $v_f(\bar{x}; x) < 0$ , 故  $w_f(\bar{x}; v_f(\bar{x}; x)) = 0$ , 故 (3.2.11) 成立

另一方面, 若  $\langle g(x), x - \bar{x} \rangle \geq 0$ , 令

$$\bar{y} = \bar{x} + v_f(\bar{x}; x) \frac{g(x)}{\|g(x)\|}$$

则有  $\langle g(x), \bar{y} - x \rangle = 0$ ,  $\|\bar{y} - \bar{x}\| = v_f(\bar{x}; x)$ , 故

$$f(\bar{y}) \geq f(x) + \langle g(x), \bar{y} - x \rangle = f(x)$$

且

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) - f(\bar{x}) &\leq f(\bar{y}) - f(\bar{x}) \leq w_f(\bar{x}; \|\bar{y} - \bar{x}\|) \\ &= w_f(\bar{x}; v_f(\bar{x}; x)) \end{aligned}$$

若  $f$  在  $B_2(\bar{x}, R)$  上 Lipschitz 连续, 且  $0 \leq v_f(\bar{x}; x) \leq R$ ,

则  $\bar{y} \in B_2(\bar{x}, R)$ , 故

$$f(x) - f(\bar{x}) \leq f(\bar{y}) - f(\bar{x}) \leq M \|y - \bar{x}\| = M v_f(\bar{x}; x)$$

若  $v_f(\bar{x}; x) < 0$ , 则  $f(\bar{x}) \geq f(x) + \langle g(x), \bar{x} - x \rangle \geq f(x)$ ,

综上, (3.2.12) 成立



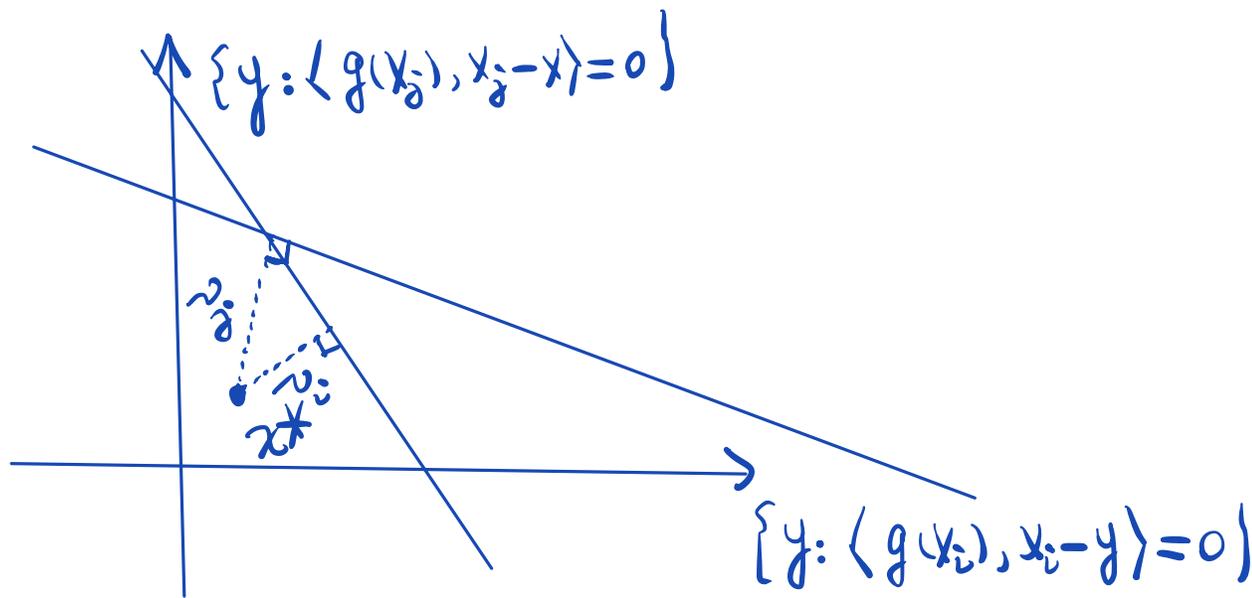
Def 3.2.1 令  $\{x_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  是  $\mathcal{X}$  上的序列, 定义

$$S_k = \{x \in \mathcal{X} \mid \langle g(x_i), x_i - x \rangle \geq 0, i=0, \dots, k\}$$

称  $S_k$  是由序列  $\{x_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  生成的问题 (3.2.8) 的 localization set

$S_k$  非空, 由于  $x^* \in S_k$

$$\text{令 } v_i = v_f(x^*, x_i) \geq 0, v_k^* = \min_{0 \leq i \leq k} v_i$$



故

$$v_k^* = \max \{ r : \langle g(x_i), x_i - x \rangle \geq 0, i=0, \dots, k, \forall x \in B_2(x^*, r) \}$$

lemma 3.2.2  $\wedge \frac{1}{2} f_k^* = \min_{0 \leq i \leq k} f(x_i)$ , 则

$$f_k^* - f^* \leq \omega_f(x^*, v_k^*)$$

证明:

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_f(x^*, v_k^*) &= \min_{0 \leq i \leq k} \omega_f(x^*, v_i) \geq \min_{0 \leq i \leq k} [f(x_i) - f^*] \\ &= f_k^* - f^* \end{aligned}$$



### § 3.2.3 The Subgradient Method.

$$\min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} f(x)$$

$f$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上的凸 func,  $\mathcal{Q}$  是 simple 闭凸集

# Subgradient Method for Simple Set

0. 取  $x_0 \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 序列  $\{h_k\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$

$$h_k > 0, h_k \rightarrow 0, \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} h_k = +\infty$$

1.  $k$ th iteration ( $k \geq 0$ )

$$\text{计算 } f(x_k), g(x_k), \hat{x}_{k+1} = \pi_{\mathcal{Q}} \left( x_k - h_k \frac{g(x_k)}{\|g(x_k)\|} \right)$$

Lemma 3.2.2 设  $f$  是  $B_2(x^*, R)$  上的  $M$ -Lipschitz func,

其中  $R \geq \|x_0 - x^*\|$ , 则

$$f_k^* - f^* \leq M \frac{R^2 + \sum_{i=0}^k h_i^2}{\sum_{i=0}^k h_i}$$

证明: 令  $r_i = \|x_i - x^*\|$ , 则由 lemma 2.2.8

$$\begin{aligned} r_{i+1}^2 &= \left\| \pi_{\mathcal{Q}} \left( x_i - h_i \frac{g(x_i)}{\|g(x_i)\|} \right) - x^* \right\|^2 \\ &\leq \left\| x_i - h_i \frac{g(x_i)}{\|g(x_i)\|} - x^* \right\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$= r_i^2 - 2h_i v_i + h_i^2$$

$$\text{则 } r_0^2 + \sum_{i=0}^k h_i^2 \geq 2 \sum_{i=0}^k h_i v_i + r_{k+1}^2 \geq 2v_k^* \sum_{i=0}^k h_i$$

$$\Rightarrow v_k^* \leq \frac{R^2 + \sum_{i=0}^k h_i^2}{2 \sum_{i=0}^k h_i}$$

故由 lemma 3.2.2

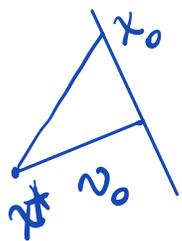
$$f_k^* - f^* \leq \omega_f(x^*, v_k^*)$$

$$= \max_x \{ f(x) - f^* : \|x - x^*\| \leq v_k^* \}$$

(由  $v_k^* \leq R$ )

$$\leq \max_x \{ M \|x - x^*\| : \|x - x^*\| \leq v_k^* \}$$

$$\leq M v_k^* \leq M \frac{R^2 + \sum_{i=0}^k h_i^2}{2 \sum_{i=0}^k h_i}$$



$$\text{证: } \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{R^2 + \sum_{i=0}^k h_i^2}{2 \sum_{i=0}^k h_i} = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\sum_{i=0}^k h_i^2}{\sum_{i=0}^k h_i} \stackrel{\text{stolz}}{=} \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{h_k^2}{h_k} = 0$$

### § 3.2.3

设考虑一个  $N$  步的 Subgradient Method, 则

$$\min_{\{h_k\}} \Delta_N = \frac{R^2 + \sum_{i=0}^N h_i^2}{2 \sum_{i=0}^N h_i}$$

由于  $\{h_k\}_{k=0}^N$  是对称的, 故  $h_0 = \dots = h_N = h$  时取  $\min$

易证,  $h = \frac{R}{\sqrt{N+1}}$ , 此时  $\Delta_N = \frac{R}{\sqrt{N+1}}$ , 故:

$$f_N^* - f^* \leq \frac{MR}{\sqrt{N+1}}$$

另一种定义步长的方法是利用精度  $\varepsilon > 0$ , 即

$$\frac{MR}{\sqrt{N+1}} = \varepsilon \Rightarrow N+1 = \frac{M^2 R^2}{\varepsilon^2}$$

故  $h_i = \frac{\varepsilon}{M}$ ,  $i \geq 0$  (好处是  $h_i$  的定义不依赖  $R, N$ )

$$\text{此时 } f_N^* - f^* \leq \frac{MR^2}{2\varepsilon N} + \frac{1}{2}\varepsilon$$

得到  $\epsilon$ -solution 需要  $N \geq \frac{M^2 R^2}{\epsilon^2}$  步

故次梯度方法 (3.2.14), (3.2.16) 对 (3.2.13) 是 optimal 的.

(关于  $n$  是一致的)

若取  $h_i = \frac{r}{\sqrt{i+1}}$ ,  $i=0, \dots, N-1$  则

$$\Delta_k \sim \frac{R^2 + r^2 \ln(k+1)}{4r\sqrt{k+1}} \quad \text{suboptimal}$$

## § 3.2.4 Minimization with Functional Constraints

考虑问题:

$$\min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \{ f(x) : f_j(x) \leq 0, j=1, \dots, m \} \quad (3.2.22)$$

$f$  和  $f_j$  是闭凸的,  $\mathcal{Q}$  是 simple 闭凸集

定义聚合约束  $\bar{f}(x) = \max_{1 \leq j \leq m} f_j(x)$ , 则 (3.2.22)  $\Leftrightarrow$

$$\min_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \{ f(x) : \bar{f}(x) \leq 0 \}$$

由 lemma 3.1.13, 若  $\partial f_j$  可求, 则  $\bar{g}(x) \in \partial \bar{f}(x)$  易得

## Subgradient Method with Functional Constraints

0. 取初始点  $x_0 \in \mathcal{X}$

1.  $k$ th iteration ( $k \geq 0$ )

(a) 计算  $f(x_k), g(x_k) \in \partial f(x_k), \bar{f}(x_k), \bar{g}(x_k) \in \partial \bar{f}(x_k)$

(b) 若  $\bar{f}(x_k) \leq \varepsilon$ , 则

$$x_{k+1} = \pi_{\mathcal{X}} \left( x_k - \frac{\varepsilon}{\|g(x_k)\|^2} g(x_k) \right) \quad (\text{case A})$$

$$\text{否则, 令 } x_{k+1} = \pi_{\mathcal{X}} \left( x_k - \frac{\bar{f}(x_k)}{\|\bar{g}(x_k)\|^2} \bar{g}(x_k) \right) \quad (\text{case B})$$

定义  $\mathcal{T}_A(N)$  是 type A 型迭代,  $\mathcal{T}_B(N)$  是 type B 型, 故

$$\bar{f}(x_k) \leq \varepsilon, \quad \forall k \in \mathcal{T}_A(N)$$

Thm 3.2.3 设  $f, f_j, j=1, \dots, m$  在  $B_2(x^*, \|x_0 - x^*\|)$  上

$M$ -Lipschitz, 若  $N$  充分大, s.t.

$$N \geq \frac{M^2}{\varepsilon^2} \|x_0 - x^*\|^2 \quad (3.2.26)$$

则  $\mathcal{F}_A(N) \neq \emptyset$ , 且

$$f_N^* \doteq \min_k \{ f(x_k) : k \in \mathcal{F}_A(N) \} \leq f(x^*) + \varepsilon$$

证明: 定义  $r_k = \|x_k - x^*\|$ , 设  $N$  满足 (3.2.26), 但

$$f(x_k) - f^* \geq \varepsilon, \quad \forall k \in \mathcal{F}_A(N)$$

若  $k \in \mathcal{F}_A(N)$ , 则

$$r_{k+1}^2 = \|x_{k+1} - x^*\|^2$$

$$\stackrel{(2.2.49)}{\leq} \left\| x_k - \frac{\varepsilon}{\|g(x_k)\|^2} g(x_k) - x^* \right\|^2$$

$$= r_k^2 - \frac{2\varepsilon}{\|g(x_k)\|^2} \langle g(x_k), x_k - x^* \rangle + \frac{\varepsilon^2}{\|g(x_k)\|^2}$$

$$(3.1.23) \leq r_k^2 - \frac{2\varepsilon}{\|g(x_k)\|^2} (f(x_k) - f^*) + \frac{\varepsilon^2}{\|g(x_k)\|^2}$$

$$(3.2.28) \leq r_k^2 - \frac{\varepsilon^2}{\|g(x_k)\|^2}$$

Case B 情形下:

$$r_{k+1}^2 = \|x_{k+1} - x^*\|^2$$

$$(2.2.49) \leq \left\| x_k - \frac{\bar{f}(x_k)}{\|\bar{g}(x_k)\|^2} \bar{g}(x_k) - x^* \right\|^2$$

$$= r_k^2 - \frac{2\bar{f}(x_k)}{\|\bar{g}(x_k)\|} \langle \bar{g}(x_k), x_k - x^* \rangle + \frac{\bar{f}(x_k)^2}{\|\bar{g}(x_k)\|^2}$$

$$\leq r_k^2 - \frac{2\bar{f}(x_k)}{\|\bar{g}(x_k)\|^2} (\bar{f}(x_k) - \bar{f}(x^*)) + \frac{\bar{f}(x_k)^2}{\|\bar{g}(x_k)\|^2}$$

$$= r_k^2 - \frac{\bar{f}(x_k)^2}{\|\bar{g}(x_k)\|^2}$$

故 case A, B 都有:  $r_{k+1} \leq r_k \leq \|x_0 - x^*\|$

由于  $f$  在  $B_2(x^*, \|x_0 - x^*\|)$  是  $M$ -Lipschitz 的, 由

Thm 3.1.15  $\|g(x_k)\| \leq M, k \in \tilde{\mathcal{F}}_A(N)$

由  $f_j$  在  $B_2(x^*, \|x_0 - x^*\|)$  是  $M$ -Lipschitz 的 故  $f_j$  是  $M$ -Lipschitz 的. 故  $\|\bar{g}(x_k)\| \leq M, k \in \tilde{\mathcal{F}}_B(N)$

故  $r_{k+1}^2 \leq r_k^2 - \frac{\varepsilon^2}{M^2}$  对  $\forall k=0, \dots, N$

$\Rightarrow 0 \leq r_{N+1}^2 \leq r_0^2 - \frac{\varepsilon^2}{M^2}(N+1)$

与 (3.2.26) 矛盾



无约束优化问题并不比有约束问题简单

§ 3.2.5 Approximating the optimal Lagrange Multipliers

对  $\varepsilon > 0$ , 定义

$$\mathcal{F}(\varepsilon) = \{x \in \mathcal{Q} : f_j(x) \leq \varepsilon, j=1, \dots, m\}$$

定义 Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L}(x, \lambda) = f(x) + \sum_{j=1}^m \lambda^{(j)} f_j(x), \quad x \in \mathcal{X}, \lambda = (\lambda^{(1)}, \dots, \lambda^{(m)}) \in \mathbb{R}_+^m$$

定义 Lagrangian dual 问题:

$$\phi^* = \sup_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}_+^m} \phi(\lambda)$$

其中  $\phi(\lambda) = \min_{x \in \mathcal{X}} \mathcal{L}(x, \lambda)$ , 显然  $f^* \geq \phi^*$

## Subgradient Method for Lagrange Multipliers

0. 取初始点  $x_0 \in \mathcal{X}$

1.  $k$ th iteration ( $k \geq 0$ )

(a) 定义  $\mathcal{F}_k = \{j : f_j(x_k) > h \|g_j(x_k)\|\}$

(b) 若  $\mathcal{F}_k = \emptyset$ , 则  $x_{k+1} = \pi_{\mathcal{X}} \left( x_k - \frac{h g(x_k)}{\|g(x_k)\|} \right)$

(c) 若  $\mathcal{F}_k \neq \emptyset$ , 则取  $j_k \in \mathcal{F}_k$ , 定义

$$h_k = \frac{f_{j_k}(x_k)}{\|g_{j_k}(x_k)\|^2}, \quad x_{k+1} = \pi_{\mathcal{X}} \left( x_k - h_k g_{j_k}(x_k) \right)$$

$t$  次迭代后, 定义  $A_0(t) = \{k \in \{0, \dots, t\} : \mathcal{F}_k = \emptyset\}$

令  $A_j(t) = \{k \in \{0, \dots, t\} : j_k = j\}$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq m$

令  $N(t) = |A_0(t)|$ , 若  $N(t) > 0$ , 可以定义估计对偶乘子:

$$G_t = h \sum_{k \in A_0(t)} \frac{1}{\|g(x_k)\|}, \quad \lambda_t^{(j)} = \frac{1}{G_t} \sum_{k \in A_j(t)} h_k, \quad j=1, \dots, m$$

令  $S_t = \sum_{k \in A_0(t)} \frac{1}{\|g(x_k)\|}$ , 若  $N(t) = 0$ , 定义  $S_t = 0$ , 则

$$G_t = h S_t$$

原理来自证明3

$$G_t \leq Mh = \varepsilon$$

定义 gap function

$$\delta_t = \frac{1}{S_t} \sum_{k \in A_0(t)} \frac{f(x_k)}{\|g(x_k)\|} - \phi(\lambda_t)$$

Thm 3.2.4 设  $\mathcal{Q}$  是有界的:  $\|x - x_0\| \leq R, \forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$

若迭代次数  $t$  充分大, s.t.  $t > \frac{R^2}{h^2}$ .

则  $N(t) > 0$ , 且

$$\max_{1 \leq j \leq m} f_j(x_k) \leq Mh, \quad k \in A_0(t)$$

$$\delta_t \leq Mh$$

其中  $M = \max_{0 \leq k \leq t} \max_{0 \leq j \leq m} \|g_j(x_k)\|$

证明: 注意到

$$\delta_t \cdot \delta_t = \max_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \left\{ \sum_{k \in A_0(t)} \frac{h f(x_k)}{\|g(x_k)\|} - \delta_t f(x) - \underbrace{\sum_{j=1}^m \sum_{k \in A_j(t)} h_k f_j(x)} \right\}$$

$$= \max_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \left\{ \sum_{k \in A_0(t)} \frac{h(f(x_k) - f(x))}{\|g(x_k)\|} - \underbrace{\sum_{k \in A_0(t)} h_k f_{j_k}(x)} \right\}$$

$$\sum_{k \in A_1(t)} h_k \underbrace{f_1(x)}_{f_{j_k}} + \dots + \sum_{k \in A_m(t)} h_k \underbrace{f_m(x)}_{f_{j_k}} = \sum_{k \in A_0(t)} h_k f_{j_k}(x)$$

$$\leq \max_{x \in \mathcal{Q}} \left\{ \sum_{k \in A_0(t)} \frac{h \langle g(x_k), x_k - x \rangle}{\|g(x_k)\|} + \sum_{k \in A_0(t)} h_k [ \langle g_{j_k}(x_k), x_k - x \rangle - f_{j_k}(x_k) ] \right\}$$

对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 令  $r_k(x) = \|x - x_k\|$ , 设  $k \in A_0(t)$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} r_{k+1}^2(x) &\leq \left\| x_k - x - \frac{hg(x_k)}{\|g(x_k)\|} \right\|^2 \\ &= r_k^2(x) - \frac{2h}{\|g(x_k)\|} \langle g(x_k), x_k - x \rangle + h^2 \end{aligned}$$

若  $k \notin A_0(t)$ , 则

$$\begin{aligned} r_{k+1}^2(x) &\leq \|x_k - x - h_k g_{j_k}(x_k)\|^2 \\ &= r_k^2(x) - 2h_k \langle g_{j_k}(x_k), x_k - x \rangle + h_k^2 \|g_{j_k}(x_k)\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

故

$$\begin{aligned} &2h_k \left[ \langle g_{j_k}(x_k), x_k - x \rangle - f_{j_k}^*(x_k) \right] \\ &\leq r_k^2(x) - r_{k+1}^2(x) - \frac{f_{j_k}^2(x_k)}{\|g_{j_k}(x_k)\|^2} \\ &\leq r_k^2(x) - r_{k+1}^2(x) - h^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{故 } \theta_t \delta_t &\leq \frac{1}{2} r_0^2(x) + \frac{1}{2} N(t) h^2 - \frac{1}{2} (t - N(t)) h^2 \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} r_0^2(x) - \frac{1}{2} t h^2 + N(t) h^2 \\
 &\leq \frac{1}{2} R^2 - \frac{1}{2} t h^2 + N(t) h^2
 \end{aligned}$$

由于  $t > \frac{R^2}{h^2}$ , 则若  $N(t) = 0$ , 则有  $\theta_t \delta_t < 0$

而  $\theta_t \geq 0$ ,  $\delta_t \geq f(\hat{x}_k) - \phi(\lambda_t) \geq 0$  矛盾, 其中

$$\hat{x}_k = \frac{1}{S_t} \sum_{k \in A_0(t)} \frac{x_k}{\|g(x_k)\|}$$

故  $N(t) > 0$ , 又由  $k \in A_0(t)$ , 则

$$f_j(x_k) \leq h \|g_j(x_k)\| \leq hM \quad \text{对 } \forall j=1, \dots, m$$

$$\text{故 } \max_{1 \leq j \leq m} f_j(x_k) \leq hM, \quad k \in A_0(t)$$

由  $\theta_t \geq h \frac{N(t)}{M}$ , 故由  $t > \frac{R^2}{h^2}$

$$\theta_t \delta_t \leq N(t) h^2$$

$$\Rightarrow \delta_t \leq Mh$$



## § 3.2.6 Strongly Convex Functions

Def 3.2.2  $f$  在凸集  $\mathcal{Q}$  上是强凸的, 若  $\exists \mu > 0$ , s.t. 对

$\forall x, y \in \mathcal{Q}, \alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有

$$f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) \leq \alpha f(x) + (1-\alpha)f(y) - \frac{1}{2} \mu \alpha(1-\alpha) \|x-y\|^2$$

Lemma 3.2.3 令  $f \in f_{\mu}^{\circ}(\mathcal{Q})$ , 则对  $\forall x \in \text{int} \mathcal{Q}$ ,

$y \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 有

$$f(y) \geq f(x) + f'(x; y-x) + \frac{1}{2} \mu \|y-x\|^2$$

证明:

$$\begin{aligned} f(y) &\geq \frac{1}{\alpha} [f((1-\alpha)x + \alpha y) - (1-\alpha)f(x) + \frac{1}{2} \mu \alpha(1-\alpha) \|x-y\|^2] \\ &= f(x) + \frac{1}{\alpha} [f(x + \alpha(y-x)) - f(x)] + \frac{1}{2} \mu (1-\alpha) \|x-y\|^2 \end{aligned}$$

令  $\alpha \downarrow 0$ , 得到 (3.2.38)



Corollary 3.2.1 令  $f \in f_{\mu}^0(\mathcal{Q})$ , 则对  $\forall g \in \partial f(x)$ , 有

$$f(y) \geq f(x) + \langle g, y-x \rangle + \frac{1}{2} \mu \|y-x\|^2$$

证明: 由 Thm 3.1.17, 对  $\forall g \in \partial f(x)$ , 有

$$f'(x; y-x) \geq \langle g, y-x \rangle$$

□

Corollary 3.2.2 若问题 (3.2.13) 的目标 func

$f \in f_{\mu}^0(\mathcal{Q})$ , 则下水平集有界, 且最优解存在

证明: 由于  $f$  是  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上的凸 func, 故  $f$  在  $\mathbb{R}^n$  上连续,

对  $\forall c \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $\forall x, x' \in \mathcal{Q}$

$$c \geq f(x) \geq f(x') + \langle g(x'), x-x' \rangle + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x-x'\|^2$$

$$= f(x') + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x-x'\|^2 + \frac{1}{\mu} \|g(x')\|^2 - \frac{1}{2\mu} \|g(x')\|^2$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\mu}{2} \|x - x' + \frac{1}{\mu} g(x')\|^2 \leq c + \frac{1}{2\mu} \|g(x')\|^2 - f(x')$$

故下水平集有界, 由 Thm 3.1.4 4) 知最优解存在



Corollary 3.2.3 令  $x^* \in \text{int dom } f$  是 (3.2.13) 的最优解,

$f \in f_{\mu}^{\circ}(\mathcal{Q})$ , 则对  $\forall x \in \mathcal{Q}$ , 有

$$f(x) \geq f^* + \frac{1}{2} \mu \|x - x^*\|^2$$

故, 最优解存在唯一

证明: 由 Thm 3.1.24,  $\exists g^* \in \partial f(x^*)$ , s.t.

$$\langle g^*, x - x^* \rangle \geq 0$$

故由 (3.2.39) 知, 结论成立



## 强凸 func 的性质

1. Addition  $f_1 \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu_1}^0(\mathcal{X})$ ,  $f_2 \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu_2}^0(\mathcal{X})$ , 则对  $\forall \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \geq 0$ ,

$$\alpha_1 f_1 + \alpha_2 f_2 \in \mathcal{F}_{\alpha_1 \mu_1 + \alpha_2 \mu_2}^0(\mathcal{X})$$

证明是显然的

2. Maximum  $f_1 \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu_1}^0(\mathcal{X})$ ,  $f_2 \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu_2}^0(\mathcal{X})$ , 则

$$f(x) = \max \{f_1(x), f_2(x)\} \in \mathcal{F}_{\mu}^0(\mathcal{X})$$

其中  $\mu = \min \{\mu_1, \mu_2\}$

证明: 对  $\forall x_1, x_2 \in \mathcal{X}$ ,  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$ , 有

$$\begin{aligned} f(\alpha x_1 + (1-\alpha)x_2) &\leq \max \{ \alpha f_1(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f_1(x_2) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} \mu_1 \alpha(1-\alpha) \|x_1 - x_2\|^2, \alpha f_2(x_1) + (1-\alpha)f_2(x_2) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} \mu_2 \alpha(1-\alpha) \|x_1 - x_2\|^2 \} \end{aligned}$$

$$\leq \alpha f(x_1) + (1-\alpha) f(x_2) - \frac{1}{2} \mu \alpha (1-\alpha) \|x_1 - x_2\|^2$$



3. Subtraction  $f \in \mathcal{F}_\mu^0(\mathcal{X})$ , 则  $\hat{f}(x) = f(x) - \frac{1}{2} \mu \|x\|^2$

是凸的

证明: 对  $\forall x, y \in \mathcal{X}, \alpha \in [0, 1]$

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{f}(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) &= f(\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y) - \frac{1}{2} \mu \|\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y\|^2 \\ &\leq \alpha f(x) + (1-\alpha) f(y) - \frac{\mu}{2} \alpha (1-\alpha) \|x - y\|^2 - \frac{1}{2} \mu \|\alpha x + (1-\alpha)y\|^2 \\ &= \alpha f(x) + (1-\alpha) f(y) - \frac{1}{2} \alpha \mu \|x\|^2 - \frac{1}{2} (1-\alpha) \mu \|y\|^2 \\ &= \alpha \hat{f}(x) + (1-\alpha) \hat{f}(y) \end{aligned}$$



仍然记  $f_k(x) = \gamma \max_{1 \leq i \leq k} x^{(i)} + \frac{\mu}{2} \|x\|^2, k=1, \dots, n$

在问题 (3.2.2) 的基础上加上下面的假设:

•  $f$  在  $B_2(x^*, \|x_0 - x^*\|)$  上是  $M$ -Lipschitz 的

•  $f \in f_\mu^0(B_2(x^*, \|x_0 - x^*\|))$ ,  $\mu > 0$

记该问题类是  $\mathcal{P}_S(x_0, \mu, M)$

Thm 3.2.5 对任意类  $\mathcal{P}_S(x_0, \mu, M)$ , 任意  $k, 0 \leq k \leq n-1$ ,

$\exists f \in \mathcal{P}_S(x_0, \mu, M)$ , s.t.

$$f(x_k) - f^* \geq \frac{M^2}{2\mu(2 + \sqrt{k+1})^2}$$

对任意生成序列  $\{x_k\}$  成立, 其中

$$x_k \in x_0 + \text{Lin}\{g(x_0), \dots, g(x_{k-1})\}$$

证明: 应用 func (3.2.2) 以及 Oracle (3.2.6)

W.L.O.G., 令  $x_0 = 0$ , 取  $f(x) = f_{k+1}(x)$ ,  $\gamma = \frac{M\sqrt{k+1}}{2 + \sqrt{k+1}}$

由 (3.2.4),  $f_{k+1} \in f_\mu^0(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , 同时

$$R_{k+1} \doteq \|x_0 - x_{k+1}^*\| = \frac{\gamma}{\mu\sqrt{k+1}} = \frac{M}{\mu(2+\sqrt{k+1})}$$

由(3.2.4),  $f_{k+1}$  在  $B_2(x_{k+1}^*, R_{k+1})$  的 Lipschitz constant 是:

$$2\mu R_{k+1} + \gamma = \frac{2M}{2+\sqrt{k+1}} + \frac{M\sqrt{k+1}}{2+\sqrt{k+1}} = M$$

故  $f = f_{k+1} \in \mathcal{P}_S(x_0, \mu, M)$ , 故

$$f(x_k) - f^* \geq -f_{k+1}^* = \frac{\gamma^2}{2\mu(k+1)} = \frac{M^2}{2\mu(2+\sqrt{k+1})^2}$$



Thm 3.2.6 设问题(3.2.13)中的  $f$  满足(3.2.42),

令  $\varepsilon > 0$  是优化问题的精度, 考虑序列  $\{x_k\} \subset \mathcal{Q}$  由

$$x_{k+1} = \pi_{\mathcal{Q}} \left( x_k - \frac{2\varepsilon g(x_k)}{\|g(x_k)\|^2} \right), \quad k \geq 0$$

生成, 其中  $g(x_k) \in \partial f(x_k)$ . 则若  $N$  足够大, s.t.

$$N \geq \frac{M^2}{\mu \varepsilon} \ln \frac{M \|x_0 - x^*\|}{\varepsilon}$$

$$\text{有 } f_N^* = \min_{0 \leq k \leq N} f(x_k) \leq f^* + \varepsilon$$

证明: 令  $r_k = \|x_k - x^*\|$ ,  $h_k = \frac{2\varepsilon}{\|g(x_k)\|^2}$ , 设  $N$  满足

(3.2.46), 且  $f(x_k) - f^* > \varepsilon$ ,  $k=0, \dots, N$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{则} \quad r_{k+1}^2 &\leq \|x_k - h_k g(x_k)\|^2 \\ &= r_k^2 - 2h_k \langle g(x_k), x_k - x^* \rangle + \frac{4\varepsilon^2}{\|g(x_k)\|^2} \\ &\leq r_k^2 - \frac{4\varepsilon}{\|g(x_k)\|^2} \left[ f(x_k) - f^* + \frac{1}{2}\mu r_k^2 \right] + \frac{4\varepsilon^2}{\|g(x_k)\|^2} \\ &\stackrel{(3.2.47)}{\leq} \left( 1 - \frac{2\mu\varepsilon}{\|g(x_k)\|^2} \right) r_k^2 \end{aligned}$$

故  $x_k \in B(x^*, r_0)$ , 故  $\|g(x_k)\| \leq M$ , 从而

$$\varepsilon < f(x_N) - f^* \leq M r_N \leq M \left( 1 - \frac{2\mu\varepsilon}{M^2} \right)^{\frac{N}{2}} r_0$$

$$\leq M \exp\left\{-\frac{\mu \varepsilon N}{M^2}\right\} r_0$$

与 (3.2.46) 矛盾



## § 3.2.7 Complexity Bounds in Finite Dimension

本节研究 feasibility 问题:

$$\text{Find } x^* \in S \quad (3.2.49)$$

其中  $S$  是闭凸集, 假设有下面的 separation oracle:

或者报告  $\bar{x} \in S$

或者返回  $\bar{g}$ , 分离  $\bar{x}$  与  $S$ :  $\langle \bar{g}, \bar{x} - x \rangle \geq 0 \quad \forall x \in S$

Assumption 3.2.1  $\exists x^* \in S$ , s.t.  $\exists \varepsilon > 0$ , s.t.  $B(x^*, \varepsilon) \subseteq S$

例如: 已知 (3.2.8) 的最优值  $f^*$ , 则考虑 feasibility 问题, 其中:

$$S = \{(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid t \geq f(x), t \leq f^* + \varepsilon, x \in \mathcal{Q}\}$$

为什么不能考虑  $S = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid f(x) \leq f^* + \varepsilon\}$  ?

下面考虑 (3.2.49) 的 resisting orade:

序列  $\{B_k\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$ ,  $B_{k+1} \subset B_k$ , 其中

$$B_k = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid a_k \leq x \leq b_k\}$$

对每个 box  $B_k, k \geq 0$ , 记中心  $C_k = \frac{1}{2}(a_k + b_k)$

对每个 box  $B_k, k \geq 1$ , orade 生成各自的分离向量  $g_k$

$g_k$  除去符号的选取, 始终是坐标向量

定义:  $m$  是生成 box 的数量

$i$  是积极坐标

定义  $\bar{e}_n \in \mathbb{R}^n$  是全 1 向量, orade 从下面的初值开始:

$$a_0 = -R\bar{e}_n, b_0 = R\bar{e}_n, m=0, i=1$$

输入任意 test point  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$

---

## Resisting oracle for feasibility problem

---

if  $x \notin B_0$ , then return a separator of  $x$  from  $B_0$

else:

1. 寻找最大的  $k \in [0, \dots, m]$  :  $x \in B_k$

2. If  $k < m$  Return  $g_k$

else: Create a new box:

If  $x^{(i)} \geq c_m^{(i)}$ , then  $a_{m+1} = a_m$

$b_{m+1} = b_m + (c_m^{(i)} - b_m^{(i)})e_i$ ,  $g_m = e_i$

else  $a_{m+1} = a_m + (c_m^{(i)} - a_m^{(i)})e_i$

$b_{m+1} = b_m$ ,  $g_m = -e_i$

$m := m+1$ ,  $i := i+1$ ; If  $i > n$ , then  $i := 1$

Return  $g_m$

---

这样 box 的构造方法有如下两个重要性质

- $\text{Vol}_n B_{k+1} = \frac{1}{2} \text{Vol}_n B_k$
- 对  $\forall k \geq 0$ , 有  $b_{k+n} - a_{k+n} = \frac{1}{2} (b_k - a_k)$

Lemma 3.2.4 对  $\forall k \geq 0$ , 有:

$$B_2(c_k, r_k) \subset B_k, \quad r_k = \frac{R}{2} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\frac{k}{n}}$$

证明: 对  $\forall k \in [0, \dots, n-1]$ , 有:

$$B_k \supset B_n = \left\{ x \mid c_n - \frac{1}{2} R \bar{e}_n \leq x \leq c_n + \frac{1}{2} R \bar{e}_n \right\} \supset B_2(c_n, \frac{1}{2} R)$$

故, 对这样的  $k$ , 有:

$$B_k \supset B_2(c_k, \frac{1}{2} R) \supset B_2(c_k, r_k)$$

令  $k = nl + p$ , 其中  $p \in [0, \dots, n-1]$ : 由

$$b_k - a_k = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^l (b_p - a_p)$$

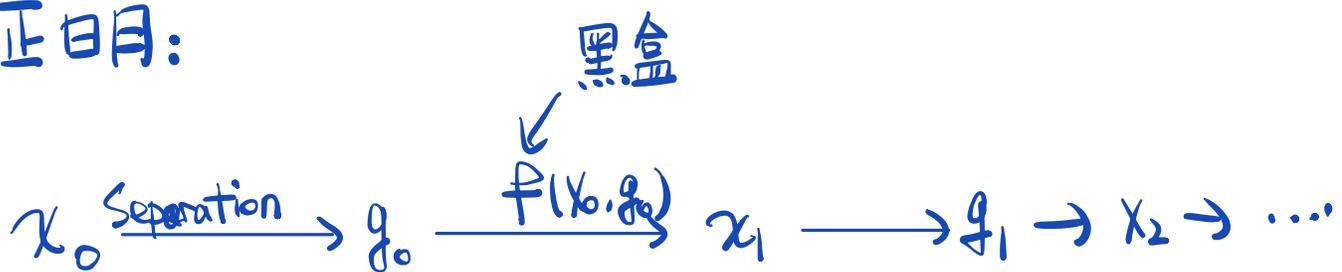
故  $B_k \supset B_2(C_k, (\frac{1}{2})^k \cdot \frac{1}{2}R)$ , 又由  $r_k \leq \frac{R}{2} (\frac{1}{2})^k$ , 即证  $\square$

Thm 3.2.7 考虑一类 feasibility 问题 (3.2.49), 满足

Assumption 3.2.1,  $S$  是  $B_\infty(0, R)$  的子集, 则 lower analytical

complexity 是  $n \ln \frac{R}{2\varepsilon}$  次调用 separation oracle

证明:



在考虑的问题是: 得到  $x_k \in S$  的步数 (即调用 Separation Oracle 的次数) 的 lower analytical complexity:

即定义  $F(f, S, x_0)$  是用黑盒子  $f$ , 对集合  $S$  所需步数, 求:

$\inf_{f \in \mathcal{F}} \sup_{S \in \mathcal{S}} F(f, S, x_0)$  的下界

$x_0 \in B_\infty(0, R)$

$x_0$  为初始点.

而固定  $f \in \mathcal{F}$ ,  $x_0 \in B_b(0, R)$  断言:

$$\sup_{S \in \mathcal{S}} F(f, S) \stackrel{\textcircled{1}}{\geq} F(f, B_{k^*}(f, x_0), x_0) \stackrel{\textcircled{2}}{\geq} n \log_2 \frac{R}{2\varepsilon}$$

其中  $k^* = \lfloor n \log_2 \frac{R}{2\varepsilon} \rfloor$ ,  $B_{k^*}$  是 resisting oracle 或  
 的第  $k^*$  个 box (以  $x_0$  为初值,  $x_{k+1} = f(x_k, g_k)$ ).

先证明  $\textcircled{1}$ : 由  $(\frac{R}{2})(\frac{1}{2})^{\frac{k}{2}} \geq \varepsilon \Rightarrow k \leq 2 \log_2 \frac{R}{2\varepsilon}$

故  $k^* \leq k$ , 知  $B_{k^*} \in \mathcal{S}$  (即  $\exists x^* \in B_{k^*}$ , s.t.  $B_2(x^*, \varepsilon) \subseteq S$ ).

从而  $\textcircled{1}$  成立

再证明  $\textcircled{2}$ : 调用 Resisting oracle 最好的情形

用  $k^*$  次调用得到  $\{x_k\}_{k=0}^{k^*}$ ,  $\{g_k\}_{k=0}^{k^*}$ ,  $\{B_k\}_{k=0}^{k^*}$ .

由于  $x_k \in B_{k^*}$ ,  $\forall k=0, \dots, k^*-1$

故  $\textcircled{2}$  成立, 从而得证  $\inf_{f \in \mathcal{F}} \sup_{S \in \mathcal{S}} F(f, S) \geq n \log_2 \frac{R}{2\varepsilon}$

